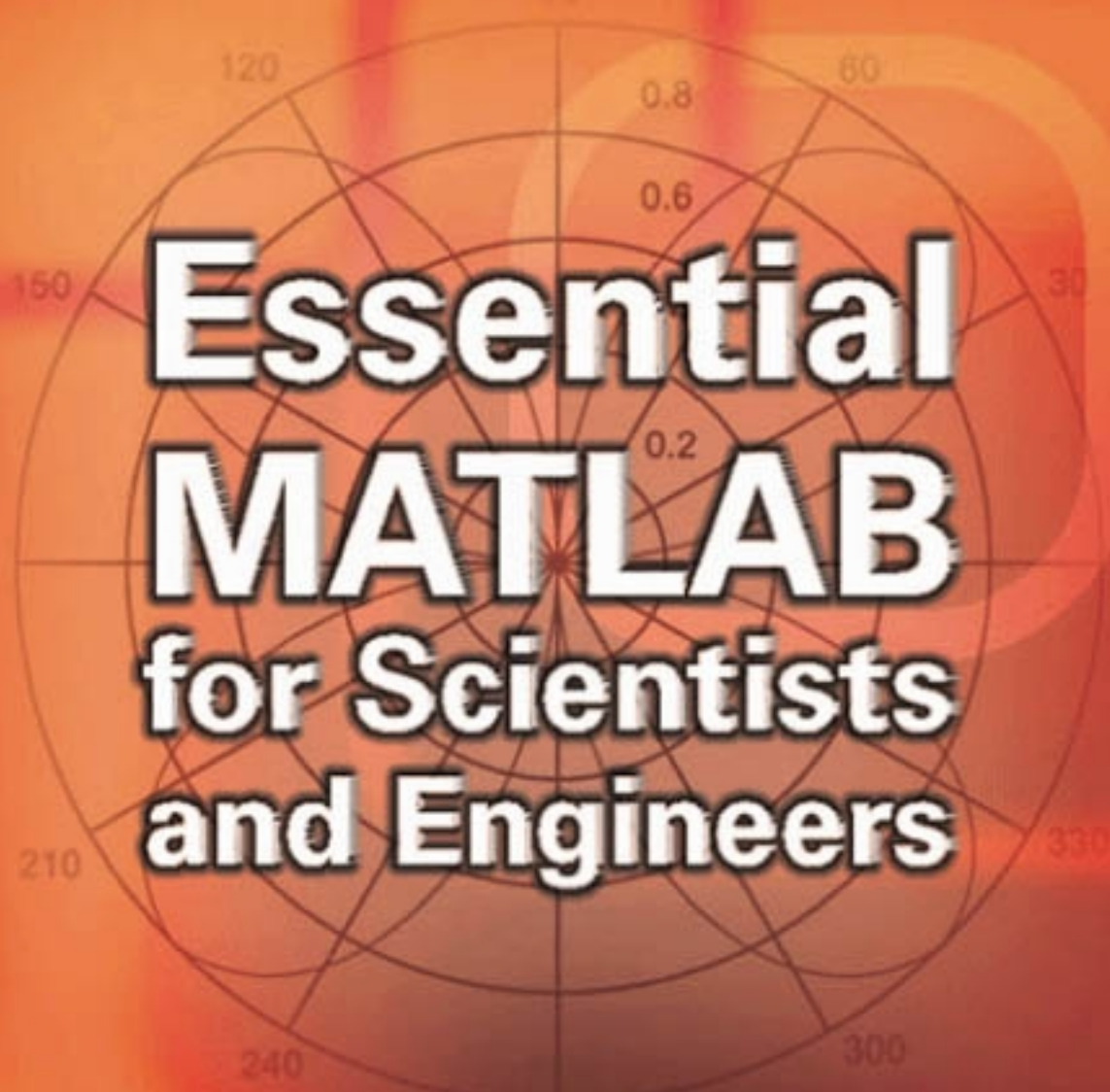


Second Edition



**Essential
MATLAB
for Scientists
and Engineers**

Brian D. Hahn



Butterworth-Heinemann, an Imprint of Elsevier, Inc.
84 Theobald's Road, London WC1X 8RR, UK
Radarweg 29, PO Box 211, 1000 AE Amsterdam, The Netherlands
Linacre House, Jordan Hill, Oxford OX2 8DP, UK
30 Corporate Drive, Suite 400, Burlington, MA 01803, USA
525 B Street, Suite 1900, San Diego, CA 92101-4495, USA

Copyright © 2002 Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise without the prior written permission of the publisher. Permissions may be sought directly from Elsevier's Science & Technology Rights Department in Oxford, UK: phone (+44) (0) 1865 843830; fax (+44) (0) 1865 853333; email: permissions@elsevier.com. Alternatively you can submit your request online by visiting the Elsevier web site at <http://elsevier.com/locate/permissions>, and selecting Obtaining permission to use Elsevier material

Essential MATLAB for Scientists and Engineers
by Brian Hahn

ISBN 978-0-7506-5240-3

Part I Essentials	I
1 Getting going	3
Objective	3
1.1 Introduction	3
1.2 Using MATLAB	3
1.3 Website	9
Summary	9
2 MATLAB fundamentals	10
Objectives	10
2.1 The MATLAB desktop	11
2.2 Programs	11
2.3 Variables and the workspace	15
2.4 Arrays: vectors and matrices	17
2.5 Vertical motion under gravity	21
2.6 Operators, expressions and statements	22
2.7 Output	31
2.8 Repeating with for	33
2.9 Decisions	39
2.10 Complex numbers	45
2.11 More on input and output	46
2.12 Odds n ends	48
2.13 Programming style	50
Summary	51
3 Developing algorithms	58
Objective	58
3.1 Structure plans	58
3.2 Structured programming with functions	60
Summary	60
4 MATLAB functions	63
Objective	63
4.1 Projectile motion	63
4.2 Some common functions	65
Summary	69
5 Logical vectors	71
Objectives	71
5.1 Examples	72
5.2 Logical operators	75
5.3 Subscripting with logical vectors	78
5.4 Logical functions	79
5.5 Logical vectors instead of elseif ladders	81
Summary	83
6 Matrices	86
Objectives	86
6.1 Some basics	86
6.2 Matrix operations	98
6.3 Other matrix functions	100
Summary	100
7 Introduction to graphics	102
Objective	102
7.1 Basic 2-D graphs	102

7.2 3-D plots	110
Summary	120
8 Loops	124
Objectives.....	124
8.1 Determinate repetition with for	124
8.2 Indeterminate repetition with while	126
Summary	132
9 Errors and pitfalls	136
Objective	136
9.1 Syntax errors	136
9.2 Pitfalls and surprises	138
9.3 Errors in logic	139
9.4 Rounding error	139
9.5 Trapping and generating errors	140
Summary	140
10 Function M-files	142
Objective	142
10.1 Some examples.....	142
10.2 Basic rules.....	144
10.3 Function handles	149
10.4 Command/function duality.....	150
10.5 Function name resolution	151
10.6 Debugging M-files	151
10.7 Recursion	153
Summary	154
Part II More Advanced Topics and Applications	II
11 Vectors as arrays: working with subscripts	159
Objective	159
11.1 Update processes	159
11.2 Frequencies, bar charts and histograms	164
11.3 Sorting	166
Summary	168
12 Arrays of characters: strings	170
Objective	170
12.1 Basic concepts	170
12.2 Two-dimensional strings.....	173
12.3 eval and text macros	174
Summary	176
13 Advanced data structures	178
Objectives.....	178
13.1 Structures	178
13.2 Cell arrays	180
13.3 Classes and objects	182
Summary	183
14 More graphics	184
Objectives.....	184
14.1 Handle Graphics.....	184
14.2 Editing plots	189
14.3 Animation	190
14.4 Colour etc.	193

14.5 Lighting and camera	195
14.6 Saving, printing and exporting graphs	196
Summary	197
15 Graphical User Interfaces (GUIs)	198
Objectives	198
15.1 Basic structure of a GUI	198
15.2 A first example: getting the time	199
15.3 Newton again	202
15.4 Axes on a GUI	204
15.5 Adding colour to a button	205
Summary	206
16 Importing and exporting data	207
Objectives	207
16.1 The load and save commands	207
16.2 The Import Wizard	208
16.3 Low-level file I/O functions	209
16.4 Other import/export functions	212
Summary	213
17 Simulation	214
Objective	214
17.1 Random number generation	214
17.2 Spinning coins	215
17.3 Rolling dice	216
17.4 Bacteria division	216
17.5 A random walk	216
17.6 Traffic flow	218
17.7 Normal (Gaussian) random numbers	220
Summary	220
18 More matrices	224
Objectives	224
18.1 Leslie matrices: population growth	224
18.2 Markov processes	227
18.3 Linear equations	229
18.4 Sparse matrices	233
Summary	235
19 Introduction to numerical methods	236
Objective	236
19.1 Equations	236
19.2 Integration	240
19.3 Numerical differentiation	242
19.4 First-order differential equations	243
19.5 Linear ordinary differential equations (LODEs)	247
19.6 Runge Kutta methods	247
19.7 A GUI ODE solver: Driver	251
19.8 A partial differential equation	260
19.9 Other numerical methods	262
Summary	263
A Syntax quick reference	267
A.1 Expressions	267
A.2 Function M-files	267
A.3 Graphics	267

A.4 if and switch	268
A.5 for and while.....	268
A.6 Input/output	269
A.7 load/save.....	270
A.8 Vectors and matrices	270
B Operators	271
C Command and function quick reference.....	272
C.1 General purpose commands	273
C.2 Logical functions	273
C.3 Language constructs and debugging.....	274
C.4 Matrices and matrix manipulation	274
C.5 Mathematical functions	275
C.6 Matrix functions.....	276
C.7 Data analysis	276
C.8 Polynomial functions.....	276
C.9 Function functions.....	276
C.10 Sparse matrix functions	276
C.11 Character string functions.....	277
C.12 File I/O functions.....	277
C.13 Graphics	277
D ASCII character codes	279
E Solutions to selected exercises	280
Index.....	291

Part I

Essentials

1

Getting going

Objective

The objective of this chapter is to enable you to

- use some simple MATLAB commands from the Command Window.

1.1 Introduction

MATLAB is a powerful computing system for handling the calculations involved in scientific and engineering problems. The name MATLAB stands for MATrix LABoratory, because the system was designed to make matrix computations particularly easy. If you don't know what a matrix is, don't worry—we will look at them in detail later. For the moment we can forget about them.

This book assumes that you have never used a computer before to do the sort of scientific calculations that MATLAB handles. You will however need to be able to find your way around a computer keyboard and the operating system running on your computer (e.g. Windows or UNIX). The only other computer-related skill you will need is some very basic text editing.

One of the many things you will like about MATLAB (and which distinguishes it from many other computer programming systems, such as C++ and Java) is that you can use it *interactively*. This means you type some commands at the special MATLAB prompt, and get the answers immediately. The problems solved in this way can be very simple, like finding a square root, or they can be much more complicated, like finding the solution of a system of differential equations. The point is that you have to enter only one or two commands, and you get the answers at once. MATLAB does most of the work for you.

In the rest of this Chapter we will look at some simple examples for you to try out. Don't bother about understanding exactly what is happening. The understanding will come in later chapters when we look at the details.

1.2 Using MATLAB

In order to use MATLAB it must either be installed on your computer, or you must have access to a network where it is available. Throughout this book the latest version of MATLAB at the time of writing is assumed—Version 6.1 (Release 12.1).

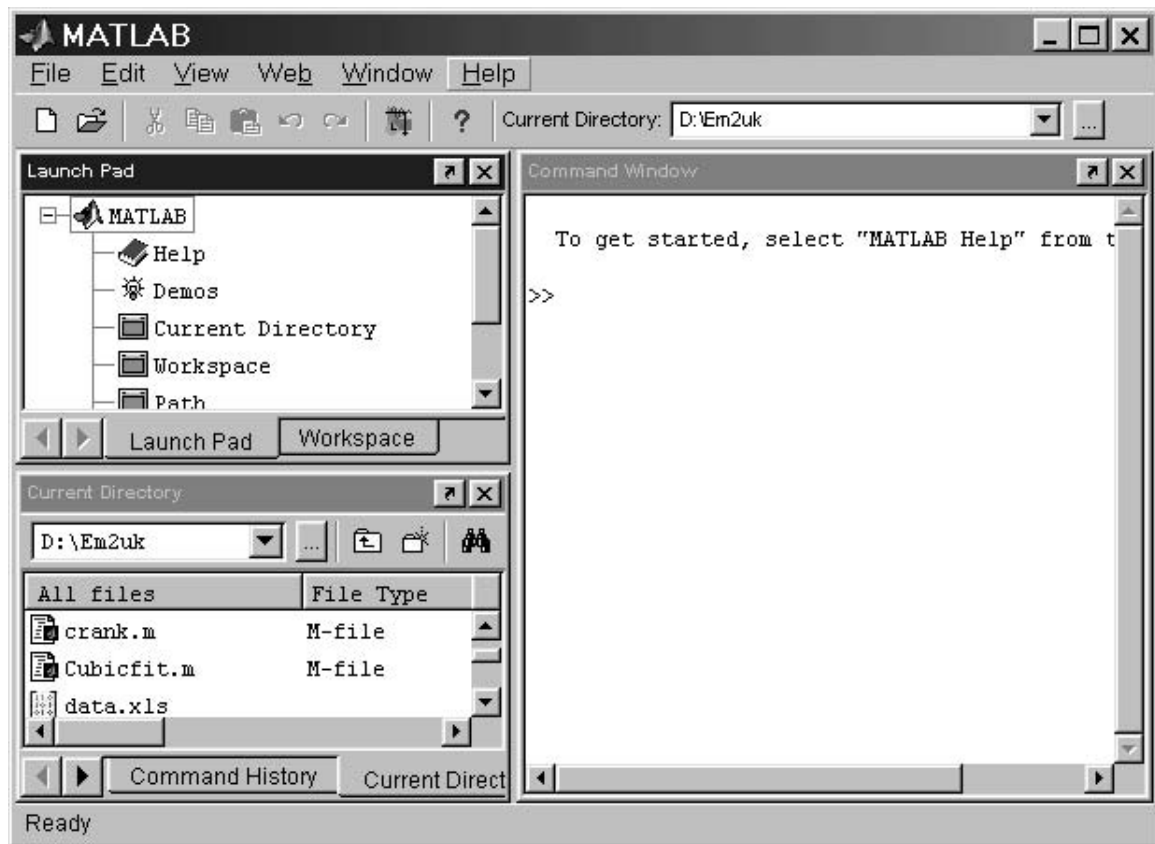


Figure 1.1 The MATLAB desktop

To start MATLAB from Windows, double-click the MATLAB icon on your Windows desktop. To start it from a UNIX platform, type `matlab` at the operating system prompt. When MATLAB starts, the MATLAB desktop opens as shown in Figure 1.1. The window in the desktop that concerns us for this chapter is the Command Window, where the special `>>` prompt appears. This prompt means that MATLAB is waiting for a command. You can quit MATLAB at any time with one of the following:

- Click on the close box in the top right corner of the MATLAB desktop.
- Select **Exit MATLAB** from the desktop **File** menu.
- Enter `quit` or `exit` at the Command Window prompt.

Once you have started MATLAB try the following exercises in the Command Window. If necessary, make the Command Window active by clicking anywhere inside its border.

1. First let's see if MATLAB is any good at arithmetic.

- (a) Type `2+3` after the `>>` prompt, followed by **Enter**, i.e. press the **Enter** key, indicated by `<Enter>` below:

```
>> 2+3  <Enter>
```

Commands are only carried out when you press **Enter**.

- (b) If MATLAB got that right, try $2*3$, i.e.

```
>> 2*3 <Enter>
```

What about $1/2$ and 2^3 ? Can you figure out what the symbols $*$, $/$ and $^$ mean?

- You can edit a MATLAB command before pressing **Enter** by using various combinations of the **Backspace**, **Left-arrow**, **Right-arrow** and **Del** keys.
 - The line with the \gg prompt is called the *command line*.
 - You can select (and edit) previous commands you have entered using **Up-arrow** and **Down-arrow**. But remember to press **Enter** to get the command carried out. This helpful feature is called *command line editing*.
 - MATLAB has a useful editing feature called *smart recall*. Just type the first few characters of the command you want to recall, e.g. type the characters $2*$ and press the **Up-arrow** key—this recalls the most recent command starting with $2*$.
- (c) How do you think MATLAB would handle $0/1$ and $1/0$? Try it. MATLAB is sensible about errors. It warns you in case you didn't realize you were dividing by zero, but still gives the answer `Inf`. If you insist on using ∞ in a calculation, type the symbol `Inf` (short for *infinity*), e.g. try $13+\text{Inf}$ and $29/\text{Inf}$.
- (d) Another special value that you may meet is `NaN`, which stands for *Not-a-Number*. It is the answer to calculations like $0/0$.

2. Now for some algebra.

- (a) Enter the command (in programming jargon a *statement*) $a = 2$, i.e. the MATLAB command line should look like this:

```
>> a = 2 <Enter>
```

a is called a *variable*. This statement *assigns* the value of 2 to a . (Note that this value is displayed immediately after the statement is executed.) Now try entering the statement $a = a + 7$ followed on a new line by $a = a * 10$. Do you agree with the final value of a ?

- (b) Now enter the statement

```
b = 3; <Enter>
```

Can you see the effect of the semi-colon (`;`)? It prevents the value of b from being displayed. However, b still has the value 3 as you can see simply by entering its name without a semi-colon at the prompt.

- (c) Assign any values you like to two variables x and y . Now see if you can in a single statement assign the *sum* of x and y to a third variable z .
3. MATLAB has most of the usual mathematical functions that you will find on your calculator, like `sin`, `cos`, `log` (meaning the *natural* logarithm), as well as a lot more.
- (a) Find $\sqrt{\pi}$ with the command `sqrt(pi)`. The answer should be 1.7725. Note that MATLAB knows the value of `pi`, because it is one of MATLAB's very many built-in functions.
- (b) Trigonometric functions like `sin(x)` expect the argument x to be in *radians*. Multiply degrees by $\pi/180$ to get radians. For example, use MATLAB to calculate $\sin(90^\circ)$. The answer should be 1, i.e. `sin(90*pi/180)`.
- (c) The exponential function e^x is computed in MATLAB as `exp(x)`. Use this information to find e and $1/e$ (2.7183 and 0.3679).

4. MATLAB has a lot of general functions. Try `date` and `calendar` for starters.

5. MATLAB also has a number of *commands*, such as `clc` (for *clear command window*). `help` is another command you will use a lot (see below). The difference between functions and commands is that functions usually return with a value, e.g. the date, while commands tend to change the environment in some way, e.g. by clearing the screen, or saving some statements to disk.

6. Variables such as a and b above are called *scalars*; they are single-valued. MATLAB also handles *vectors* (generally referred to in MATLAB as *arrays*), which are the key to many powerful features of the language. The easiest way of defining a vector where the elements (components) increase by the same amount is with a statement like

```
>> x = 0 : 10;
```

Enter it. That's a *colon* (`:`) between the 0 and the 10. There's no need to leave a space on either side of it, but it makes it more readable. Enter `x` to check that `x` is a vector now.

- (a) The really cool thing about MATLAB is that other vectors can now be defined in terms of our vector `x`. Try

```
>> y = 2 * x
```

and

```
>> z = sin(x)
```

(no semi-colons).

- (b) All you have to do to draw the graph of $\sin(x)$ is to enter the command

```
>> plot(x, sin(x))
```

(or simply `plot(x, z)` if you defined `z` correctly). The graph appears in a separate figure window (see Figure 1.2). You can select the Command Window or figure windows by clicking anywhere inside them, or you can use the **Windows** pull-down menus in any of these windows.

- (c) The graph looks rather crude, because more points need to be plotted between 0 and 10. To fix this, make the vector `x` go up in steps of 0.1 instead of 1 like this:

```
>> x = 0 : 0.1 : 10;
```

When there are three numbers separated by two colons in this way, the middle number is the *increment*. Now enter `plot(x, sin(x))` to get a much neater graph. You can put a grid on the graph to make it easier to read with

```
>> plot(x, sin(x)), grid
```

- (d) If you want to see more cycles of the sine graph just use command-line editing to change `sin(x)` to `sin(2*x)`.
- (e) Try drawing the graph of $\tan(x)$ over the same domain. You may find aspects of your graph surprising. A more accurate version is presented in Chapter 5.
- (f) Another useful Command Window editing feature is *tab completion*: type the first few letters of a MATLAB name and then press the **Tab** key. If the name is unique, it is automatically completed. If the name is not unique, press the **Tab** a second time to see all the possibilities. Try this feature out, e.g. by typing `ta` at the command line followed by **Tab** twice.
7. If you're into linear equations, you can solve two simultaneous equations very easily, e.g.

$$x + 2y = 4,$$

$$2x - y = 3.$$

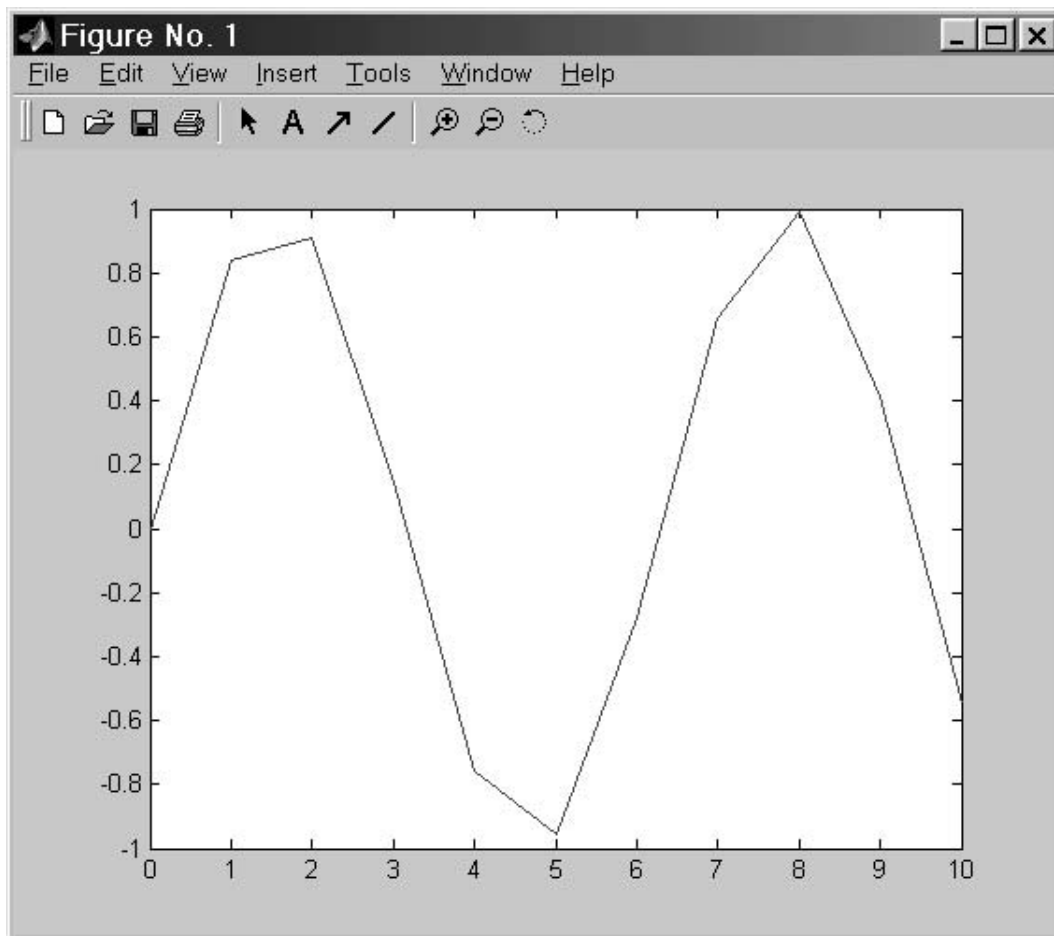


Figure 1.2 A figure window

All you have to do is type the following commands (exactly as they are)

```
>> a = [1 2; 2 -1];
>> b = [4; 3];
>> x = a\b
```

which result in

```
x =
     2
     1
```

i.e. $x = 2$, $y = 1$.

8. If you want a spectacular sample of what MATLAB has to offer, try `demo` at the command line. Alternatively, double-click **Demos** in the Launch Pad. (If you can't see **Demos**, click on the + next to the MATLAB item in the Launch Pad to expand it.) For a listing of demonstration programs by category try `help demos`.

9. MATLAB has a very useful ‘help’ system, which we look at in more detail in Chapter 2. For the moment type `help` at the command line to see all the categories on which you can get help. E.g. type `help elfun` to see all MATLAB’s elementary mathematical functions. `lookfor` enables you to search for a particular string in the help text of functions, e.g. `lookfor eigenvalue` displays all the functions relating to eigenvalues.
10. MATLAB has all sorts of other goodies. For example, you can generate *magic squares*, e.g. `magic(10)`, where the rows, columns and the main diagonal all add up to the same value. Try it. In general, an $n \times n$ magic square has a row and column sum of $n(n^2 + 1)/2$. You can even get a *contour* plot of the elements of a magic square. MATLAB pretends that the entries in the square are heights above sea level of points on a map, and draws the contour lines. `contour(magic(22))` looks rather nice.
11. If you want to see the famous Mexican hat shown in Figure 1.3, enter the following four lines (be careful not to make any typing errors):

```
>> [x y] = meshgrid(-8 : 0.5 : 8);
>> r = sqrt(x.^2 + y.^2) + eps;
>> z = sin(r) ./ r;
>> mesh(z);
```

Try `surf(z)` to generate a faceted (tiled) view of the surface. `surf(z)` or `meshc(z)` draws a 2-D contour plot under the surface. The command

```
>>surf(z), shading flat
```

produces a rather nice picture by removing the grid lines.

12. If your PC has a speaker you could try

```
load handel
sound(y, Fs)
```

for a snatch of Handel’s Hallelujah Chorus.

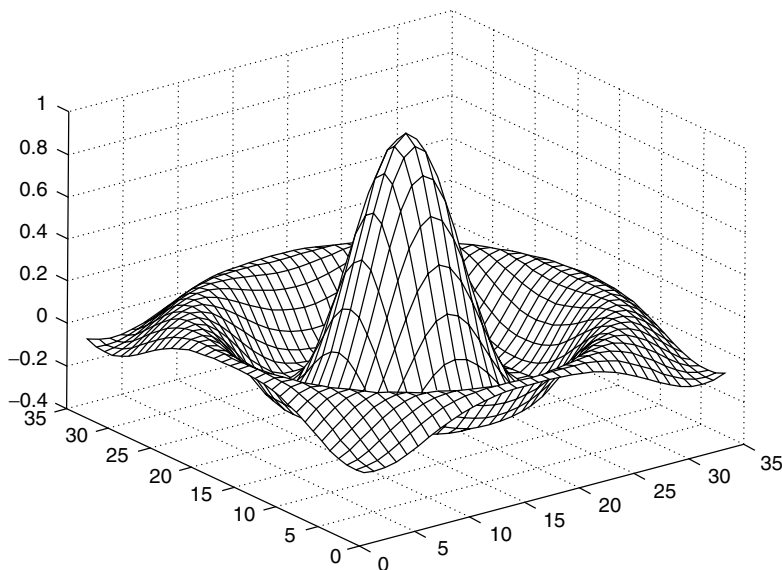


Figure 1.3 The Mexican hat

For some different sounds you can try loading `chirp`, `gong`, `laughter`, `splat` and `train`. You have to run `sound(y, Fs)` for each one.

13. If you want to see a view of the Earth from space, try

```
load earth
image(X); colormap(map)
axis image
```

14. Finally, if you're really bored, try `why`. Why not?

1.3 Website

Source code for most of the examples and solutions to exercises in this book can be downloaded from its website at www.bh.com/companions/essentialmatlab

Summary

- MATLAB is a matrix-based computer system designed to assist in scientific and engineering problem solving.
- To use MATLAB, you enter commands and statements on the command line in the Command Window. They are carried out immediately.
- `quit` or `exit` terminates MATLAB.
- `clc` clears the Command Window.
- `help` and `lookfor` provide help.
- `plot` draws an x - y graph in a figure window.
- `grid` draws grid lines on a graph.

Exercise

- 1.1 Give values to variables `a` and `b` on the command line, e.g. `a = 3` and `b = 5`. Write some statements to find the sum, difference, product and quotient of `a` and `b`.

Solutions to many of the exercises are in Appendix E.

2

MATLAB fundamentals

Objectives

The objectives of this chapter are to introduce you to some of the fundamentals of MATLAB programming, including:

- various MATLAB desktop and editing features;
- variables, operators and expressions;
- vectors (arrays);
- basic input and output;
- repetition (`for`);
- decisions (`if`).

By now you will probably be wanting to use MATLAB to solve problems of your own. In this chapter we will look in detail at how to write MATLAB statements to solve simple problems. There are two essential requirements for successful MATLAB programming:

- You need to learn the *exact* rules for writing MATLAB statements.
- You need to develop a logical plan of attack for solving particular problems.

This chapter is devoted mainly to the first requirement: learning some basic MATLAB rules. Computer programming is a precise science (some would say it is also an art); you have to enter statements in *precisely* the right way. If you don't, you will get rubbish. There is a saying among computer programmers:

Garbage in, garbage out.

If you give MATLAB a garbage instruction, you will get a garbage result.

Once you have mastered the basic rules in this chapter, you can go on to more interesting and substantial problems. But first we need a quick tour of the MATLAB desktop.

2.1 The MATLAB desktop

The default MATLAB desktop is shown in Figure 1.1. It should immediately be stressed that MATLAB has an extremely useful online Help system. If you are serious about learning MATLAB you should make it your business to work through the various Help features, starting with the section on the desktop.

To get into the Help browser, either expand the MATLAB item in the Launch Pad and click on **Help**, or click on the help button (?) in the desktop toolbar, or select the **Help** menu in any tool. Having opened the Help browser, select the **Contents** tab in the **Help Navigator** pane on the left. To get to the desktop section expand successively the MATLAB, **Getting Started** and **Development Environment** items. **MATLAB Desktop** is listed under the latter. When you've looked at the **Desktop** item you should go on to **Desktop Tools**. (If you mess up your desktop and want to get back to the default, select the **View -> Desktop Layout -> Default** menu item.)

The desktop contains a number of *tools*. We have already used the Command Window. On the left is the Launch Pad, which shares a 'docking' position with the Workspace browser (underneath the Launch Pad in the default). Use the tabs to switch between the Launch Pad and the Workspace browser. Below the Launch Pad you will find the Command History, sharing with the Current Directory browser.

You can resize any of these windows in the usual way. A window can be moved out of the MATLAB desktop by *undocking* it. Do this either by clicking on the arrow in the window's title bar, or by making the window active (click anywhere inside it) and then selecting **Undock** from the **View** menu.

To dock a tool window that is outside the MATLAB desktop (i.e. to move it back into the desktop) select **Dock** from its **View** menu.

You can group desktop windows so that they occupy the same space in the MATLAB desktop. Access to the individual windows is then by means of their tabs. To group windows in this way drag the title bar of one window on top of the title bar of the other window. The outline of the window you're dragging overlays the target window, and the bottom of the outline includes a tab. The Status bar informs you to Release the mouse button to tab-dock these windows. If you release the mouse the windows are duly tab-docked in the outlined position.

There are six predefined MATLAB desktop configurations, which you can select from the **View -> Desktop Layout** menu.

2.2 Programs

In Chapter 1 we saw some simple examples of how to use MATLAB, by entering single commands or statements at the MATLAB prompt. However, you might want to solve problems which MATLAB can't do in one line, like finding the roots of a quadratic equation (and taking all the special cases into account). A *collection* of statements to solve such a problem is called a *program*. In this section we look at the mechanics of writing and running two short programs, without bothering too much about how they work—explanations will follow in the rest of the chapter.

Cut and paste

Suppose you want to draw the graph of $e^{-0.2x} \sin(x)$ over the domain 0 to 6π , as shown in Figure 2.1. The Windows environment lends itself to nifty *cut and paste* editing, which you would do well to master. Proceed as follows.

From the MATLAB desktop select **File -> New -> M-file**, or click the new file button on the desktop toolbar. This action opens an Untitled window in the Editor/Debugger. You can regard this for the time being as a 'scratch pad' in which to write programs. Now type the following two lines in the Editor, exactly as they appear here:

```
x = 0 : pi/20 : 6 * pi;
plot(x, exp(-0.2*x) .* sin(x), 'r'),grid
```

Incidentally, that *is* a dot (full stop, period) in front of the second * in the second line—explanation later! The additional argument 'r' for plot will draw a red graph, just to be different.

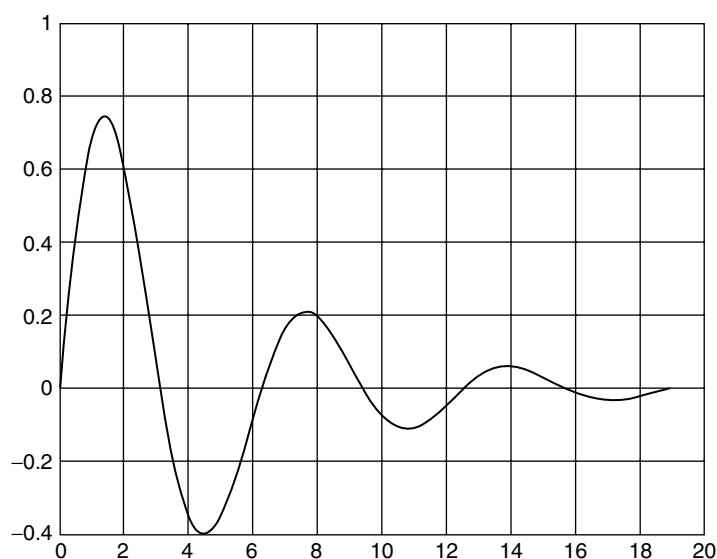


Figure 2.1 $e^{-0.2x} \sin(x)$

Next, move the mouse pointer (which now looks like a very thin capital I) to the left of the x in the first line. Keep the left mouse button down while moving the mouse pointer to the end of the second line. This process is called *dragging*. Both lines should be highlighted at this stage, probably in blue, to indicate that they have been *selected*.

Select the **Edit** menu in the Editor window, and click on **Copy** (or just use the keyboard shortcut **Ctrl+C**). This action copies the highlighted text to the Windows *clipboard*, assuming that your operating system is Windows.

Now go back to the Command Window. Make sure the cursor is positioned at the \gg prompt (click there if necessary). Select the **Edit** menu, and click on **Paste** (or use the **Ctrl+V** shortcut). The contents of the clipboard will be copied into the Command Window. To execute the two lines in the program, press **Enter**. The graph should appear in a figure window.

This process, from highlighting (selecting) text in the Editor, to copying it into the Command Window, is called ‘cut and paste’ (more correctly ‘copy and paste’ here, since the original text is copied from the Editor, rather than being cut from it). It’s well worth practising until you have it right.

If you need to correct the program, go back to the Editor, click at the position of the error (this moves the *insertion point* to the right place), make the correction, and cut and paste again. Alternatively, you can use command-line editing to correct mistakes. As yet another alternative, you can paste from the Command History window (which incidentally goes back over many previous sessions). To select multiple lines in the Command History window keep **Ctrl** down while you click.

If you prefer, you can enter multiple lines directly in the Command Window. To prevent the whole group from running until you have entered the last line use **Shift+Enter** or **Ctrl+Enter** after each line until the last. Then press **Enter** to run all the lines.

As another example, suppose you have \$1000 saved in the bank. Interest is compounded at the rate of 9 per cent per year. What will your bank balance be after one year? Now, if you want to write a MATLAB program to find your new balance, you must be able to do the problem yourself in principle. Even with a relatively simple problem like this, it often helps first to write down a rough *structure plan*:

1. Get the data (initial balance and interest rate) into MATLAB.
2. Calculate the interest (9 per cent of \$1000, i.e. \$90).
3. Add the interest to the balance (\$90 + \$1000, i.e. \$1090).
4. Display the new balance.

Go back to the Editor. To clear out any previous text, select it as usual by dragging (or use **Ctrl+A**), and press the **Del** key. By the way, to de-select highlighted text, click anywhere outside the selection area. Enter the following program, and then cut and paste it to the Command Window.

```
balance = 1000;
rate = 0.09;
interest = rate * balance;
balance = balance + interest;
disp( 'New balance:' );
disp( balance );
```

When you press **Enter** to run it, you should get the following output in the Command Window:

```
New balance:
    1090
```

Saving a program: script files

We have seen how to cut and paste between the Editor and the Command Window in order to write and run MATLAB programs. Obviously you need to save the program if you want to use it again later.

To save the contents of the Editor, select **File** -> **Save** from the Editor menubar. A **Save file as:** dialogue box appears. Select a directory and enter a file name, which *must* have the extension `.m`, in the **File name:** box, e.g. `junk.m`. Click on **Save**. The Editor window now has the title `junk.m`. If you make subsequent changes to `junk.m` in the Editor, an asterisk appears next to its name at the top of the Editor until you save the changes.

A MATLAB program saved from the Editor (or any ASCII text editor) with the extension `.m` is called a *script file*, or simply a *script*. (MATLAB *function* files also have the extension `.m`. MATLAB therefore refers to both script and function files generally as *M-files*.) The special significance of a script file is that, if you enter its name at the command-line prompt, MATLAB carries out each statement in the script file as if it were entered at the prompt.

The rules for script file names are the same as those for MATLAB variable names (see below in Section 2.3).

As an example, save the compound interest program above in a script file under the name `compint.m`. Then simply enter the name

```
compint
```

at the prompt in the Command Window. The statements in `compint.m` will be carried out exactly as if you had pasted them into the Command Window. You have effectively created a new MATLAB command, viz. `compint`.

A script file may be listed in the Command Window with the command `type`, e.g.

```
type compint
```

(the extension `.m` may be omitted).

Script files provide a useful way of managing large programs which you do not necessarily want to paste into the Command Window every time you run them.

Current directory

When you run a script, you have to make sure that MATLAB's current directory (indicated in the **Current Directory** field on the right of the desktop toolbar) is set to the directory in which the script is saved. To change the current directory type the path for the new current directory in the **Current Directory** field, or select a directory from the drop-down list of previous working directories, or click on the browse button (`...`) to select a new directory.

The current directory may also be changed in this way from the Current Directory browser in the desktop.

You can change the current directory from the command line with `cd` command, e.g.

```
cd \mystuff
```

The command `cd` by itself returns the name of the current directory.

Recommended way to run a script: from the Current Directory browser

A handy way to run a script is as follows. Select the file in the Current Directory browser. Right-click it. The *context menu* appears (context menus are a general feature of the desktop). Select **Run** from the context menu. The results appear in the Command Window. If you want to edit the script, select **Open** from the context menu.

To specify the types of files shown in the Current Directory Browser, use **View -> Current Directory Filter**. For example, you may wish to see only M-files. Alternatively, you can right-click the column title in the Current Directory browser and use the context menu.

You can sort the files in the Current Directory browser by clicking the title of the file column. A click 'toggles' the sort, i.e. from ascending to descending order or vice versa.

Note that the Help portion of an M-file appears in the pane at the bottom of the Current Directory browser. Try this out some M-files in one of the MATLAB directories, e.g. `\toolbox\matlab\elmat`. A one-line description of the M-file appears in the right-most column of the Current Directory browser (you may need to enlarge the browser to see all the columns).

How a program works

We will now discuss in detail how the compound interest program works.

The MATLAB system is technically called an *interpreter* (as opposed to a *compiler*). This means that each statement presented to the command line is translated (interpreted) into language the computer understands better, and then *immediately* carried out.

A fundamental concept in MATLAB is how numbers are stored in the computer's *random access memory* (RAM). If a MATLAB statement needs to store a number, space in the RAM is set aside for it. You can think of this part of the memory as a bank of boxes or *memory locations*, each of which can hold only one number at a time. These memory locations are referred to by symbolic names in MATLAB statements. So the statement

```
balance = 1000
```

allocates the number 1000 to the memory location named `balance`. Since the contents of `balance` may be changed during a session it is called a *variable*.

The statements in our program are therefore interpreted by MATLAB as follows:

1. Put the number 1000 into variable `balance`.
2. Put the number 0.09 into variable `rate`.
3. Multiply the contents of `rate` by the contents of `balance` and put the answer in `interest`.
4. Add the contents of `balance` to the contents of `interest` and put the answer in `balance`.
5. Display (in the Command Window) the message given in single quotes.
6. Display the contents of `balance`.

It hardly seems necessary to stress this, but these interpreted statements are carried out *in order from the top down*. When the program has finished running, the variables used will have the following values:

```
balance : 1090
interest : 90
rate    : 0.09
```

Note that the original value of `balance` (1000) is lost.

Try the following exercises:

1. Run the program as it stands.
2. Change the first statement in the program to read

```
balance = 2000;
```

Make sure that you understand what happens now when the program runs.

3. Leave out the line

```
balance = balance + interest;
```

and re-run. Can you explain what happens?

4. Try to rewrite the program so that the original value of `balance` is *not* lost.

A number of questions have probably occurred to you by now, such as

- What names may be used for variables?
- How can numbers be represented?
- What happens if a statement won't fit on one line?
- How can we organize the output more neatly?

These questions will be answered shortly. However, before we write any more complete programs there are some additional basic concepts which need to be introduced.

2.3 Variables and the workspace

Variables

Variables are fundamental to programming. In a sense, the art of programming is

getting the right values in the right variables at the right time.

A variable name (like `balance`) must comply with the following two rules:

1. It may consist only of the letters a–z, the digits 0–9 and the underscore (`_`).
2. It must start with a letter.

A variable name may be as long as you like, but MATLAB only remembers the first 31 characters.

Examples of valid variable names: `r2d2` `pay_day`

Examples of invalid names (why?): `pay-day` `2a` `name$` `_2a`

A variable is created simply by assigning a value to it, at the command line, or in a program, e.g.

```
a = 98
```

If you attempt to refer to a non-existent variable you will get the error message

```
??? Undefined function or variable ...
```

The official MATLAB documentation refers to all variables as *arrays*, whether they are single-valued (scalars) or multi-valued (vectors or matrices).

Case sensitivity

MATLAB is *case-sensitive*, which means it distinguishes between upper- and lowercase letters. So `balance`, `BALANCE` and `BaLance` are three different variables.

Many programmers write variable names in lowercase except for the first letter of the second and subsequent words, if the name consists of more than one word run together. This style is known as *camel caps*, the uppercase letters looking like a camel's humps (with a bit of imagination). For example, `camelCaps`, `milleniumBug`, `dayOfTheWeek`. Other programmers prefer to separate words with underscores.

Command and function names are also case-sensitive. However, note that when you use the command-line `help`, function names are given in capitals, e.g. `CLC`, solely to emphasize them. You must *not* use capitals when running functions and commands.

The workspace

Another fundamental concept in MATLAB is the *workspace*. Enter the command `clear`, and then run the compound interest program again. Now enter the command `who`. You should see a list of variables as follows:

```
Your variables are:
balance      interest    rate
```

All the variables you create during a session remain in the workspace until you `clear` them. You can use or change their values at any stage during the session.

The command `who` lists the names of all the variables in your workspace.

The function `ans` returns the value of the last expression evaluated but not assigned to a variable.

The command `whos` lists the size of each variable as well:

Name	Size	Bytes	Class
<code>balance</code>	1x1	8	double array
<code>interest</code>	1x1	8	double array
<code>rate</code>	1x1	8	double array

Each variable here occupies eight *bytes* of storage. A byte is the amount of computer memory required for one character (if you are interested, one byte is the same as eight *bits*).

These variables each have a *size* of '1-by-1', because they are *scalars*, as opposed to vectors or matrices (although as mentioned above MATLAB regards them all as 1-by-1 arrays).

`double` means that the variable holds numeric values as double-precision floating point (see Section 2.6).

The command `clear` removes all variables from the workspace.

A particular variable can be removed from the workspace, e.g. `clear rate` .

More than one variable can also be cleared, e.g. `clear rate balance` (separate the variable names with spaces, *not commas!*).

When you run a program, any variables created by it remain in the workspace after it has run. This means that existing variables with the same names get overwritten.

The Workspace Browser in the desktop provides a handy visual representation of the workspace. You can view and even change the values of workspace variables with the Array Editor. To activate the Array Editor click on a variable in the Workspace Browser, or right-click to get the more general context menu. Note from the context menu that you can draw graphs of workspace variables in various ways.

Adding commonly used constants to the workspace

If you often use the same physical or mathematical constants in your MATLAB sessions, you can save them in an M-file and run it at the start of a session. For example, the following statements could be saved in `myconst.m`:

```
g = 9.8; % acceleration due to gravity
avo = 6.023e23; % Avogadro's number
e = 2.718281828459045; % base of natural log
pi_4 = pi / 4;
log10e = log10( e );
bar_to_kP = 101.325; % atmospheres to kiloPascals
```

If you run `myconst` at the start of a session these six variables will be part of the workspace and will be available for the rest of the session, or until you `clear` them.

2.4 Arrays: vectors and matrices

As mentioned earlier, the name MATLAB stands for MATrix LABoratory because MATLAB has been designed to work with *matrices*. A matrix is a rectangular object (e.g. a *table*) consisting of rows and columns. We will postpone most of the details of proper matrices and how MATLAB works with them until Chapter 6.

A *vector* is a special type of matrix, having only one row, or one column. Vectors are also called *lists* or *arrays* in other programming languages. If you haven't come across vectors officially yet, don't worry—just think of them as lists of numbers.

MATLAB handles vectors and matrices in the same way, but since vectors are easier to think about than matrices, we will look at them first. This will enhance your understanding and appreciation of many other aspects of MATLAB. As mentioned above, MATLAB refers to scalars, vectors and matrices generally as arrays. We will also use the term array generally, with vector and matrix referring to their 1-D and 2-D forms.

Initializing vectors: explicit lists

To get going, try the following short exercises on the command line. (You won't need reminding about the command prompt `>>` any more, so it will no longer appear unless the context absolutely demands it.)

1. Enter a statement like

```
x = [1 3 0 -1 5]
```

Can you see that you have created a vector (list) with five *elements*? (Make sure to leave out the semi-colon so that you can see the list.)

2. Enter the command `disp(x)` to see how MATLAB displays a vector.
3. Enter the command `whos` (or look in the Workspace browser). Under the heading `Size` you will see that `x` is 1-by-5, which means 1 row and 5 columns. You will also see that the total number of elements is 5.
4. You can put commas instead of spaces between vector elements if you like. Try this:

```
a = [5,6,7]
```

5. Don't forget the commas (or spaces) between elements, otherwise you could end up with something quite different, e.g.

```
x = [130-15]
```

What do you think this gives?

6. You can use one vector in a list for another one, e.g. type in the following:

```
a = [1 2 3];  
b = [4 5];  
c = [a -b];
```

Can you work out what *c* will look like before displaying it?

7. And what about this?

```
a = [1 3 7];  
a = [a 0 -1];
```

8. Enter the following

```
x = [ ]
```

and then note in the Workspace browser that the size of *x* is given as 0-by-0 because *x* is *empty*. This means *x* is defined, and can be used where an array is appropriate without causing an error; however, it has no size or value.

Making *x* empty is *not* the same as saying *x* = 0 (*x* has size 1-by-1), or `clear x` (which removes *x* from the workspace, making it undefined).

An empty array may be used to remove elements from an array (see below on **Subscripts**).

These are all examples of the *explicit list* method of *initializing* vectors. Remember the following important rules:

1. Elements in the list must be enclosed in *square* not round brackets.
2. Elements in the list must be separated *either by spaces or by commas*.

Initializing vectors: the colon operator

A vector can also be generated (initialized) with the *colon operator*, as we have seen. Enter the following statements:

```
x = 1:10
```

(elements are the integers 1, 2, ..., 10);

```
x = 1:0.5:4
```

(elements are the values 1, 1.5, ..., 4 in increments of 0.5—note that if the colons separate three values, the *middle* value is the increment);

```
x = 10:-1:1
```

(elements are the integers 10, 9, ..., 1, since the increment is *negative*);

```
x = 1:2:6
```

(elements are 1, 3, 5; note that when the increment is positive but not equal to 1, the last element is not allowed to exceed the value after the second colon);

```
x = 0:-2:-5
```


(elements are 0, -2, -4; note that when the increment is negative but not equal to -1, the last element is not allowed to be less than the value after the second colon);

```
x = 1:0
```

(a complicated way of generating an empty vector!).

linspace

The function `linspace` can be used to initialize a vector of equally spaced values, e.g.

```
linspace(0, pi/2, 10)
```

creates a vector of 10 equally spaced points from 0 to $\pi/2$ (inclusive).

Transposing vectors

All these vectors are *row vectors*. Each has one row and several columns. To generate the *column vectors* that are often needed in mathematics, you need to *transpose* such vectors, i.e. you need to interchange their rows and columns. This is done with the single quote, or *apostrophe* (`'`), which is the nearest MATLAB can get to the mathematical dash (`'`) that is often used to indicate the transpose.

Enter `x = 1:5` and then enter `x'` to display the transpose of `x`. Note that `x` itself remains a row vector.

Or you can create a column vector directly:

```
y = [1 4 8 0 -1]'
```

Subscripts

We can refer to particular elements of a vector by means of *subscripts*. Try the following:

1. Enter `r = rand(1,7)`
This gives you a row vector of seven *random numbers*.
2. Now enter `r(3)`
This will display the *third* element of `r`. The number 3 is the *subscript*.
3. Now enter `r(2:4)`
This should give you the second, third and fourth elements.
4. What about `r(1:2:7)`?
5. And `r([1 7 2 6])`?
6. You can use an empty vector to *remove* elements from a vector, e.g.

```
r([1 7 2]) = [ ]
```

will remove elements 1, 7 and 2.

To summarize:

A subscript is indicated inside *round* brackets.

A subscript may be a scalar or a vector.

In MATLAB subscripts always start at 1.

Fractional subscripts are always rounded *down*, e.g. `x(1.9)` refers to element `x(1)`.

Matrices

A *matrix* may be thought of as a table consisting of rows and columns. You create a matrix just as you do a vector, except that a semi-colon is used to indicate the end of a row, e.g. the statement

```
a = [1 2 3; 4 5 6]
```

results in

```
a =
     1     2     3
     4     5     6
```

A matrix may be transposed, e.g. with `a'` initialized as above, the statement `a'` results in

```
a =
     1     4
     2     5
     3     6
```

A matrix can be constructed from column vectors of the same length. The statements

```
x = 0:30:180;
table = [x' sin(x*pi/180)']
```

result in

```
table =
      0      0
 30.0000  0.5000
 60.0000  0.8660
 90.0000  1.0000
120.0000  0.8660
150.0000  0.5000
180.0000  0.0000
```

Capturing output

You can use cut and paste techniques to tidy up the output from MATLAB statements, if this is necessary for some sort of presentation. Generate the table of angles and sines as shown above. Select all seven rows of numerical output in the Command Window. Copy the selected output to the Editor. You can then edit the output, e.g. by inserting text headings above each column (this is easier than trying to get headings to line up over the columns with a `disp` statement). The edited output can in turn be pasted into a report, or printed as it is (the **File** menu has a number of printing options).

Another way of capturing output is with the `diary` command. The command

```
diary filename
```

copies everything that subsequently appears in the Command Window to the text file *filename*. You can then edit the resulting file with any text editor (including the MATLAB Editor). Stop recording the session with

```
diary off
```

Note that `diary` *appends* material to an existing file, i.e. adds it on at the end.

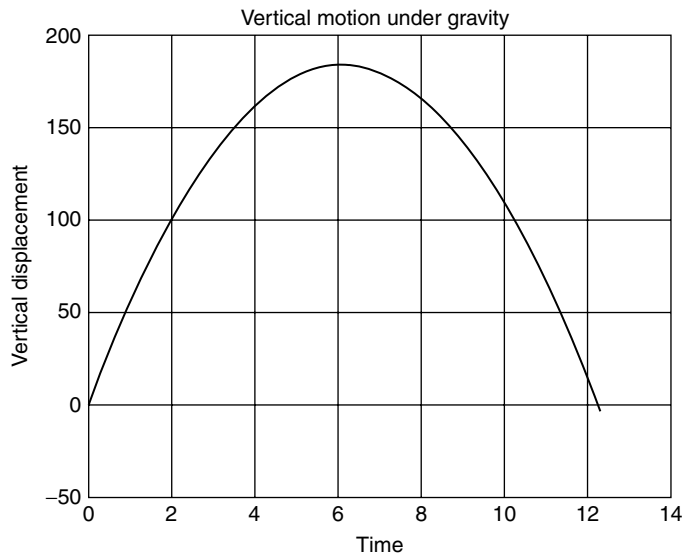


Figure 2.2 Distance-time graph of stone thrown vertically upward

2.5 Vertical motion under gravity

If a stone is thrown vertically upward with an initial speed u , its vertical displacement s after a time t has elapsed is given by the formula $s = ut - gt^2/2$, where g is the acceleration due to gravity. Air resistance has been ignored. We would like to compute the value of s over a period of about 12.3 seconds at intervals of 0.1 seconds, and to plot the distance-time graph over this period, as shown in Figure 2.2. The structure plan for this problem is as follows:

1. Assign the data (g , u and t) to MATLAB variables.
2. Calculate the value of s according to the formula.
3. Plot the graph of s against t .
4. Stop.

This plan may seem trivial to you, and a waste of time writing down. Yet you would be surprised how many beginners, preferring to rush straight to the computer, start with step 2 instead of step 1. It is well worth developing the mental discipline of structure-planning your program first. You could even use cut and paste to plan as follows:

1. Type the structure plan into the Editor.
2. Paste a second copy of the plan directly below the first.
3. Translate each line in the second copy into a MATLAB statement, or statements (add `%` comments as in the example below).
4. Finally, paste all the translated MATLAB statements into the Command Window, and run them.
5. If necessary, go back to the Editor to make corrections, and re-paste the corrected statements to the Command Window (or save).

You might like to try this as an exercise, before looking at the final program, which is as follows:

```
% Vertical motion under gravity
g = 9.8;                % acceleration due to gravity
u = 60;                % initial velocity (metres/sec)
```

```

t = 0 : 0.1 : 12.3;           % time in seconds
s = u * t - g / 2 * t .^ 2;  % vertical displacement in metres

plot(t, s), title( 'Vertical motion under gravity' ), ...
      xlabel( 'time' ), ylabel( 'vertical displacement' ), grid
disp( [t' s'] )              % display a table

```

The graphical output is shown in Figure 2.2.

Note the following points:

1. Anything in a line following the percentage symbol % is ignored by MATLAB and may be used as a comment (description).
2. The statement `t = 0 : 0.1 : 12.3` sets up a vector.
3. The formula for `s` is evaluated *for every element* of the vector `t`, making another vector.
4. The expression `t.^2` squares *each element* in `t`. This is called an *array operation*, and is different to squaring the vector itself, which is a *matrix operation*, as we shall see later.
5. More than one statement can be entered on the same line if the statements are separated by commas.
6. A statement or group of statements can be continued to the next line with an *ellipsis* of three or more dots ...
7. The statement `disp([t' s'])` first transposes the row vectors `t` and `s` into columns, and constructs a matrix from these two columns, which is then displayed.

You might want to save the program under a helpful name, like `throw.m` if you think you might come back to it. In that case, it would be worth keeping the structure plan as part of the file; just insert % symbols in front of each line of the structure plan. This way, the structure plan reminds you what the program does when you look at it again after some months.

Note that you can use the context menu in the Editor to **Comment/Uncomment** a block of selected text.

2.6 Operators, expressions and statements

Any program worth its salt actually does something. What it basically does is to evaluate *expressions*, such as

$$u*t - g/2*t.^2$$

and to execute (carry out) statements, such as

$$\text{balance} = \text{balance} + \text{interest}$$

MATLAB has been described as ‘an *expression* based language. It interprets and evaluates typed expressions.’ Expressions are constructed from a variety of things, such as numbers, variables, and operators. First we need to look at numbers.

Numbers

Numbers can be represented in MATLAB in the usual decimal form (*fixed point*), with an optional decimal point, e.g.

$$1.2345 \quad -123 \quad .0001$$

A number may also be represented in *scientific notation*, e.g. 1.2345×10^9 may be represented in MATLAB as `1.2345e9`. This is also called *floating point* notation. The number has two parts: the

mantissa, which may have an optional decimal point (1.2345 in this example) and the *exponent* (9), which must be an integer (signed or unsigned). Mantissa and exponent must be separated by the letter e (or E). The mantissa is multiplied by the power of 10 indicated by the exponent.

Note that the following is *not* scientific notation: $1.2345 * 10^9$. It is actually an *expression* involving two arithmetic operations ($*$ and $^$) and therefore more time consuming. It's also rather uncool. You should try to avoid it.

Use scientific notation if the numbers are very small or very large, since there's less chance of making a mistake, e.g. represent 0.000000001 as $1e-9$.

On computers using standard floating point arithmetic, numbers are represented to approximately 16 significant decimal digits. The *relative accuracy* of numbers is given by the function `eps`, which is defined as the distance between 1.0 and the next largest floating point number. Enter `eps` to see its value on your computer.

The range of numbers is roughly $\pm 10^{-308}$ to $\pm 10^{308}$. Precise values for your computer are returned by the MATLAB functions `realmin` and `realmax`.

Exercises

Enter the following numbers at the command prompt in scientific notation (answers are below):

$$1.234 \times 10^5, \quad -8.765 \times 10^{-4}, \quad 10^{-15}, \quad -10^{12}.$$

(1.234e5, -8.765e-4, 1e-15, -1e12)

Data types

MATLAB has 14 fundamental data types (or classes). The default numeric data type is double-precision; all MATLAB computations are done in double-precision.

MATLAB also supports signed and unsigned integer types and single-precision floating point, by means of functions such as `int8`, `uint8`, `single`, etc. However, before mathematical operations can be performed on such data types they must first be converted to double-precision using the `double` function.

Look up `data types [2]` in the online Help index for more information.

Arithmetic operators

The evaluation of expressions is achieved by means of *arithmetic operators*. The arithmetic operations on two *scalar* constants or variables are shown in Table 2.1. Operators operate on *operands* (a and b in the table.)

Table 2.1 Arithmetic operations between two scalars

Operation	Algebraic form	MATLAB
Addition	$a + b$	<code>a + b</code>
Subtraction	$a - b$	<code>a - b</code>
Multiplication	$a \times b$	<code>a * b</code>
Right division	a/b	<code>a / b</code>
Left division	b/a	<code>a \ b</code>
Power	a^b	<code>a ^ b</code>

Table 2.2 Precedence of arithmetic operations

Precedence	Operator
1	Parentheses (round brackets)
2	Power, left to right
3	Multiplication and division, left to right
4	Addition and subtraction, left to right

Left division seems a little curious: divide the right operand by the *left* operand. For *scalar* operands the expressions $1/3$ and $3\backslash 1$ have the same numerical value (a colleague of mine speaks the latter as ‘3 under 1’). However, *matrix* left division has an entirely different meaning, as we shall see later.

Precedence of operators

Several operations may be combined in one expression, e.g. $g * t ^ 2$. MATLAB has strict rules about which operations are performed first in such cases; these are called *precedence* rules. The precedence rules for the operators in Table 2.1 are shown in Table 2.2. Note that parentheses (round brackets) have the highest precedence. Note also the difference between round and square brackets. Round brackets are used to alter the precedence of operators, and to denote subscripts, while square brackets are used to create vectors.

When operators in an expression have the same precedence the operations are carried out from left to right. So $a / b * c$ is evaluated as $(a / b) * c$ and *not* as $a / (b * c)$.

Exercises

1. Evaluate the following MATLAB expressions yourself before checking the answers in MATLAB:

```

1 + 2 * 3
4 / 2 * 2
1+2 / 4
1 + 2\4
2*2 ^ 3
2 * 3 \ 3
2 ^ (1 + 2) / 3
1/2e-1

```

2. Use MATLAB to evaluate the following expressions. Answers are in brackets.

(a) $\frac{1}{2 \times 3}$ (0.1667)

(b) $2^{2 \times 3}$ (64)

(c) $1.5 \times 10^{-4} + 2.5 \times 10^{-2}$ (0.0252; use scientific notation)

The colon operator

The colon operator has a lower precedence than $+$ as the following shows:

```
1+1:5
```

The addition is carried out first, and then a vector with elements 2, ..., 5 is initialized.

You may be surprised at the following:

```
1 + [1 : 5]
```

Were you? The value 1 is added to *each element* of the vector 1 : 5. In this context, the addition is called an *array operation*, because it operates on each element of the vector (array). Array operations are discussed below.

See Appendix B for a complete list of MATLAB operators and their precedences.

The transpose operator

The transpose operator has the highest precedence. Try

```
1 : 5'
```

5 is transposed first (into itself since it is a scalar!), and then a row vector is formed. Use square brackets if you want to transpose the whole vector:

```
[1 : 5]'
```

Arithmetic operations on arrays

Enter the following statements at the command line:

```
a = [2 4 8];
b = [3 2 2];
a .* b
a ./ b
```

MATLAB has four further arithmetic operators, shown in Table 2.3. These operators work on corresponding elements of arrays with equal dimensions. The operations are sometimes called *array operations*, or *element-by-element* operations because the operations are performed element by element. For example, `a .* b` results in the following vector (sometimes called the *array product*):

```
[a(1)*b(1) a(2)*b(2) a(3)*b(3)]
```

i.e. [6 8 10].

You will have seen that `a ./ b` gives element-by-element division.

Now try `[2 3 4] .^ [4 3 1]`. The *i*th element of the first vector is raised to the power of the *i*th element of the second vector.

The period (dot) is necessary for the array operations of multiplication, division and exponentiation, because these operations are defined differently for matrices; the operation is then called a *matrix operation* (see Chapter 6).

With `a` and `b` as defined above, try `a + b` and `a - b`. For addition and subtraction, array operations and matrix operations are the same, so we don't need the period to distinguish between them.

Table 2.3 Arithmetic operators that operate element-by-element on arrays

<i>Operator</i>	<i>Description</i>
<code>.*</code>	Multiplication
<code>./</code>	Right division
<code>.\</code>	Left division
<code>.^</code>	Power

When array operations are applied to two vectors, they must both be the same size.

Array operations also apply to operations between a scalar and a non-scalar. Check this with $3 .* a$ and $a .* 2$. This property is called *scalar expansion*. Multiplication and division operations between scalars and non-scalars can be written with or without the period, i.e. if a is a vector, $3 .* a$ is the same as $3 * a$.

A common application of element-by-element multiplication is in finding the *scalar product* (also called the *dot product*) of two vectors \mathbf{x} and \mathbf{y} , which is defined as

$$\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y} = \sum_i x_i y_i.$$

The MATLAB function `sum(z)` finds the sum of the elements of the vector z , so the statement `sum(a .* b)` will find the scalar product of a and b (30 for a and b defined above).

Exercises

Use MATLAB array operations to do the following:

1. Add 1 to each element of the vector $[2 \ 3 \ -1]$.
2. Multiply each element of the vector $[1 \ 4 \ 8]$ by 3.
3. Find the array product of the two vectors $[1 \ 2 \ 3]$ and $[0 \ -1 \ 1]$. (Answer: $[0 \ -2 \ 3]$)
4. Square each element of the vector $[2 \ 3 \ 1]$.

Expressions

An *expression* is a formula consisting of variables, numbers, operators, and function names. An expression is evaluated when you enter it at the MATLAB prompt, e.g. evaluate 2π as follows:

```
2 * pi
```

MATLAB's response is:

```
ans =
    6.2832
```

Note that MATLAB uses the function `ans` (which stands for **answer**) to return the last expression to be evaluated but not assigned to a variable.

If an expression is terminated with a semi-colon (;) its value is not displayed, although it is still returned by `ans`.

Statements

MATLAB *statements* are frequently of the form

$$\text{variable} = \text{expression}$$

e.g.

```
s = u * t - g / 2 * t .^ 2;
```

This is an example of an *assignment* statement, because the value of the expression on the *right* is *assigned* to the variable (s) on the *left*. Assignment always works in this direction.

Note that the object on the left-hand side of the assignment must be a variable name. A common mistake is to get the statement the wrong way round, like

```
a + b = c
```

Basically any line that you enter in the Command Window or in a program, which MATLAB accepts, is a statement, so a statement could be an assignment, a command, or simply an expression, e.g.

```
x = 29;           % assignment
clear           % command
pi/2           % expression
```

This naming convention is in keeping with most other programming languages and serves to emphasize the different types of statements that are found in programming. However, the MATLAB documentation tends to refer to all of these as ‘functions’.

As we have seen, a semi-colon at the end of an assignment or expression suppresses any output. This is useful for suppressing irritating output of intermediate results (or large matrices).

A statement which is too long to fit onto one line may be continued to the next line with an *ellipsis* of at least three dots, e.g.

```
x = 3 * 4 - 8 ...
    / 2 ^ 2;
```

Statements on the same line may be separated by commas (output not suppressed) or semi-colons (output suppressed), e.g.

```
a = 2; b = 3, c = 4;
```

Note that the commas and semi-colons are not technically part of the statements; they are *separators*.

Statements may involve array operations, in which case the variable on the left-hand side may become a vector or matrix.

Statements, commands and functions

The distinction between MATLAB *statements*, *commands* and *functions* can be a little fuzzy, since all can be entered on the command line. However, it is helpful to think of commands as changing the general environment in some way, e.g. `load`, `save`, and `clear`. Statements do the sort of thing we usually associate with programming, such as evaluating expressions and carrying out assignments, making decisions (`if`), and repeating (`for`). Functions return with calculated values or perform some operation on data, e.g. `sin`, `plot`.

Vectorization of formulae

With array operations you can easily evaluate a formula repeatedly for a whole lot of data. This is one of MATLAB’s most useful and powerful features, and you should always be looking for ways of exploiting it.

As an example, consider the calculation of compound interest. An amount of money A invested over a period of n years with an annual interest rate of r grows to an amount $A(1+r)^n$. Suppose we want to calculate final balances for investments of \$750, \$1000, \$3000, \$5000 and \$11 999, over 10 years, with an interest rate of 9 per cent. The following program (`comp.m`) uses array operations on a vector of initial investments to do this.

```
format bank
A = [750 1000 3000 5000 11999];
r = 0.09;
n = 10;
B = A * (1 + r) ^ n;
disp( [A' B'] )
```

Output:

```

      750.00      1775.52
     1000.00     2367.36
     3000.00     7102.09
     5000.00    11836.82
    11999.00    28406.00

```

Note:

1. In the statement $B = A * (1 + r)^n$, the expression $(1 + r)^n$ is evaluated first, because exponentiation has a higher precedence than multiplication.
2. After that each element of the vector A is multiplied by the scalar $(1 + r)^n$ (scalar expansion).
3. The operator $*$ may be used instead of $.*$ because the multiplication is between a scalar and a non-scalar (although $.*$ would not cause an error because a scalar is a special case of an array).
4. A table is displayed, with columns given by the transposes of A and B .

This process is called *vectorization* of a formula.

See if you can adjust the program `comp.m` to find the balances for a single amount A (\$1000) over periods of 1, 5, 10, 15 and 20 years. **Hint:** use a vector for n : `[1 5 10 15 20]`.

Danger!

I have seen quite a few beginners make the following mistake. Run the `comp.m` program, and then enter the statement

```
A(1+r)^n
```

at the prompt. The output is an unexpected warning followed by a *scalar*:

```

Warning: Subscript indices must be integer values.
ans =
    5.6314e+028

```

Any ideas?

Well, the basic error is that the multiplication symbol $*$ has been left out after the A . However, MATLAB still obligingly gives a result! This is because round brackets after the A signify an element of a vector, in this case element number $1+r$, which rounds down to 1, since r has the value 0.09 (fractional subscripts are always rounded down). $A(1)$ has the value 750, so MATLAB obediently calculates 750^{10} .

The curious thing is that the same wrong answer is given even if A is a scalar, e.g. $A = 750$, because MATLAB treats a scalar as an array with one element (as `whos` demonstrates).

The moral is that you should develop the official MATLAB mindset of regarding all variables as 'arrays'.

Exercises

1. Evaluate the following MATLAB expressions yourself (don't use MATLAB to help!). Answers are in brackets.

```

2 / 2 * 3      (3)
2 / 3 ^ 2     (2/9)
(2 / 3) ^ 2   (4/9)
2 + 3 * 4 - 4 (10)

```

```

2 ^ 2 * 3 / 4 + 3      (6)
2 ^ (2 * 3) / (4 + 3) (64/7)
2 * 3 + 4              (10)
2 ^ 3 ^ 2              (64)
-4 ^ 2                 (-16; ^ has higher precedence than -)

```

2. Use MATLAB to evaluate the following expressions. Answers are in brackets again.

- (a) $\sqrt{2}$ (1.4142; use `sqrt` or `^0.5`)
 (b) $\frac{3+4}{5+6}$ (0.6364; use brackets)
 (c) the sum of 5 and 3 divided by their product (0.5333)
 (d) 2^{3^2} (512)
 (e) the square of 2π (39.4784; use `pi`)
 (f) $2\pi^2$ (19.7392)
 (g) $1/\sqrt{2\pi}$ (0.3989)
 (h) $\frac{1}{2\sqrt{\pi}}$ (0.2821)
 (i) the cube root of the product of 2.3 and 4.5 (2.1793)
 (j) $\frac{1 - \frac{2}{3+2}}{1 + \frac{2}{3-2}}$ (0.2)
 (k) $1000(1 + 0.15/12)^{60}$ (2107.2, e.g. \$1000 deposited for 5 years at 15 per cent per year, with the interest compounded monthly)
 (l) $(0.0000123 + 5.678 \times 10^{-3}) \times 0.4567 \times 10^{-4}$ (2.5988×10^{-7} ; use scientific notation, e.g. `1.23e-5 ...`; do *not* use `^`)

3. Try to avoid using unnecessary brackets in an expression. Can you spot the errors in the following expression (test your corrected version with MATLAB):

$$(2(3+4) / (5*(6+1)))^2$$

The MATLAB Editor has two useful ways of dealing with the problem of ‘unbalanced delimiters’ (which you should know about if you have been working through Help!):

- When you type a closing delimiter, i.e. a right `)`, `]` or `}`, its matching opening delimiter is briefly highlighted. So if you don’t see the highlighting when you type a right delimiter you immediately know you’ve got one too many.
- When you position the cursor anywhere inside a pair of delimiters and select **Text** -> **Balance Delimiters** (or press **Ctrl+B**) the characters inside the pair of delimiters are highlighted.

4. Set up a vector `n` with elements 1, 2, 3, 4, 5. Use MATLAB array operations on the vector `n` to set up the following four vectors, each with five elements:

- (a) 2, 4, 6, 8, 10
 (b) 1/2, 1, 3/2, 2, 5/2
 (c) 1, 1/2, 1/3, 1/4, 1/5
 (d) 1, 1/2², 1/3², 1/4², 1/5²

5. Suppose `a` and `b` are defined as follows:

```

a = [2 -1 5 0];
b = [3 2 -1 4];

```

Evaluate by hand the vector c in the following statements. Check your answers with MATLAB.

- (a) $c = a - b;$
- (b) $c = b + a - 3;$
- (c) $c = 2 * a + a .^{\wedge} b;$
- (d) $c = b ./ a;$
- (e) $c = b . \setminus a;$
- (f) $c = a .^{\wedge} b;$
- (g) $c = 2 .^{\wedge} b+a;$
- (h) $c = 2*b/3.*a;$
- (i) $c = b*2.*a;$

6. Water freezes at 32° and boils at 212° on the Fahrenheit scale. If C and F are Celsius and Fahrenheit temperatures, the formula

$$F = 9C/5 + 32$$

converts from Celsius to Fahrenheit.

Use the MATLAB command line to convert a temperature of 37° C (normal human temperature) to Fahrenheit (98.6°).

7. Engineers often have to convert from one unit of measurement to another; this can be tricky sometimes. You need to think through the process carefully.

For example, convert 5 acres to hectares, given that an acre is 4840 square yards, a yard is 36 inches, an inch is 2.54 cm, and a hectare is 10000 m^2 . The best approach is to develop a formula to convert x acres to hectares. You can do this as follows.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{one square yard} &= (36 \times 2.54)^2 \text{ cm}^2 \\ \text{so one acre} &= 4840 \times (36 \times 2.54)^2 \text{ cm}^2 \\ &= 0.4047 \times 10^8 \text{ cm}^2 \\ &= 0.4047 \text{ hectares} \\ \text{so } x \text{ acres} &= 0.4047x \text{ hectares} \end{aligned}$$

Once you've got the formula (but not until you've got the formula!), MATLAB can do the rest:

```
x = 5;           % acres
h = 0.4047 * x;  % hectares
disp( h )
```

Develop formulae for the following conversions, and use some MATLAB statements to find the answers, which are in brackets.

- (a) Convert 22 yards (an imperial cricket pitch) to metres. (20.117 metres)
- (b) One pound (weight) = 454 grams. Convert 75 kilograms to pounds. (165.20 pounds)
- (c) One day in March 1995, when the SA rand was still worth something, rates of exchange were: one pound sterling = 5.63 SA rand, and one SA rand = 0.279 US dollars. Convert 100 US dollars to pounds sterling. (63.66 pounds)
- (d) Convert 49 metres/second (terminal velocity for a falling person-shaped object) to km/hour. (176.4 km/hour)
- (e) One atmosphere pressure = 14.7 pounds per square inch (psi) = 101.325 kilo Pascals (kPa). Convert 40 psi to kPa. (275.71 kPa)
- (f) One calorie = 4.184 joules. Convert 6.25 kilojoules to calories. (1.494 kilocalories)

2.7 Output

There are two straightforward ways of getting output from MATLAB:

1. by entering a variable name, assignment or expression on the command line, without a semi-colon;
2. with the `disp` statement, e.g. `disp(x)`.

`disp`

The general form of `disp` for a numeric variable is

```
disp( variable )
```

When you use `disp`, the variable name is not displayed, and you don't get a line feed before the value is displayed, as you do when you enter a variable name on the command line without a semi-colon. `disp` generally gives a neater display.

You can also use `disp` to display a message enclosed in single quotes (called a *string*). Single quotes which are part of the message must be repeated, e.g.

```
disp( 'Pilate said, ''What is truth?'' ' );
```

To display a message and a numeric value on the same line use the following trick:

```
x = 2;
disp( ['The answer is ', num2str(x)] );
```

The output should be

```
The answer is 2
```

Square brackets create a vector, as we have seen. We want to display a *string* (i.e. a message in single quotes). But *all* the components of a MATLAB array must either be numbers or strings (unless you use a *cell array*—see Chapter 13). So we convert the number `x` to its *string representation* with the function `num2str`; read this as 'num to string'. Alternatively, use cut and paste to insert the string into the output in the Notepad.

You can display more than one number on a line as follows:

```
disp( [x y z] )
```

The square brackets create a vector with three elements, which are all displayed.

The command `more` on enables *paging* of output. This is very useful when displaying large matrices, e.g. `rand(100000,7)`. See `help more` for details. If you forget to switch on `more` before displaying a huge matrix you can always stop the display with **Ctrl+Break** or **Ctrl+C**.

`format`

The word *format* refers to how something is laid out: in this case MATLAB output.

To begin with, MATLAB has the following two basic output rules:

1. It always attempts to display integers (whole numbers) exactly. However, if the integer is too large, it is displayed in scientific notation with five significant digits, e.g. 1234567890 is displayed as `1.2346e+009` (i.e. 1.2346×10^9).
Check this by first entering 123456789 at the command line, and then 1234567890.

2. Numbers with decimal parts are displayed with four significant digits. If the value x is in the range $0.001 < x \leq 1000$ it is displayed in fixed point form, otherwise scientific (floating point) notation is used, in which case the *mantissa* is between 1 and 9.9999, e.g. 1000.1 is displayed as $1.0001e+003$. Check this by entering following numbers at the prompt (on separate lines): 0.0011, 0.0009, 1/3, 5/3, 2999/3, 3001/3

This is what is called the *default* format, i.e. what normally happens. However, you can change from the default with variations on the `format` command, as follows.

If you want values displayed in scientific notation (*floating point* form) whatever their size, enter the command

```
format short e
```

All output from subsequent `disp` statements will be in scientific notation with five significant digits, until the next `format` command is issued. Enter this command and check it with the following values: 0.0123456, 1.23456, 123.456 (all on separate lines).

If you want more accurate output, you can use `format long e`. This also gives scientific notation, but with 15 significant digits. Try it out on 1/7.

Use `format long` to get fixed point notation with 15 significant digits, e.g. try 100/7 and `pi`.

If you're not sure of the order of magnitude of your output you can try `format short g` or `format long g`. The `g` stands for 'general'. MATLAB decides in each case whether to use fixed or floating point.

Use `format bank` for financial calculations; you get fixed point with two decimal digits (for the cents). Try it on 10000/7.

Suppress irritating line-feeds with `format compact` which gives a more compact looking display. `format loose` reverts to the more airy display.

Use `format hex` to get hexadecimal display.

Use `format rat` to display a number as a rational approximation (ratio of two integers), e.g. `pi` is displayed as 355/113, a pleasant change from the tired old 22/7. Please note that even this is an *approximation*! Try out `format rat` on $\sqrt{2}$ and e (`exp(1)`).

The symbols `+`, `,`, `-` and a space are displayed for positive, negative and zero elements of a vector or matrix after the command `format +`. In certain applications this is a convenient way of displaying matrices.

The command `format` by itself reverts to the default format.

You can always try `help format` if you're confused!

You can also set the various `format` options by selecting **File** -> **Preferences** from the Command Window. The **Command Window Preferences** dialogue box opens. Set your format preferences in the **Text display** box. Note that you can specify a host of preferences for all the MATLAB tools in this way (**File** -> **Preferences** from the tool window). MATLAB automatically saves your preferences for use in later sessions.

Scale factors

Enter the following commands (MATLAB's response is also shown).

```
>> format compact
>> x = [1e3 1 1e-4]
x =
    1.0e+003 *
    1.0000    0.0010    0.0000
```

With `format short` (the default) and `format long` a common *scale factor* is applied to the whole vector if its elements are very large, very small, or differ greatly in magnitude. In this example, the common scale factor is 1000, so the elements displayed must all be multiplied by this factor to get

their proper value, e.g. for the second element $1.0e+003 * 0.0010$ gives 1. Taking a factor of 1000 out of the third element ($1e-4$) leaves $1e-7$, which is represented by 0.0000 since only four decimal digits are displayed.

If you don't want a scale factor try `format bank` or `format short e` :

```
>> format bank
>> x
x =
      1000.00          1.00          0.00
>> format short e
>> x
x =
  1.0000e+003  1.0000e+000  1.0000e-004
```

2.8 Repeating with `for`

So far we have seen how to get data into a program, how to do arithmetic, and how to get some answers out. In this section we look at a new feature: repetition. This is implemented by the extremely powerful `for` construct. We will first look at some examples of its use, followed by explanations.

For starters, enter the following group of statements on the command line. Enter the command `format compact` first to make the output neater:

```
for i = 1:5, disp(i), end
```

Now change it slightly to

```
for i = 1:3, disp(i), end
```

And what about

```
for i = 1:0, disp(i), end
```

Can you see what's happening? The `disp` statement is repeated five times, three times, and not at all.

Square rooting with Newton

The square root x of any positive number a may be found using only the arithmetic operations of addition, subtraction and division, with *Newton's method*. This is an iterative (repetitive) procedure that refines an initial guess.

The structure plan of the algorithm to find the square root, and the program with sample output for $a = 2$ is as follows. Run it.

1. Initialize a
2. Initialize x to $a/2$
3. Repeat 6 times (say)
 - Replace x by $(x + a/x)/2$
 - Display x
4. Stop.

Here is the program:

```
a = 2;
x = a/2;
```

```
for i = 1:6
    x = (x + a / x) / 2;
    disp( x )
end

disp( 'Matlab''s value: ' )
disp( sqrt(2) )
```

Output (after selecting `format long`):

```
Enter number to be square-rooted: 2
1.500000000000000
1.416666666666667
1.41421568627451
1.41421356237469
1.41421356237310
1.41421356237310

Matlab's value:
1.41421356237310
```

The value of x converges to a limit, which is \sqrt{a} . Note that it is identical to the value returned by MATLAB's `sqrt` function. Most computers and calculators use a similar method internally to compute square roots and other standard mathematical functions.

The general form of Newton's method is presented in Chapter 10 (with a derivation in Chapter 19).

Factorials!

Run the following program to generate a list of n and $n!$ (spoken as ' n factorial', or ' n shriek') where

$$n! = 1 \times 2 \times 3 \times \dots \times (n - 1) \times n.$$

```
n = 10;
fact = 1;

for k = 1:n
    fact = k * fact;
    disp( [k fact] )
end
```

Do an experiment to find largest value of n for which MATLAB can find n factorial (you'd better leave out the `disp` statement!).

Limit of a sequence

`for` loops are ideal for computing successive members of a sequence (as in Newton's method above). The following example also highlights a problem that sometimes occurs when computing a limit. Consider the sequence

$$x_n = a^n/n!, \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

where a is any constant, and $n!$ is the factorial function defined above. The question is: what is the limit of this sequence as n gets indefinitely large? Let's take the case $a = 10$. If we try to compute x_n directly we could get into trouble, because $n!$ gets large very rapidly as n increases, and numerical *overflow* could occur. However, the situation is neatly transformed if we spot that x_n is related to x_{n-1} as follows:

$$x_n = ax_{n-1}/n.$$

There are no numerical problems now. The following program computes x_n for $a = 10$, and increasing values of n . Run it.

```
a = 10;
x = 1;
k = 20;           % number of terms

for n = 1:k
    x = a * x / n;
    disp( [n x] )
end
```

The basic for construct

In general the most common form of the for loop (for use in a program, not on the command line) is

```
for index = j:k
    statements
end
```

or

```
for index = j:m:k
    statements
end
```

Note the following points carefully:

1. $j:k$ is a vector with elements $j, j+1, j+2, \dots, k$.
2. $j:m:k$ is a vector with elements $j, j+m, j+2m, \dots$, such that the last element does not exceed k if $m > 0$, or is not less than k if $m < 0$.
3. *index* must be a variable. Each time through the loop it will contain the next element of the vector $j:k$ or $j:m:k$, and for each of these values *statements* (which may be one or more statement) are carried out.

If the for construct has the form

```
for k = first:increment:last
```

then the number of times the loop is executed may be calculated from the following equation:

$$\text{floor}\left(\frac{\text{last} - \text{first}}{\text{increment}}\right) + 1$$

where the MATLAB function `floor(x)` rounds x down towards $-\infty$. This value is called the *iteration count*, or *trip count*. If the iteration count is negative, the loop is not executed.

For example, the statement `for i = 1:2:6` has an iteration count of

$$\text{floor}\left(\frac{6-1}{2}\right) + 1 = \text{floor}\left(\frac{5}{2}\right) + 1 = 3.$$

So *i* will take the values 1, 3, 5.

4. On completion of the for loop the index contains the last value used.
5. If the vector $j:k$ or $j:m:k$ is empty, *statements* are not executed, and control passes to the statement following the end statement.

6. The index does not have to appear explicitly in *statements*. It is basically a counter. In fact, if the index *does* appear explicitly in *statements*, the `for` can often be *vectorized* (see below). The examples with `disp` at the beginning of this section were for the purposes of illustration only; strictly, it would be more efficient to say (without the word `for`)

```
i = 1:5; disp( i' )
```

Can you see the difference?

7. It is good 'programming style' to *indent* (tabulate) the statements inside a `for` loop. You may have noticed that the Editor does this for you automatically. This feature is called *smart indenting*. Indenting preferences may be set from the Editor/Debugger's **File** -> **Preferences** menu. Expand the **Editor/Debugger** item in the **Preferences** menu and select the **Keyboard & Indenting Preferences** dialogue box. Note also that a block of highlighted text may be (un)indented with the Editor's **Text** menu. You will also have noticed that the Editor implements *syntax highlighting*. Keywords are in one colour, strings in another, and so on. You can customize the syntax highlighting colour scheme in the **Editor/Debugger Font & Colors Preferences** dialogue box. Click on **Set Colors** in the **Colors** box (with **Syntax highlighting** checked).

for in a single line

If you insist on using `for` in a single line, here is the general form:

```
for index = j:k, statements, end
```

or

```
for index = j:m:k, statements, end
```

Note:

1. Don't forget the commas (semi-colons will also do if appropriate). If you leave them out you will get an error message.
2. Again, *statements* can be one or more statements, separated by commas or semi-colons.
3. If you leave out `end`, MATLAB will wait for you to enter it. Nothing will happen until you do so.

More general for

A more general form of `for` is

```
for index = v
```

where v is any vector. The index moves through each element of the vector in turn. This provides a neat way of processing each item in a list. For an example see Exercise 2.22 at the end of the chapter.

The most general form of the `for` loop will be discussed in Chapter 6. when we look at matrices in more detail.

Avoid for loops by vectorizing!

There are situations where a `for` loop is essential, as in the examples in this section so far. However, the way MATLAB has been designed, `for` loops tend to be inefficient in terms of computing time. If you have written a `for` loop which involves the index of the loop in an expression, it may be possible to vectorize the expression, making use of array operations where necessary, as the following examples show.

Suppose you want to evaluate

$$\sum_{n=1}^{100000} n$$

(and can't remember the formula for the sum!) Here's how to do it with a `for` loop (run the program, which also times how long it takes):

```
t0 = clock;
s = 0;
for n = 1:100000
    s = s + n;
end;
etime(clock, t0)
```

The MATLAB function `clock` returns a six-element vector with the current date and time in the format year, month, day, hour, minute, seconds. So `t0` records when the calculation starts.

The function `etime` returns the time in seconds elapsed between its two arguments, which must be vectors as returned by `clock`. On my Pentium II, it returns about 3.35 seconds, which is the total time for this calculation. (If you have a slower PC, it could take longer.)

Now try to vectorize this calculation (before looking at the solution). Here it is:

```
t0 = clock;
n = 1:100000;
s = sum( n );
etime(clock, t0)
```

This way takes only 0.06 seconds on the same PC—more than 50 times faster.

There is a neater way of monitoring the time taken to interpret MATLAB statements: the `tic` and `toc` function (see below).

Now suppose you want to evaluate

$$\sum_{n=1}^{100000} \frac{1}{n^2}$$

Here's the `for` loop version:

```
tic
s = 0;
for n = 1:100000
    s = s + 1/n^2;
end;
toc
```

This takes about 6 seconds on my PC. Once again, try to vectorize the sum:

```
tic
n = 1:100000;
s = sum( 1./n.^2 );
toc
```

My PC gives a time of about 0.05 seconds for the vectorized version—more than 100 times faster!

Series with alternating signs are a little more challenging. This series sums to $\ln(2)$ (the natural logarithm of 2):

$$1 - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{5} - \dots$$

Here's how to find the sum of the first 999 terms with a `for` loop (note how to handle the alternating sign):

```
sign = -1;
s = 0;

for n = 1:999
    sign = -sign;
    s = s + sign / n;
end;
```

Try it. You should get 0.6926. MATLAB's `log(2)` gives 0.6931. Not bad.

The vectorized version is as follows:

```
n = 1:2:999;
s = sum( 1./n - 1./(n+1) )
```

If you time the two versions, you will again find that the vectorized form is many times faster.

MATLAB's functions naturally exploit vectorization wherever possible. For example, `prod(1:n)` will find $n!$ much faster than the code at the beginning of this section (for large values of n).

A common mistake: for less loops!

A very common mistake is to omit the word `for` from a `for` loop. Instead of reporting an error, MATLAB obligingly creates a vector, and executes the statements in the 'loop' only once. For example, run the program for square-rooting with Newton's method, leaving out the word `for`, i.e.

```
a = 2;
x = a/2;

i = 1:6                                % no for now
    x = (x + a / x) / 2;
    disp( x )
end
```

Can you explain the output? Check with `whos` that you have created a vector `i`.

Note that the `end` statement by itself is perfectly legal, although it does precisely nothing.

Exercises

Write MATLAB programs to find the following sums (a) with `for` loops, and (b) by vectorization. Time both versions in each case.

1. $1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \dots + 1000^2$. (sum is 333 833 500)

2. $1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{7} + \frac{1}{9} - \dots - \frac{1}{1003}$ (sum is 0.7849—converges slowly to $\pi/4$)

3. Sum the left-hand side of the series

$$\frac{1}{1^2 \cdot 3^2} + \frac{1}{3^2 \cdot 5^2} + \frac{1}{5^2 \cdot 7^2} + \dots = \frac{\pi^2 - 8}{16}. \quad (\text{sum is 0.1169, with 500 terms})$$

2.9 Decisions

The MATLAB function `rand` generates a random number in the range 0–1. Enter the following two statements at the command line:

```
r = rand
if r > 0.5 disp( 'greater indeed' ), end
```

MATLAB should only display the message `greater indeed` if `r` is in fact greater than 0.5 (check by displaying `r`).

Repeat a few times—cut and paste from the Command History window (make sure that a new `r` is generated each time).

As a slightly different but related exercise, enter the following *logical expression* on the command line:

```
2 > 0
```

Now enter the logical expression `-1 > 0`. MATLAB gives a value of 1 to a logical expression which is *true*, and 0 to one which is *false*.

The one-line `if` statement

In the example above MATLAB has to make a decision: whether or not `r` is greater than 0.5. The `if` construct, which is fundamental to all computing languages, is the basis of such decision-making.

The simplest form of `if` in a single line is

```
if condition statement , end
```

Note the following points carefully:

1. *condition* is usually a *logical expression*, i.e. an expression containing a *relational operator*, and which is either *true* or *false*. The relational operators are shown in Table 2.4. MATLAB allows you to use an arithmetic expression for *condition*. If the expression evaluates to 0 it is regarded as false; any other value is true. This is not generally recommended; the `if` statement is easier (for you or a reader of your code) to understand if *condition* is a logical expression.
2. If *condition* is true, *statement* is executed, but if *condition* is false, nothing happens.
3. *condition* may be a vector or matrix, in which case it is true only if *all* its elements are non-zero. A single zero element in a vector or matrix renders it false.

Here are some more examples of logical expressions involving relational operators, with their meanings in brackets:

```
b^2 < 4*a*c      (b^2 < 4ac)
x >= 0          (x ≥ 0)
```

Table 2.4 Relational operators

Relational operator	Meaning
<	less than
<=	less than or equal
==	equal
~=	not equal
>	greater than
>=	greater than or equal

```
a ~= 0          (a ≠ 0)
b^2 == 4*a*c    (b2 = 4ac)
```

Remember to use the double equal sign (==) when testing for equality, e.g.

```
if x == 0 disp( 'x equals zero' ), end
```

Exercises

The following statements all assign logical expressions to the variable `x`. See if you can correctly determine the value of `x` in each case before checking your answer with MATLAB.

```
x = 3 > 2
x = 2 > 3
x = -4 <= -3
x = 1 < 1
x = 2 ~= 2
x = 3 == 3
x = 0 < 0.5 < 1
```

Did you get the second-last one right? `3 == 3` is a logical expression which is true, since 3 is undoubtedly equal to 3. The value 1 (for true) is therefore assigned to `x`. And what about the last one? As a *mathematical* inequality,

$$0 < 0.5 < 1$$

is undoubtedly true. However, as a MATLAB expression, the lefthand `<` is evaluated first, i.e. `0 < 0.5`, giving 1 (true). Then the righthand operation is performed, i.e. `1 < 1` giving 0 (false). Makes you think, doesn't it?

The if-else construct

Try the following exercises:

1. Enter the two lines

```
x = 2;
if x < 0 disp( 'neg' ), else disp( 'non-neg' ), end
```

Did you get the message non-neg?

2. Now change the value of `x` to `-1`, and execute the `if` again. Did you get the message neg this time?
3. Now try

```
if 79 disp( 'true' ), else disp( 'false' ), end
```

Did you get true? Try some other values instead of 79, including 0 and some negative values.

4. Most banks offer differential interest rates. Suppose the rate is 9 per cent if the amount in your savings account is less than \$5000, but 12 per cent otherwise. The Random Bank goes one step further, and gives you a random amount in your account to start with! Run the following program a few times:

```
bal = 10000 * rand;
if bal < 5000
```

```

        rate = 0.09;
    else
        rate = 0.12;
    end

    newbal = bal + rate * bal;
    disp( 'New balance after interest compounded is:' )
    format bank
    disp( newbal )

```

Display the values of `bal` and `rate` each time from the command line to check that MATLAB has chosen the correct interest rate.

The basic form of `if-else` for use in a program file is

```

if condition
    statementsA
else
    statementsB
end

```

Note:

1. *statementsA* and *statementsB* represent one or more statements.
2. If *condition* is true, *statementsA* are executed, but if *condition* is false, *statementsB* are executed. This is essentially how you force MATLAB to choose between two alternatives.
3. The `else` part is optional.

The one-line `if-else` statement

The simplest general form of `if-else` for use on one line is

```

if condition statementA, else statementB, end

```

Note:

1. Commas (or semi-colons) are essential between the various clauses.
2. The `else` part is optional.
3. Don't forget `end`, or MATLAB will wait forever.

elseif

Suppose the Random Bank now offers 9 per cent interest on balances of less than \$5000, 12 per cent for balances of \$5000 or more but less than \$10000, and 15 per cent for balances of \$10000 or more. The following program calculates a customer's new balance after one year according to this scheme:

```

bal = 15000 * rand;

if bal < 5000
    rate = 0.09;
elseif bal < 10000
    rate = 0.12;
else
    rate = 0.15;
end

```

```
newbal = bal + rate * bal;
format bank
disp( 'New balance is:' )
disp( newbal )
```

Run the program a few times, and once again, display the values of `bal` and `rate` each time to convince yourself that MATLAB has chosen the correct interest rate.

In general, the `elseif` clause is used as follows:

```
if condition1
    statementsA
elseif condition2
    statementsB
elseif condition3
    statementsC
...
else
    statementsE
end
```

This is sometimes called an *elseif ladder*. It works as follows:

1. *condition1* is tested. If it is true, *statementsA* are executed; MATLAB then moves to the next statement after `end`.
2. If *condition1* is false, MATLAB checks *condition2*. If it is true, *statementsB* are executed, followed by the statement after `end`.
3. In this way, all the conditions are tested until a true condition is found. As soon as a true condition is found, no further `elseif`s are examined, and MATLAB jumps off the ladder.
4. If none of the conditions is true, *statementsE* after `else` are executed.
5. You should arrange the logic so that not more than one of the conditions is true.
6. There can be any number of `elseif`s, but at most one `else`.
7. `elseif` *must* be written as one word.
8. It is good programming style to indent each group of statements as shown.

Logical operators

More complicated logical expressions can be constructed using the three *logical operators* `&` (and), `|` (or), `~` (not). For example, the quadratic equation

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0$$

has equal roots, given by $-b/(2a)$, provided that $b^2 - 4ac = 0$ and $a \neq 0$ (Figure 2.3). This translates to the following MATLAB statements:

```
if (b^2 - 4*a*c == 0) & (a ~= 0)
    x = -b / (2*a);
end
```

Note the double equal sign in the test for equality.

See Chapter 5 for more on logical operators.

Multiple `ifs` versus `elseif`

You could have written the Random Bank program as follows:

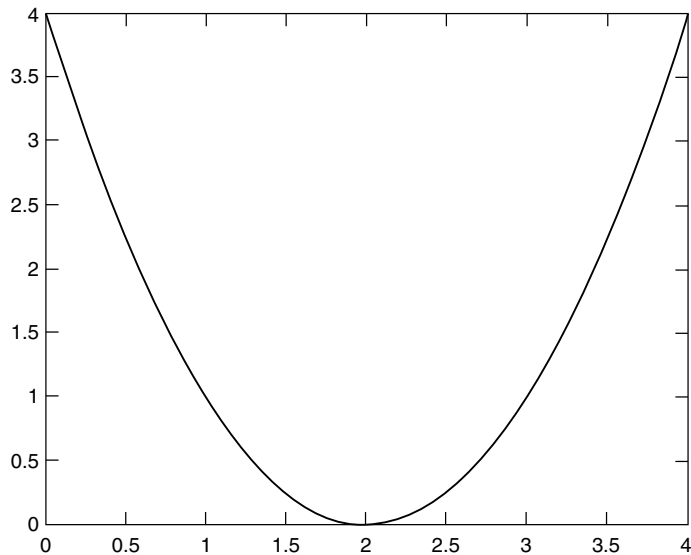


Figure 2.3 A quadratic function with equal roots

```

bal = 15000 * rand;

if bal < 5000
    rate = 0.09;
end
if bal >= 5000 & bal < 10000
    rate = 0.12;
end
if bal >= 10000
    rate = 0.15;
end

newbal = bal + rate * bal;
format bank
disp( 'New balance is' )
disp( newbal )

```

However, this is inefficient since each of the three conditions is always tested, even if the first one is true. In the earlier `elseif` version, MATLAB jumps off the `elseif` ladder as soon as it finds a true condition. This could save a lot of computing time (and is easier to read) if the `if` construct is in a loop which is repeated often.

Using this form, instead of the `elseif` ladder, you can make the following common mistake:

```

if bal < 5000
    rate = 0.09;
end
if bal < 10000
    rate = 0.12;
end
if bal >= 10000
    rate = 0.15;
end

```

Can you see why you get the wrong answer (1120 instead of 1090) if `bal` has the value 1000? When designing the logic you need to make sure that one and only one of the conditions will be true at any one time.

Another mistake I have seen students frequently make is to replace the second `if` with something like

```
if 5000 < bal < 10000
    rate = 0.12;
end
```

which is compelling as we saw above. However, *whatever* the value of `bal` is this condition will *always* be true. Can you see why?

Nested ifs

An `if` construct can contain further `ifs`, and so on. This is called *nesting*, and should not be confused with the `elseif` ladder. You have to be rather careful with the `elses`. In general, `else` belongs to the most recent `if` which has not been ended. The correct positioning of `end` is therefore very important, as the next example demonstrates.

Suppose you want to compute the solution of a quadratic equation. You may want to check whether $a = 0$, to prevent a division by zero. Your program could contain the following nested `ifs`:

```
...
d = b^2 - 4*a*c;
if a ~= 0
    if d < 0
        disp( 'Complex roots' )
    else
        x1 = (-b + sqrt( d )) / (2*a);
        x2 = (-b - sqrt( d )) / (2*a);
    end      % first end <<<<<<<<<<<<
end
```

The `else` belongs to the second `if` by default, as intended.

Now move the first `end` up as follows:

```
d = b^2 - 4*a*c;
if a ~= 0
    if d < 0
        disp( 'Complex roots' )
    end      % first end moved up now <<<<<<<<<<<<
    else
        x1 = (-b + sqrt( d )) / (2*a);
        x2 = (-b - sqrt( d )) / (2*a);
    end
end
```

The `end` which has been moved now closes the second `if`. The result is that `else` belongs to the *first* `if` instead of to the second one. Division by zero is therefore guaranteed, instead of prevented!

Vectorizing ifs?

You may be wondering if `for` statements enclosing `ifs` can be vectorized. The answer is yes, by courtesy of *logical arrays*. Discussion of this rather interesting topic is postponed to Chapter 5.

switch

The `switch` statement executes certain statements based on the value of a variable or expression. In this example it is used to decide whether a random integer is 1, 2 or 3 (see **Rolling dice** in Chapter 5 for an explanation of this use of `rand`):

```
d = floor(3*rand) + 1
switch d
case 1
    disp( 'That''s a 1!' );
case 2
    disp( 'That''s a 2!' );
otherwise
    disp( 'Must be 3!' );
end
```

Multiple expressions can be handled in a single case statement by enclosing the case expression in a cell array (see Chapter 13):

```
d = floor(10*rand);
switch d
case {2, 4, 6, 8}
    disp( 'Even' );
case {1, 3, 5, 7, 9}
    disp( 'Odd' );
otherwise
    disp( 'Zero' );
end
```

2.10 Complex numbers

If you are not familiar with complex numbers, you can safely omit this section.

It's very easy to handle complex numbers in MATLAB. The special values `i` and `j` stand for $\sqrt{-1}$. Try `sqrt(-1)` to see how MATLAB represents complex numbers.

`i` may be used to assign complex values, e.g.

```
z = 2 + 3*i
```

represents the complex number $2 + 3i$ (real part 2, imaginary part 3). You can also input a complex value like this, e.g. enter

```
2 + 3*i
```

in response to the input prompt (remember, no semi-colon). The imaginary part of a complex number may also be entered without an asterisk, e.g. `3i`.

All the arithmetic operators (and most functions) work with complex numbers, e.g. `sqrt(2 + 3*i)`, `exp(i*pi)`.

There are some functions that are specific to complex numbers. If `z` is a complex number `real(z)`, `imag(z)`, `conj(z)` and `abs(z)` all have the obvious meanings.

A complex number may be represented in polar co-ordinates, i.e.

$$z = re^{i\theta}.$$

`angle(z)` returns θ between $-\pi$ and π , i.e. it returns `atan2(imag(z), real(z))`. `abs(z)` returns the magnitude r .

Since $e^{i\theta}$ gives the unit circle in polars, complex numbers provide a neat way of plotting a circle. Try the following:

```
circle = exp( 2*i*[1:360]*pi/360 );
plot(circle)
axis('equal')
```

Note:

- If y is complex, the statement `plot(y)` is equivalent to

```
plot(real(y), imag(y))
```

- The statement `axis('equal')` is necessary to make circles look round; it changes what is known as the *aspect ratio* of the monitor. `axis('normal')` gives the default aspect ratio.

If you are using complex numbers, be careful not to use i or j for other variables; the new values will replace the value of $\sqrt{-1}$, and will cause nasty problems!

For complex matrices, the operations `'` and `.'` behave differently. The `'` operator is the *complex conjugate transpose*, meaning rows and columns are interchanged, and signs of imaginary parts are changed. The `.'` operator, on the other hand, does a pure transpose without taking the complex conjugate. To see this, set up a complex matrix a with the statement

```
a = [1+i 2+2i; 3+3i 4+4i]
```

which results in

```
a =
 1.0000 + 1.0000i    2.0000 + 2.0000i
 3.0000 + 3.0000i    4.0000 + 4.0000i
```

The statement

```
a'
```

then results in the complex conjugate transpose

```
ans =
 1.0000 - 1.0000i    3.0000 - 3.0000i
 2.0000 - 2.0000i    4.0000 - 4.0000i
```

whereas the statement

```
a.'
```

results in the pure transpose

```
ans =
 1.0000 + 1.0000i    3.0000 + 3.0000i
 2.0000 + 2.0000i    4.0000 + 4.0000i
```

2.11 More on input and output

This section is not strictly 'essential' MATLAB; you can skip it and come back to it at a later stage if you want to.

fprintf

If you are the sort of person who likes to control *exactly* what your output looks like, then this section is for you. Otherwise you can happily stay with `disp`, `format` and cut-and-paste.

The `fprintf` statement is much more flexible (and therefore more complicated!) than `disp`. For example, it allows you to mix strings and numbers freely on the same line, and to control the format (e.g. number of decimal places) completely. As an example, change your compound interest program of Section 2.2 to look as follows:

```
balance = 12345;
rate = 0.09;
interest = rate * balance;
balance = balance + interest;
fprintf( 'Interest rate: %6.3f   New balance: %8.2f\n', ...
        rate, balance );
```

Run it. Your output should look like this:

```
Interest rate:  0.090   New balance: 13456.05
```

The most common form of `fprintf` is

```
fprintf( 'format string' , list of variables )
```

Note:

1. *format string* may contain a message. It may also contain *format specifiers* of the form `%e`, `%f` or `%g`, which control how the variables listed are embedded in the format string.
2. In the case of the `e` and `f` specifiers, the field width and number of decimal places or significant digits may be specified immediately after the `%`, as the next two examples show.
 - `%8.3f` means fixed point over 8 columns altogether (including the decimal point and a possible minus sign), with 3 decimal places (spaces are filled in from the left if necessary). Use 0 if you don't want any decimal places, e.g. `%6.0f`. Use leading zeros if you want leading zeros in the output, e.g. `%03.0f`.
 - `%12.2e` means scientific notation over 12 columns altogether (including the decimal point, a possible minus sign, and five for the exponent), with 2 digits in the mantissa after the decimal point (the mantissa is always adjusted to be not less than 1).
3. The `g` specifier is mixed, and leaves it up to MATLAB to decide exactly what format to use. This is a good one to use if you can't be bothered to count decimal places carefully, and/or aren't sure of the approximate magnitude of your result.
4. In the case of a vector, the sequence of format specifiers is repeated until all the elements have been displayed.
5. The *format string* in `fprintf` may also contain *escape codes* such as `\n` (line feed), `\t` (horizontal tab), `\b` (backspace) and `\f` (form feed).

C programmers will no doubt feel very much at home here! For more details see `fprintf` in the online Help.

Output to a disk file with fprintf

Output may be sent to a disk file with `fprintf`. The output is *appended*, i.e. added on at the end of the file.

The general form is

```
fprintf( 'filename' , 'format string' , list of variables )
```

e.g.

```
fprintf( 'myfile' , '%g' , x )
```

sends the value of `x` to the disk file `myfile`.

General file I/O

MATLAB has a useful set of file I/O functions, such as `fopen`, `fread`, `fwrite`, `fseek`, etc., which are discussed in Chapter 16.

Saving and loading data

All or part of the workspace can be saved to a disk file and loaded back in a later session with the `save` and `load` commands. See Chapter 16 for details on these and other ways of importing and exporting MATLAB data.

2.12 Odds 'n ends

Variables, functions and scripts with the same name

Enter the command `rand`. You will get a random number; in fact, a different one each time you enter the command. Now enter the statement

```
rand = 13;
```

The name `rand` now represents a variable with the value 13 (check with `whos`). The random number generator `rand` has been hidden by the variable of the same name, and is unavailable until you `clear rand`. A script file can also get hidden like this.

When you type a name at the command-line prompt, say `goo`, the MATLAB interpreter goes through the following steps:

1. Looks for `goo` as a variable.
2. Looks for `goo` as a built-in function, like `sin` or `pi`.
3. Looks in the current directory for a script file called `goo.m`.
I have seen students accidentally hiding scripts in this way during hands-on tests—it is a traumatic experience! If you are worried that there might be a MATLAB function `goo` lurking around to hide your script of the same name, first try `help goo`. If you get the message `goo.m not found` there you're safe.
4. Looks (in order) in the directories specified by MATLAB's search path for a script file called `goo.m`. Use **File** -> **Set Path** to view and change MATLAB's search path.

To unhide a hidden `goo` type `clear goo`.

The input statement

Rewrite the script file `compint.m` carefully so that it looks exactly like this, and remember to save it:

```
balance = input( 'Enter bank balance: ' );  
rate = input( 'Enter interest rate: ' );
```

```
interest = rate * balance;
balance = balance + interest;
format bank
disp( 'New balance:' );
disp( balance );
```

Enter the script file name at the prompt, and enter values of 1000 and 0.15 for the balance and interest rate respectively when asked to, so that your Command Window contains the following lines:

```
>> compint

Enter bank balance: 1000

Enter interest rate: 0.15
New balance:
    1150.00
```

The input statement provides a more flexible way of getting data into a program than by assignment statements which need to be edited each time the data must be changed. It allows you to enter data *while a script is running*.

The general form of the input statement is:

```
variable = input( 'prompt' );
```

Note:

1. *prompt* is a message which prompts the user for the value(s) to be entered. It must be enclosed in apostrophes (single quotes).
2. A semi-colon at the end of the input statement will prevent the value entered from being immediately echoed on the screen.
3. You wouldn't normally use `input` from the command line, since you really shouldn't need to prompt yourself in command-line mode!
4. Vectors and matrices may also be entered with `input`, as long as you remember to enclose the elements in square brackets.
5. You can enter an *expression* in response to the prompt, e.g. `a + b` (as long as `a` and `b` have been defined) or `rand(5)`. When entering an expression in this way don't include a semi-colon (it is not part of the expression).

Exercises

1. Rewrite the solutions to a few of the unit conversion problems in Section 2.6 using input statements in script files.
2. Rewrite the program `comp.m` in **Vectorization of formulae** at the end of Section 2.6 to input the initial investment vector.

Shelling out to the operating system

You can *shell out* of MATLAB to the operating system by prefacing an operating system command with an exclamation mark (bang). For example, suppose you suddenly need to reset the system time during a MATLAB session. You can do this from the Command Window with the command

```
!time
```

(under Windows).

Shelling out is achieved without quitting the current MATLAB session.

More Help functions

By now you should be finding your way around the online Help. Here are some alternative command-line ways of getting help.

`doc function` displays the reference page for *function* in the Help browser, providing syntax, a description, examples and links to related functions.

`helpwin` displays in the Help browser a list of all functions, with links to M-file help for each function.

2.13 Programming style

Programs that are written any old how, while they may do what is required, can be difficult to follow when read a few months later, in order to correct or update them (and programs that are worth writing will need to be maintained in this way).

Some programmers delight in writing terse and obscure code; there is at least one annual competition for the most incomprehensible C program. A large body of responsible programmers, however, believe it is extremely important to develop the art of writing programs which are well laid out, with all the logic clearly described. Serious programmers therefore pay a fair amount of attention to what is called *programming style*, in order to make their programs clearer and more readable both to themselves, and to other potential users. You may find this irritating, if you are starting to program for the first time, because you will naturally be impatient to get on with the job. But a little extra attention to your program layout will pay enormous dividends in the long run, especially when it comes to debugging.

Some hints on how to improve your programming style are given below.

- You should make liberal use of comments, both at the beginning of a script, to describe briefly what it does and any special methods that may have been used, and also throughout the coding to introduce different logical sections.
- The meaning of each variable should be described briefly in a comment when it is initialized. You should describe variables systematically, e.g. in alphabetical order.
- Blank lines should be freely used to separate sections of coding (e.g. before and after loop structures).
- Coding inside structures (`for`s, `if`s, `while`s) should be indented (tabulated) a few columns to make them stand out.
- Blanks should be used in expressions to make them more readable, e.g. on either side of operators and equal signs.
However, blanks may be omitted in places in complicated expressions, where this may make the logic clearer.

Summary

- The MATLAB desktop consists of a number of tools: the Command Window, the Launch Pad, the Workspace browser, the Current Directory browser and the Command History window.
- MATLAB has a comprehensive online Help system, accessed from the Launch Pad, the help button in the desktop toolbar, or the **Help** menu in any tool.
- A MATLAB program can be written in the Editor and cut and pasted to the Command Window.
- A script file is a text file (created by the MATLAB Editor, or any other text editor) containing a collection of MATLAB statements, i.e. a program.
The statements are carried out when the script file name is entered at the prompt in the Command Window.
A script file name must have the `.m` extension. Script files are therefore also called M-files.
- The recommended way to run a script is from the Current Directory browser. The output from the script will then appear in the Command Window.
- A variable name consists only of letters, digits and underscores, and must start with a letter. Only the first 31 characters are significant. MATLAB is case-sensitive by default.
All variables created during a session remain in the workspace, until removed with `clear`.
The command `who` lists the variables in the workspace. `whos` also gives their sizes.
- MATLAB refers to all variables as *arrays*, whether they are scalars (single-valued arrays), vectors (1-D arrays) or matrices (2-D arrays).
- MATLAB names are case-sensitive.
- The Workspace browser in the desktop provides a handy visual representation of the workspace. Clicking a variable in the Workspace browser invokes the Array Editor which may be used to view and change variable values.
- Vectors and matrices are entered in square brackets. Elements are separated by spaces or commas. Rows are separated by semi-colons.
The colon operator is used to generate vectors with elements increasing (decreasing) by regular increments (decrements).
Vectors are row vectors by default. Use the apostrophe transpose operator (`'`) to change a row vector into a column vector.
- An element of a vector is referred to by a subscript in round brackets.
A subscript may itself be a vector.
Subscripts always start at 1, and are rounded down if non-integer.
- The `diary` command copies everything that subsequently appears in the Command Window to the specified text file until the command `diary off` is given.
- Statements on the same line may be separated by commas or semi-colons.
- A statement may be continued to the next line with an ellipsis of at least three dots.
- Numbers may be represented in fixed point decimal notation or in floating point scientific notation.
- MATLAB has 14 data types. The default numeric type is double-precision. All mathematical operations are carried out in double-precision.
- The six arithmetic operators for scalars are `+` `-` `*` `\` `/` `^`. They operate according to rules of precedence. Brackets have the highest precedence.
- An expression is a rule for evaluating a formula using numbers, operators, variables and functions. A semi-colon after an expression suppresses display of its value.
- Array operations are element-by-element operations between vectors, or between scalars and vectors.
The array operations of multiplication, right and left division, and exponentiation are indicated by `.*` `./` `.\` `.^` to distinguish them from the matrix operations of the same name.
Array operations may be used to evaluate a formula repeatedly for some or all of the elements of a vector. This is called vectorization of the formula.
- `disp` is used to output (display) numbers and strings.

`num2str` is useful with `disp` for displaying strings and numbers on the same line. The `format` command controls the way output is displayed. Format may also be set by **File -> Preferences -> Command Window Preferences**.

- When vectors are displayed, a common scale factor is used if the elements are very large, very small, or differ greatly in magnitude.
- The `for` statement is used to repeat a group of statements a fixed number of times. If the index of a `for` statement is used in the expression being repeated, the expression can often be vectorized, saving a great deal of computing time.
- `tic` and `toc` may be used as a stopwatch.
- Logical expressions have the value true (1) or false (0) and are constructed with the six relational operators `>` `>=` `<` `<=` `==` `~=` . Any expression which evaluates to zero is regarded as false. Any other value is true. More complicated logical expressions can be formed from other logical expressions using the logical operators `&` (and), `|` (or), `~` (not).
- `if-else` executes different groups of statements according to whether a logical expression is true or false. The `elseif` ladder is a good way to choose between a number of options, only one of which should be true at a time.
- `switch` enables choices to be made between discrete cases of a variable or expression.
- A string is a collection of characters enclosed in single quotes (apostrophes).
- Complex numbers may be represented using the special variables `i` and `j`, which stand for the unit imaginary number $\sqrt{-1}$.
- `fprintf` is used to control output format more precisely.
- `save` and `load` are used to export and import data.
- The `input` statement, with a prompt, is used to prompt the user for input from the keyboard while a script is executing.
- MATLAB first checks whether a name is a variable, then a built-in function, then a script. Use `clear` to unhide a function or script if necessary.
- Operating system commands can be executed from the MATLAB prompt by typing an exclamation mark in front of them, e.g. `!copy`. This is called shelling out.
- Attention should be paid to programming style when writing scripts.

Exercises

- 2.1 Decide which of the following numbers are not acceptable in MATLAB, and state why not:
- (a) 9,87 (b) .0 (c) 25.82 (d) -356231
 (e) 3.57*e2 (f) 3.57e2.1 (g) 3.57e+2 (h) 3,57e-2
- 2.2 State, giving reasons, which of the following are not valid MATLAB variable names:
- (a) a2 (b) a.2 (c) 2a (d) 'a'one
 (e) aone (f) _x_1 (g) miXedUp (h) pay day
 (i) inf (j) Pay_Day (k) min*2 (l) what
- 2.3 Translate the following expressions into MATLAB:
- (a) $p + \frac{w}{u}$
- (b) $p + \frac{w}{u + v}$

- (c) $\frac{p + \frac{w}{u+v}}{p + \frac{w}{u-v}}$
 (d) $x^{1/2}$
 (e) y^{y+z}
 (f) x^{y^z}
 (g) $(x^y)^z$
 (h) $x - x^3/3! + x^5/5!$

2.4 Translate the following into MATLAB statements:

- (a) Add 1 to the value of `i` and store the result in `i`.
 (b) Cube `i`, add `j` to this, and store the result in `i`.
 (c) Set `g` equal to the larger of the two variables `e` and `f`.
 (d) If `d` is greater than zero, set `x` equal to minus `b`.
 (e) Divide the sum of `a` and `b` by the product of `c` and `d`, and store the result in `x`.

2.5 What's wrong with the following MATLAB statements?

- (a) `n + 1 = n;`
 (b) `Fahrenheit temp = 9*C/5 + 32;`
 (c) `2 = x;`

2.6 Write a program to calculate x , where

$$x = \frac{-b + \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

and $a = 2$, $b = -10$, $c = 12$ (Answer 3.0)

2.7 There are eight pints in a gallon, and 1.76 pints in a litre. The volume of a tank is given as 2 gallons and 4 pints. Write a script which inputs this volume in gallons and pints and converts it to litres. (Answer: 11.36 litres)

2.8 Write a program to calculate petrol consumption. It should assign the distance travelled (in kilometres) and the amount of petrol used (in litres) and compute the consumption in km/litre as well as in the more usual form of litres per 100 km. Write some helpful headings, so that your output looks something like this:

Distance	Litres used	km/L	L/100km
528	46.23	11.42	8.76

2.9 Write some statements in MATLAB which will exchange the contents of two variables `a` and `b`, using only one additional variable `t`.

2.10 Try Exercise 2.9 *without* using any additional variables!

2.11 If C and F are Celsius and Fahrenheit temperatures respectively, the formula for conversion from Celsius to Fahrenheit is $F = 9C/5 + 32$.

- (a) Write a script which will ask you for the Celsius temperature and display the equivalent Fahrenheit one with some sort of comment, e.g.

The Fahrenheit temperature is: ...

Try it out on the following Celsius temperatures (answers in brackets): 0 (32), 100 (212), -40 (-40!), 37 (normal human temperature: 98.6).

- (b) Change the script to use vectors and array operations to compute and display the Fahrenheit equivalent of Celsius temperatures ranging from 20° to 30° in steps of 1° , in two columns with a heading, e.g.

Celsius	Fahrenheit
20.00	68.00
21.00	69.80
...	
30.00	86.00

- 2.12 Generate a table of conversions from degrees (first column) to radians (second column). Degrees should go from 0° to 360° in steps of 10° . Recall that π radians = 180° .
- 2.13 Set up a matrix (table) with degrees in the first column from 0 to 360 in steps of 30, sines in the second column, and cosines in the third column. Now try to add tangents in the fourth column. Can you figure out what's going on? Try some variations of the `format` command.
- 2.14 Write some statements that display a list of integers from 10 to 20 inclusive, each with its square root next to it.
- 2.15 Write a single statement to find and display the sum of the successive *even* integers 2, 4, ..., 200. (Answer: 10 100)
- 2.16 Ten students in a class write a test. The marks are out of 10. All the marks are entered in a MATLAB vector `marks`. Write a statement to find and display the average mark. Try it on the following marks:

5 8 0 10 3 8 5 7 9 4 (Answer: 5.9)

Hint: use the function `mean`.

- 2.17 What are the values of `x` and `a` after the following statements have been executed?

```
a = 0;
i = 1;
x = 0;
a = a + i;
x = x + i / a;
a = a + i;
x = x + i / a;
a = a + i;
x = x + i / a;
a = a + i;
x = x + i / a;
```

- 2.18 Rewrite the statements in Exercise 2.17 more economically by using a `for` loop. Can you do even better by vectorizing the code?
- 2.19 (a) Work out by hand the output of the following script for `n = 4`:

```
n = input( 'Number of terms? ' );
s = 0;

for k = 1:n
    s = s + 1 / (k ^ 2);
end;

disp(sqrt(6 * s))
```

If you run this script for larger and larger values of `n` you will find that the output approaches a well-known limit. Can you figure out what it is?

- (b) Rewrite the script using vectors and array operations.

- 2.20 Work through the following script by hand. Draw up a table of the values of i , j and m to show how their values change while the script executes. Check your answers by running the script.

```
v = [3 1 5];
i = 1;

for j = v
    i = i + 1;
    if i == 3
        i = i + 2;
        m = i + j;
    end
end
```

- 2.21 The steady-state current I flowing in a circuit that contains a resistance $R = 5$, capacitance $C = 10$, and inductance $L = 4$ in series is given by

$$I = \frac{E}{\sqrt{R^2 + (2\pi\omega L - \frac{1}{2\pi\omega C})^2}}$$

where $E = 2$ and $\omega = 2$ are the input voltage and angular frequency respectively. Compute the value of I . (Answer: 0.0396)

- 2.22 The electricity accounts of residents in a very small town are calculated as follows:

- if 500 units or less are used the cost is 2 cents per unit;
- if more than 500, but not more than 1000 units are used, the cost is \$10 for the first 500 units, and then 5 cents for every unit in excess of 500;
- if more than 1000 units are used, the cost is \$35 for the first 1000 units plus 10 cents for every unit in excess of 1000;
- in addition, a basic service fee of \$5 is charged, no matter how much electricity is used.

Write a program which enters the following five consumptions into a vector, and uses a `for` loop to calculate and display the total charge for each one: 200, 500, 700, 1000, 1500. (Answers: \$9, \$15, \$25, \$40, \$90)

- 2.23 Suppose you deposit \$50 per month in a bank account every month for a year. Every month, after the deposit has been made, interest at the rate of 1 per cent is added to the balance, e.g. after one month, the balance is \$50.50, and after two months it is \$101.51.

Write a program to compute and print the balance each month for a year. Arrange the output to look something like this:

MONTH	MONTH-END BALANCE
1	50.50
2	101.51
3	153.02
...	
12	640.47

- 2.24 If you invest \$1000 for one year at an interest rate of 12 per cent, the return is \$1120 at the end of the year. But if interest is compounded at the rate of 1 per cent *monthly* (i.e. 1/12 of the annual rate), you get slightly more interest because it is compounded. Write a program which uses a `for` loop to compute the balance after a year of compounding interest in this

way. The answer should be \$1126.83. Evaluate the formula for this result separately as a check: 1000×1.01^{12} .

- 2.25 A plumber opens a savings account with \$1 00 000 at the beginning of January. He then makes a deposit of \$1000 at the end of each month for the next 12 months (starting at the end of January). Interest is calculated and added to his account at the end of each month (before the \$1000 deposit is made). The monthly interest rate depends on the amount A in his account at the time when interest is calculated, in the following way:

$$\begin{aligned} A \leq 1\ 10\ 000 &: 1 \text{ per cent} \\ 1\ 10\ 000 < A \leq 1\ 25\ 000 &: 1.5 \text{ per cent} \\ A > 1\ 25\ 000 &: 2 \text{ per cent} \end{aligned}$$

Write a program which displays, for each of the 12 months, under suitable headings, the situation at the end of the month as follows: the number of the month, the interest rate, the amount of interest and the new balance. (Answer: values in the last row of output should be 12, 0.02, 2534.58, 130263.78).

- 2.26 It has been suggested that the population of the United States may be modelled by the formula

$$P(t) = \frac{19\ 72\ 73\ 000}{1 + e^{-0.03134(t-1913.25)}}$$

where t is the date in years. Write a program to compute and display the population every *ten* years from 1790 to 2000.

Try to plot a graph of the population against time as well (Figure 7.14, accompanying Exercise 7.1 in Chapter 7, shows this graph compared with actual data).

Use your program to find out if the population ever reaches a 'steady state', i.e. whether it stops changing.

- 2.27 A mortgage bond (loan) of amount L is obtained to buy a house. The interest rate r is 15 per cent (0.15) p.a. The fixed monthly payment P which will pay off the bond exactly over N years is given by the formula

$$P = \frac{rL(1 + r/12)^{12N}}{12[(1 + r/12)^{12N} - 1]}.$$

- Write a program to compute and print P if $N = 20$ years, and the bond is for \$50000. You should get \$658,39.
 - It's interesting to see how the payment P changes with the period N over which you pay the loan. Run the program for different values of N (use `input`). See if you can find a value of N for which the payment is less than \$625.
 - Now go back to having N fixed at 20 years, and examine the effect of different interest rates. You should see that raising the interest rate by 1 per cent (0.01) increases the monthly payment by about \$37.
- 2.28 It's useful to be able to work out how the period of a bond repayment changes if you increase or decrease your monthly payment P . The formula for the number of years N to repay the loan is given by

$$N = \frac{\ln(\frac{P}{P-rL/12})}{12 \ln(1 + r/12)}.$$

- Write a new program to compute this formula. Use the built-in function `log` for the natural logarithm `ln`. How long will it take to pay off the loan of \$50 000 at \$800 a

month if the interest remains at 15 per cent? (Answer: 10.2 years—nearly twice as fast as when paying \$658 a month!)

- (b) Use your program to find out by trial-and-error the smallest monthly payment that can be made to pay the loan off—this side of eternity. **Hint:** recall that it is not possible to find the logarithm of a negative number, so P must not be less than $rL/12$.

3

Developing algorithms

Objective

The objective of this chapter is to introduce you to:

- the concept of a structure plan (pseudo-code) as a means of designing the logic of a program.

The examples we have seen so far have been very simple logically, since we have been concentrating on the technical aspects of writing MATLAB statements correctly. However, real problems are far more complex. To program successfully we need to understand a problem thoroughly, and to break it down into its most fundamental logical stages. In other words, we have to develop a systematic procedure or *algorithm*, for solving the problem. There are a number of methods which assist in this process of algorithm development. In this chapter we look at one such approach—*structure plans*, which we have already met briefly.

3.1 Structure plans

A structure plan is an example of what is called *pseudo-code*, i.e. statements in fairly plain English describing how to solve a problem. You don't have to be an expert in any particular computer language to understand pseudo-code. A structure plan may be written at a number of levels, each of increasing complexity, as the logical structure of the program is developed.

Suppose we want to write a script to convert a temperature on the Fahrenheit scale (where water freezes and boils at 32° and 212° respectively) to the more familiar Celsius centigrade scale. A first-level structure plan might be a simple statement of the problem:

1. Initialize Fahrenheit temperature
2. Calculate and display Celsius temperature
3. Stop.

Step 1 is pretty straight forward, but step 2 needs elaborating, so the second-level plan could be something like this:

1. Initialize Fahrenheit temperature (F)
2. Calculate Celsius temperature (C) as follows:
 - 2.1. Subtract 32 from F and multiply by $5/9$


```

1. Start
2. Input data (a, b, c)
3. If a = 0 then
    If b = 0 then
        If c = 0 then
            Display 'Solution indeterminate'
        else
            Display 'There is no solution'
    else
        x = -c/b
        Display x (only one root: equation is linear)
    else if b2 < 4ac then
        Display 'Complex roots'
    else if b2 = 4ac then
        x = -b/(2a)
        Display x (equal roots)
    else
        x1 = (-b + √(b2 - 4ac))/(2a)
        x2 = (-b - √(b2 - 4ac))/(2a)
        Display x1, x2
4. Stop.

```

Figure 3.1 Quadratic equation structure plan

3. Display the value of C
4. Stop.

There are no hard and fast rules about how to write structure plans. The essential point is to cultivate the mental discipline of getting the logic of a problem clear before attempting to write the program. The 'top down' approach of structure plans means that the overall structure of a program is clearly thought out before you have to worry about the details of syntax (coding), and this reduces the number of errors enormously.

Quadratic equation

When you were at school you probably solved hundreds of quadratic equations of the form

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0.$$

A structure plan of the *complete* algorithm for finding the solution(s) x , given any values of a , b and c , is shown in Figure 3.1. Figure 3.2 shows the graph of a quadratic equation with real unequal roots.

When you come to writing the program, you can type the structure plan into the MATLAB Editor, as described in Chapter 2. Use cut and paste to make another copy of the plan below the first one, and translate the second copy into MATLAB statements. If it's a good structure plan, it should translate line for line. Then comment out the original structure plan with **Text** -> **Comment**, so you can save it with the program.

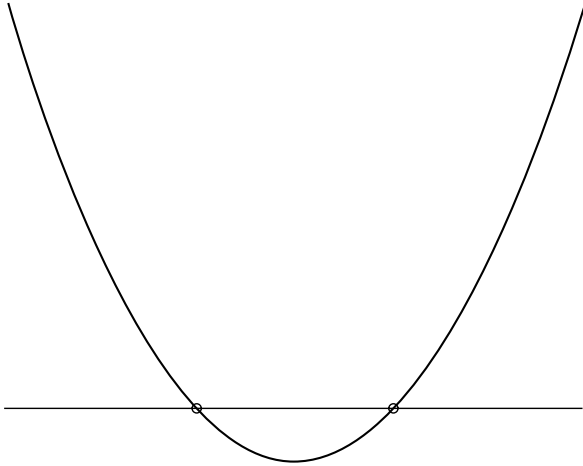


Figure 3.2 Graph of a quadratic equation with real unequal roots indicated by \circ

3.2 Structured programming with functions

Many examples later in this book will get rather involved. More advanced programs like these should be *structured* by means of your own *function M-files*. These are dealt with in detail in Chapter 10. A function M-file is a type of script file (i.e. a file with an extension of `.m`) which you can ‘call’ interactively, or from other scripts, in specific ways.

The ‘main’ script itself will then look very much like a first-level structure plan of the problem.

For example, the quadratic equation problem may be structure-planned at the first level as follows:

1. Input the data
2. Find and display the solution(s)
3. Stop.

Using a function file `quad.m` to do the dirty work, this could be translated directly into the following MATLAB script:

```
a = input( 'Enter coefficients: ' );  
x = quad(a);
```

(The details of how to code this particular problem are left as an exercise in Chapter 10.)

Summary

- An algorithm is a systematic logical procedure for solving a problem.
- An algorithm must be developed for a problem before it can be coded.
- A structure plan is a representation of an algorithm in pseudo-code.
- A function M-file is a type of script file designed to handle a particular task, and which may be activated (invoked) whenever needed.

Exercises

The problems in these exercises should all be structure-planned, before being written up as MATLAB programs (where appropriate).

3.1 The structure plan in this example defines a geometric construction. Carry out the plan by sketching the construction:

1. Draw two perpendicular x - and y -axes
2. Draw the points $A (10, 0)$ and $B (0, 1)$
3. While A does not coincide with the origin repeat:
 Draw a straight line joining A and B
 Move A one unit to the left along the x -axis
 Move B one unit up on the y -axis
4. Stop.

3.2 Consider the following structure plan, where M and N represent MATLAB variables:

1. Set $M = 44$ and $N = 28$
2. While M not equal to N repeat:
 While $M > N$ repeat:
 Replace value of M by $M - N$
 While $N > M$ repeat:
 Replace value of N by $N - M$
3. Display M
4. Stop.

- (a) Work through the structure plan, sketching the contents of M and N during execution. Give the output.
 - (b) Repeat (a) for $M = 14$ and $N = 24$.
 - (c) What general arithmetic procedure does the algorithm carry out (try more values of M and N if necessary)?
- 3.3 Write a program to convert a Fahrenheit temperature to Celsius. Test it on the data in Exercise 2.11 (where the reverse conversion is done).
- 3.4 Write a script which inputs any two numbers (which may be equal) and displays the larger one with a suitable message, or if they are equal, displays a message to that effect.
- 3.5 Write a script for the general solution of the quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$. Use the structure plan in Figure 3.1. Your script should be able to handle all possible values of the data a , b , and c . Try it out on the following values of a , b and c :
- (a) 1, 1, 1 (complex roots);
 - (b) 2, 4, 2 (equal roots of -1.0);
 - (c) 2, 2, -12 (roots of 2.0 and -3.0).

The structure plan in Figure 3.1 is for programming languages which cannot handle complex numbers. MATLAB however can. Adjust your script so that it can also find complex roots. Test it on case (a) above; the roots are $-0.5 \pm 0.866i$.

3.6 Develop a structure plan for the solution of two simultaneous linear equations (i.e. the equations of two straight lines). Your algorithm must be able to handle all possible situations, viz. lines which are intersecting, parallel, or co-incident. Write a program to implement your algorithm, and test it on some equations for which you know the solutions, e.g.

$$\begin{aligned}x + y &= 3 \\2x - y &= 3\end{aligned}$$

($x = 2$, $y = 1$). **Hint:** begin by deriving an algebraic formula for the solution of the system

$$ax + by = c$$

$$dx + ey = f.$$

The program should input the coefficients a , b , c , d , e and f .

We will see in Chapter 18 that MATLAB has a very elegant way of solving systems of equations directly, using matrix algebra. But it is good for the development of your programming skills to do it the long way, as in this exercise.

4

MATLAB functions

Objective

The objective of this chapter is to enable you to:

- become familiar with some of the more common MATLAB functions.

So far you should be able to write a MATLAB program which inputs data, performs simple arithmetic operations on the data, perhaps involving loops and decisions, and displays the results of the computation in a comprehensible form. However, more interesting problems in science and engineering are likely to involve special mathematical functions like sines, cosines, logarithms, etc. MATLAB comes with a large collection of such functions; we have seen some of them already. This chapter introduces you to the more common ones.

4.1 Projectile motion

We want to write a script to compute the position (x and y co-ordinates) and the velocity (magnitude and direction) of a projectile, given t , the time since launch, u , the launch velocity, a , the initial angle of launch (in degrees), and g , the acceleration due to gravity.

The horizontal and vertical displacements are given by the formulae

$$x = ut \cos(a), \quad y = ut \sin(a) - gt^2/2.$$

The velocity has magnitude V such that $V = \sqrt{V_x^2 + V_y^2}$, where its horizontal and vertical components, V_x and V_y , are given by

$$V_x = u \cos(a), \quad V_y = u \sin(a) - gt,$$

and V makes an angle θ with the ground such that $\tan(\theta) = V_y/V_x$. The script is:

```
d = input( 'Angle of projection in degrees: ' );
t = input( 'Time in flight: ' );
a = d * pi / 180;                               % convert to radians
u = 60;                                         % launch velocity
g = 9.8;
```

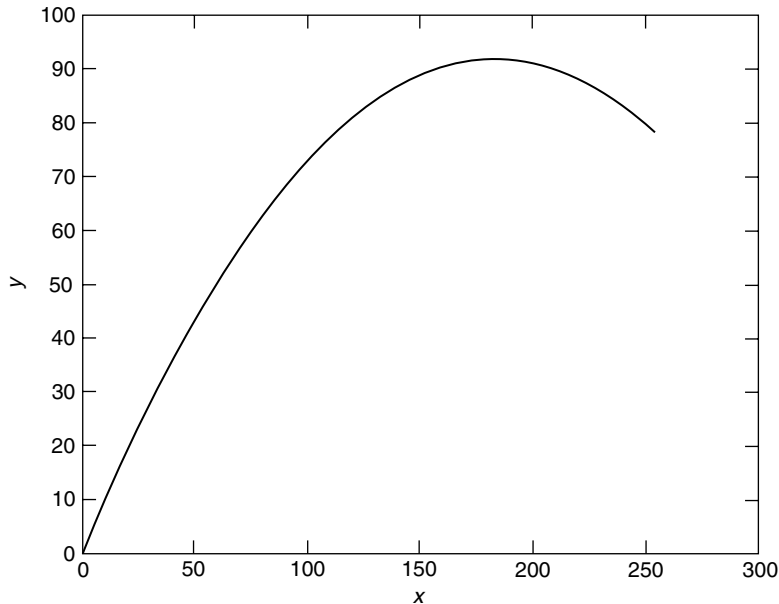


Figure 4.1 Projectile trajectory

```
x = u * t * cos(a); % horizontal displacement
y = u * t * sin(a) - 0.5 * g * t ^ 2; % vertical displacement
vx = u * cos(a); % horizontal velocity
vy = u * sin(a) - g * t; % vertical velocity
V = sqrt( vx^2 + vy^2 ); % resultant velocity
th = 180 / pi * atan2( vy, vx ); % direction at time t
disp( ['x: ' num2str(x) ' y: ' num2str(y)] );
disp( ['V: ' num2str(V) ' th: ' num2str(th)] );
```

If you run this script with values of 45 and 6 for u and t respectively, you will get the following output:

```
x: 254.6   y: 78.16
V: 45.48   th: -21.1
```

You can see from the negative value of θ that the projectile is coming down. Figure 4.1 shows the trajectory of the projectile for the first 6 seconds.

Note the important difference between the functions `atan2` (used here) and `atan`. The function `atan2(vy, vx)` returns the arctangent (inverse tangent) of vy/vx in the range $-\pi$ to π , depending on the signs of vx and vy . However, `atan(vy/vx)` returns the arctangent of vy/vx in the range $-\pi/2$ to $\pi/2$, which is restricted to the first and fourth quadrants.

If, for example, you use `atan` instead of `atan2` in the above script for a launch angle of 135° (projectile moving to the left), you will get an incorrect answer of 21.1° for θ instead of the correct one of -158.9° .

The argument of a function may be an appropriate MATLAB expression, including another function. So V could have been computed directly as follows:

```
V = sqrt( (u * cos(a))^2 + (u * sin(a) - g * t)^2 );
```

Angles for the trigonometric functions must be expressed in radians, and are returned in radians where appropriate. To convert degrees to radians, multiply the angle in degrees by $\pi/180$, where π is the well-known transcendental number 3.14159 26535 8979..., represented by the MATLAB function `pi`.

4.2 Some common functions

Tables of MATLAB functions and commands appear in Appendix C. A short list of some of the more common ones follows. Use `helpwin` at the command line to see a list of categories of functions, with links to descriptions of the functions. Alternatively, go to the **Contents** listing in the Help Navigator (the left pane in the Help browser), and expand successively **MATLAB, Reference, MATLAB Function Reference** where you can choose either **Functions by Category**, or **Alphabetical List of Functions**.

Note that if the argument of a function is an array, the function is applied element by element to all the values in the array, e.g.

```
sqrt([1 2 3 4])
```

returns

```
1.0000    1.4142    1.7321    2.0000
```

`abs(x)`
absolute value of x .

`acos(x)`
arc cosine (inverse cosine) of x between 0 and π .

`acosh(x)`
inverse hyperbolic cosine of x , i.e. $\ln(x + \sqrt{x^2 - 1})$.

`asin(x)`
arc sine (inverse sine) of x between $-\pi/2$ and $\pi/2$.

`asinh(x)`
inverse hyperbolic sine of x , i.e. $\ln(x + \sqrt{x^2 + 1})$.

`atan(x)`
arc tangent of x between $-\pi/2$ and $\pi/2$.

`atan2(y, x)`
arc tangent of y/x between $-\pi$ and π .

`atanh(x)`
inverse hyperbolic tangent of x , i.e. $\frac{1}{2} \ln\left(\frac{1+x}{1-x}\right)$.

`ceil(x)`
smallest integer which exceeds x , i.e. rounds up to nearest integer, e.g. `ceil(-3.9)` returns -3, `ceil(3.9)` returns 4.

`clock`

time and date in a six-element vector, e.g. the statements

```
t = clock;  
fprintf( ' %02.0f:%02.0f:%02.0f\n', t(4), t(5), t(6) );
```

result in 14:09:03. Note how the hours, minutes and seconds are left-filled with zeros if necessary.

`cos(x)`

cosine of x .

`cosh(x)`

hyperbolic cosine of x , i.e. $\frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{2}$ (see Figure 4.2).

`cot(x)`

cotangent of x .

`csc(x)`

cosecant of x .

`cumsum(x)`

cumulative sum of the elements of x , e.g. `cumsum(1:4)` returns [1 3 6 10].

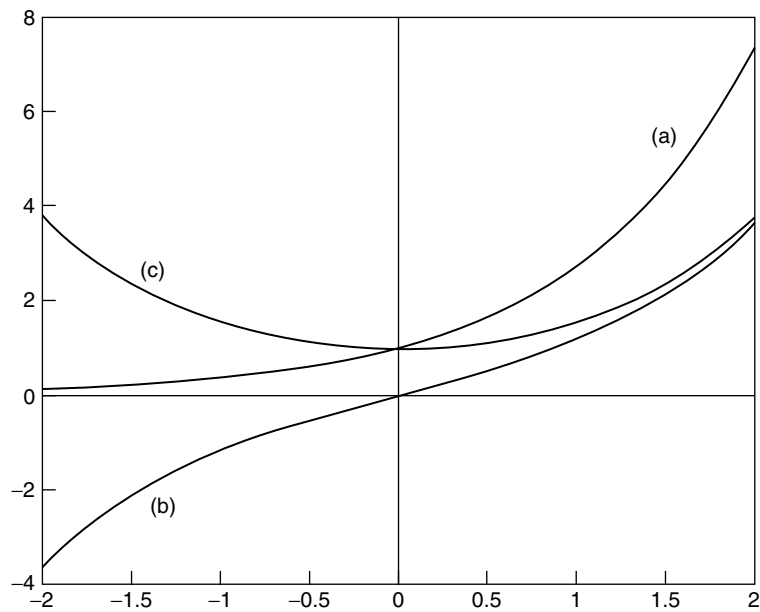


Figure 4.2 The (a) exponential, (b) hyperbolic sine and (c) hyperbolic cosine functions

`date`

date in a string in dd-mmm-yyyy format, e.g. 02-Feb-2001, which is thankfully Y2K compliant! The version of MATLAB used in the first edition of this book returned only the last two digits of the year: 11-Jul-97.

`exp(x)`

value of the exponential function e^x (see Figure 4.2).

`fix(x)`

rounds to the nearest integer towards zero, e.g. `fix(-3.9)` returns -3, `fix(3.9)` returns 3.

`floor(x)`

largest integer not exceeding x , i.e. rounds down to nearest integer, e.g. `floor(-3.9)` returns -4, `floor(3.9)` returns 3.

`length(x)`

number of elements of vector x .

`log(x)`

natural logarithm of x .

`log10(x)`

base 10 logarithm of x .

`max(x)`

maximum element of vector x .

`mean(x)`

mean value of elements of vector x .

`min(x)`

minimum element of vector x .

`pow2(x)`

2^x .

`prod(x)`

product of the elements of x .

`rand`

pseudo-random number in the interval $[0, 1)$. The value returned is *pseudo*-random rather than truly random in the sense that there is an algorithm that determines `rand` from the initial 'seed'. The same seed will generate the same 'random' sequence. See Chapter 17 for how to seed `rand`.

`realmax`
largest positive floating point number on your computer.

`realmin`
smallest positive floating point number on your computer.

`rem(x, y)`
remainder when x is divided by y , e.g. `rem(19, 5)` returns 4 (5 goes 3 times into 19, remainder 4).

Strictly, `rem(x, y)` returns $x - y * n$ where $n = \text{fix}(x/y)$ is the integer nearest to x/y . This shows how negative and/or non-integer arguments are handled.

`fix` and `rem` are useful for converting smaller units to larger ones, e.g. inches to feet and inches (one foot = 12 inches). The following statements convert 40 inches this way:

```
feet = fix(40/12)
inches = rem(40, 12)
```

`round(x)`
rounds to the integer nearest to x , e.g. `round(4.49)` returns 4, `round(4.5)` returns 5.

`sec(x)`
secant of x .

`sign(x)`
returns -1, 0 or 1 depending on whether x is negative, zero or positive.

`sin(x)`
sine of x .

`sinh(x)`
hyperbolic sine of x , i.e. $\frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{2}$ (see Figure 4.2).

`size(a)`
number of rows and columns of matrix a .

`sort(x)`
sorts elements of vector x into ascending order (by columns if x is a matrix).

`sqrt(x)`
square root of x . Handles negative or complex values.

`sum(x)`
sum of elements of vector x .

`tan(x)`
tangent of x .

`tanh(x)`
hyperbolic tangent of x .

`tic, toc`
execution time of code between these two functions is displayed.

Summary

- MATLAB functions may be used to perform a variety of mathematical, trigonometric and other operations.

Exercises

4.1 Write some MATLAB statements which will:

- find the length C of the hypotenuse of a right-angle triangle in terms of the lengths A and B of the other two sides;
- find the length C of a side of a triangle given the lengths A and B of the other two sides and the size in degrees of the included angle θ , using the cosine rule:

$$C^2 = A^2 + B^2 - 2AB \cos(\theta).$$

4.2 Translate the following formulae into MATLAB expressions:

- $\ln(x + x^2 + a^2)$
- $[e^{3t} + t^2 \sin(4t)] \cos^2(3t)$
- $4 \tan^{-1}(1)$ (inverse tangent)
- $\sec^2(x) + \cot(y)$
- $\cot^{-1}(|x/a|)$ (use MATLAB's inverse cotangent)

4.3 There are 39.37 inches in a metre, 12 inches in a foot, and three feet in a yard. Write a script to input a length in metres (which may have a decimal part) and convert it to yards, feet and inches. (Check: 3.51 metres converts to 3 yds 2 ft 6.19 in.)

4.4 A sphere of mass m_1 impinges obliquely on a stationary sphere of mass m_2 , the direction of the blow making an angle α with the line of motion of the impinging sphere. If the coefficient of restitution is e it can be shown that the impinging sphere is deflected through an angle β such that

$$\tan(\beta) = \frac{m_2(1 + e) \tan(\alpha)}{m_1 - em_2 + (m_1 + m_2) \tan^2(\alpha)}$$

Write a script to input values of m_1 , m_2 , e , and α (in degrees) and to compute the angle β in degrees.

4.5 Section 2.8 has a program for computing the members of the sequence $x_n = a^n/n!$. The program displays every member x_n computed. Adjust it to display only every 10th value of x_n .

Hint: the expression `rem(n, 10)` will be zero only when `n` is an exact multiple of 10. Use this in an `if` statement to display every tenth value of x_n .

- 4.6 To convert the variable `mins` minutes into hours and minutes you would use `fix(mins/60)` to find the whole number of hours, and `rem(mins, 60)` to find the number of minutes left over. Write a script which inputs a number of minutes and converts it to hours and minutes. Now write a script to convert seconds into hours, minutes and seconds. Try out your script on 10 000 seconds, which should convert to 2 hours 46 minutes and 40 seconds.
- 4.7 Design an algorithm (i.e. write the structure plan) for a machine which must give the correct amount of change from a \$100 note for any purchase costing less than \$100. The plan must specify the number and type of all notes and coins in the change, and should in all cases give as few notes and coins as possible. (If you are not familiar with dollars and cents, use your own monetary system.)
- 4.8 A uniform beam is freely hinged at its ends $x = 0$ and $x = L$, so that the ends are at the same level. It carries a uniformly distributed load of W per unit length, and there is a tension T along the x -axis. The deflection y of the beam a distance x from one end is given by

$$y = \frac{WEI}{T^2} \left[\frac{\cosh[a(L/2 - x)]}{\cosh(aL/2)} - 1 \right] + \frac{Wx(L - x)}{2T},$$

where $a^2 = T/EI$, E being the Young's modulus of the beam, and I is the moment of inertia of a cross-section of the beam. The beam is 10 m long, the tension is 1000 N, the load 100 N/m, and EI is 10^4 .

Write a script to compute and plot a graph of the deflection y against x (MATLAB has a `cosh` function).

To make the graph look realistic you will have to override MATLAB's automatic axis scaling with the statement

```
axis( [xmin xmax ymin ymax] )
```

after the `plot` statement, where `xmin` etc. have appropriate values.

5

Logical vectors

Objectives

The objectives of this chapter are to enable you to

- understand logical operators more fully

and to introduce you to:

- logical vectors and how to use them effectively in a number of applications;
- logical functions

This chapter introduces a most powerful and elegant feature, which is unique to MATLAB: *logical vectors*. The topic is so important that it deserves a chapter of its own.

Try these exercises on the command line:

1. Enter the following statements:

```
r = 1;  
r <= 0.5      % no semi-colon
```

If you correctly left out the semi-colon after the second statement you will have noticed that it returned the value 0.

2. Now enter the expression `r >= 0.5` (again, no semi-colon). It should return the value 1. We saw in Chapter 2 that a logical expression in MATLAB involving only scalars returns a value of 0 if it is FALSE, and 1 if it is TRUE.

3. Enter the following statements:

```
r = 1:5;  
r <= 3
```

Now the logical expression `r <= 3` (where `r` is a vector) returns a *vector*:

```
1      1      1      0      0
```

Can you see how to interpret this result? For each element of `r` for which `r <= 3` is true, 1 is returned; otherwise 0 is returned.

Now enter `r == 4`. Can you see why `0 0 0 1 0` is returned?

When a vector is involved in a logical expression, the comparison is carried out *element by element* (as in an arithmetic operation). If the comparison is true for a particular element of the vector, the resulting vector, which is called a *logical vector*, has a 1 in the corresponding position; otherwise it has a 0. The same applies to logical expressions involving matrices. (Logical vectors were called 0-1 vectors in Version 4. Version 4 code involving 0-1 vectors will not run under Version 6 in certain circumstances—see below in Section 5.3.)

You can also compare vectors with vectors in logical expressions. Enter the following statements:

```
a = 1:5;
b = [0 2 3 5 6];
a == b    % no semi-colon!
```

The logical expression `a == b` returns the logical vector

```
0    1    1    0    0
```

because it is evaluated element by element, i.e. $a(1)$ is compared with $b(1)$, $a(2)$ with $b(2)$, etc.

5.1 Examples

Discontinuous graphs

One very useful application of logical vectors is in plotting discontinuities. The following script plots the graph, shown in Figure 5.1, defined by

$$y(x) = \begin{cases} \sin(x) & (\sin(x) > 0) \\ 0 & (\sin(x) \leq 0) \end{cases}$$

over the range 0 to 3π :

```
x = 0 : pi/20 : 3 * pi;
y = sin(x);
y = y .* (y > 0);    % set negative values of sin(x) to zero
plot(x, y)
```

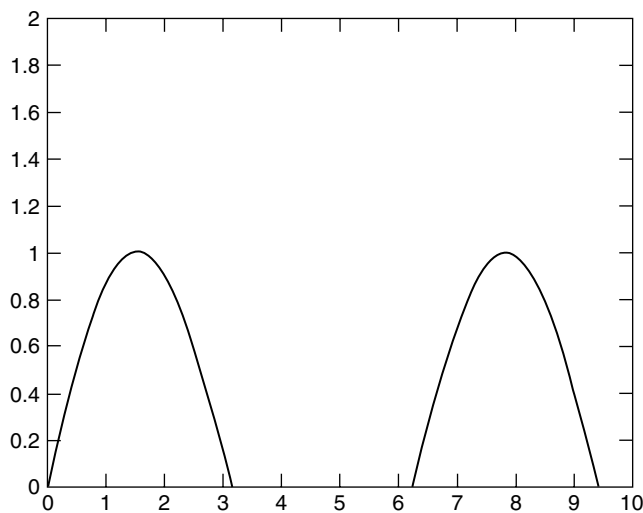


Figure 5.1 A discontinuous graph using logical vectors

The expression `y > 0` returns a logical vector with 1's where $\sin(x)$ is positive, and 0's otherwise. Element-by-element multiplication by `y` with `.*` then picks out the positive elements of `y`.

Avoiding division by zero

Suppose you want to plot the graph of $\sin(x)/x$ over the range -4π to 4π . The most convenient way to set up a vector of the x co-ordinates is

```
x = -4*pi : pi / 20 : 4*pi;
```

But then when you try

```
y = sin(x) ./ x;
```

you get the `Divide by zero` warning, because one of the elements of `x` is exactly zero. A neat way around this problem is to use a logical vector to replace the zero with `eps`. This MATLAB function returns the difference between 1.0 and the next largest number which can be represented in MATLAB, i.e. approximately $2.2e-16$. Here is how to do it:

```
x = x + (x == 0)*eps;
```

The expression `x == 0` returns a logical vector with a single 1 for the element of `x` which is zero, and so `eps` is added only to that element. The following script plots the graph correctly—without a missing segment at $x = 0$ (see Figure 5.2).

```
x = -4*pi : pi/20 : 4*pi;
x = x + (x == 0)*eps;      % adjust x = 0 to x = eps
y = sin(x) ./ x;
plot(x, y)
```

When `x` has the value `eps`, the value of `sin(eps)/eps` has the correct limiting value of 1 (check it), instead of NaN (Not-a-Number) resulting from a division by zero.

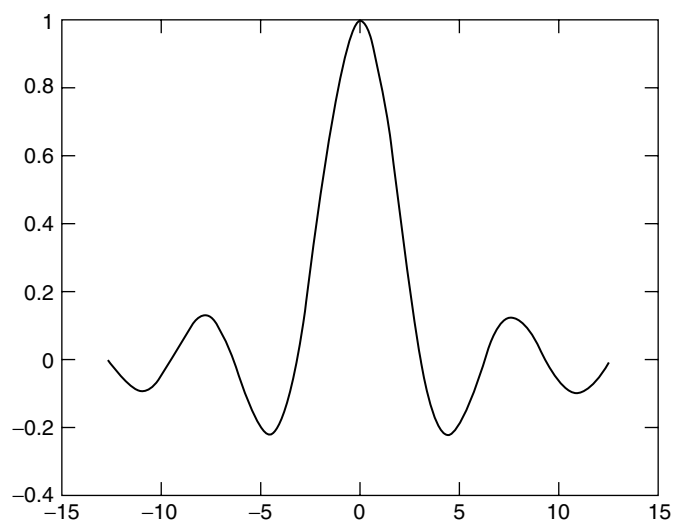


Figure 5.2 $\sin(x)/x$

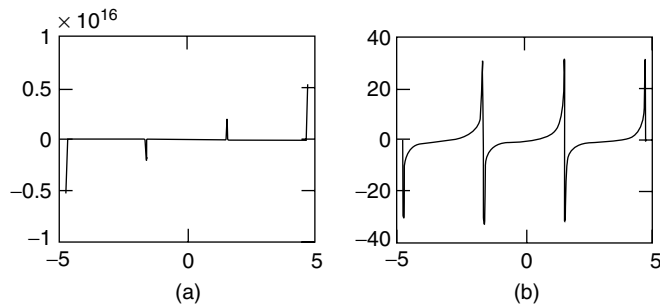


Figure 5.3 Variations on $\tan(x)$

Avoiding infinity

The following script attempts to plot $\tan(x)$ over the range $-3\pi/2$ to $3\pi/2$. If you are not too hot at trig graphs, perhaps you should sketch the graph roughly with pen and paper before you run the script!

```
x = -3/2*pi : pi/100 : 3/2*pi;
y = tan(x);
plot(x, y)
```

The MATLAB plot—Figure 5.3(a)—should look nothing like your sketch. The problem is that $\tan(x)$ approaches $\pm\infty$ at odd multiples of $\pi/2$. The scale on the MATLAB plot is therefore very large (about 10^{15}), making it impossible to see the structure of the graph anywhere else.

If you add the statement

```
y = y .* (abs(y) < 1e10); % remove the big ones
```

just before the `plot` statement you'll get a much nicer graph, as shown in Figure 5.3(b). The expression `abs(y) < 1e10` returns a logical vector which is zero only at the asymptotes. The graph thus goes through zero at these points, which incidentally draws nearly vertical asymptotes for you. These 'asymptotes' become more vertical as the increment in `x` becomes smaller.

Counting random numbers

The function `rand` returns a (pseudo-)random number in the interval $[0, 1)$; `rand(1, n)` returns a row vector of `n` such numbers.

Try the following exercises on the command line:

1. Set up a vector `r` with seven random elements (leave out the semi-colon so that you can see its elements):

```
r = rand(1,7) % no semi-colon
```

Check that the logical expression `r < 0.5` gives the correct logical vector.

2. Using the function `sum` on the logical expression `r < 0.5` will effectively count how many elements of `r` are less than 0.5. Try it, and check your answer against the values displayed for `r`:

```
sum( r < 0.5 )
```

3. Now use a similar statement to count how many elements of `r` are greater than or equal to 0.5 (the two answers should add up to 7, shouldn't they?).

4. Since `rand` generates *uniformly distributed* random numbers, you would expect the number of random numbers which are less than 0.5 to get closer and closer to half the total number as more and more are generated.

Generate a vector of a few thousand random numbers (suppress display with a semi-colon this time) and use a logical vector to count how many are less than 0.5.

Repeat a few times with a new set of random numbers each time. Because the numbers are random, you should never get quite the same answer each time.

Doing this problem without logical vectors is a little more involved. Here is the program:

```
tic                                % start
a = 0;                             % number >= 0.5
b = 0;                             % number < 0.5

for n = 1:5000
    r = rand;                       % generate one number per loop
    if r >= 0.5
        a = a + 1;
    else
        b = b + 1;
    end;
end;

t = toc;                            % finish
disp( ['less than 0.5: ' num2str(a)] )
disp( ['time: ' num2str(t)] )
```

It also takes a lot longer. Compare times for the two methods on your computer.

Rolling dice

When a fair dice is rolled, the number uppermost is equally likely to be any integer from 1 to 6. So if `rand` is a random number in the range $[0, 1)$, `6 * rand` will be in the range $[0, 6)$, and `6 * rand + 1` will be in the range $[1, 7)$, i.e. between 1 and 6.9999. Discarding the decimal part of this expression with `floor` gives an integer in the required range. Try the following exercises:

1. Generate a vector `d` of 20 random integers in the range 1 to 6:

```
d = floor(6 * rand(1, 20)) + 1
```

2. Count the number of 'sixes' thrown by summing the elements of the logical vector `d == 6`.
3. Verify your result by displaying `d`.
4. Estimate the probability of throwing a six by dividing the number of sixes thrown by 20. Using random numbers like this to mimic a real situation based on chance is called *simulation*.
5. Repeat with more random numbers in the vector `d`. The more you have, the closer the proportion of sixes gets to the theoretical expected value of 0.1667, i.e. $1/6$.
6. Can you see why it would be incorrect to use `round` instead of `floor`? The problem is that `round` rounds in both directions, whereas `floor` rounds everything down.

5.2 Logical operators

We saw briefly in Chapter 2 that logical expressions can be constructed not only from the six relational operators, but also from the three *logical operators* shown in Table 5.1. Table 5.2 shows the effects of these operators on the general logical expressions *lex1* and *lex2*.

Table 5.1 Logical operators

Operator	Meaning
~	NOT
&	AND
|	OR

Table 5.2 Truth table (T = true; F = false)

lex1	lex2	~lex1	lex1 & lex2	lex1 | lex2	xor(lex1, lex2)
F	F	T	F	F	F
F	T	T	F	T	T
T	F	F	F	T	T
T	T	F	T	T	F

The OR operator (|) is technically an *inclusive* OR, because it is true when either or both of its operands are true. MATLAB also has an *exclusive* OR function `xor(a, b)` which is 1 (true) only when either *but not both of* a and b is 1 (Table 5.2).

MATLAB also has a number of functions that perform bitwise logical operations. See Help on `ops`.

The precedence levels of the logical operators, among others, are shown in Table 5.3. As usual, precedences may be overridden with brackets, e.g.

```
~ 0 & 0
```

returns 0 (false), whereas

```
~ (0 & 0)
```

returns 1 (true). Some more examples:

```
(b * b == 4 * a * c) & (a ~= 0)
(final >= 60) & (final < 70)
(a ~= 0) | (b ~= 0) | (c != 0)
~((a == 0) & (b == 0) & (c == 0))
```

It is never wrong to use brackets to make the logic clearer, even if they are syntactically unnecessary.

Incidentally, the last two expressions above are logically equivalent, and are false only when $a = b = c = 0$. It makes you think, doesn't it?

Operator precedence

You may accidentally enter an expression like

```
2 > 1 & 0
```

(try it) and be surprised because MATLAB (a) accepts it, and (b) returns a value of 0 (false).

(a) is surprising because `2 > 1 & 0` doesn't appear to make sense. If you have got this far you deserve to be let into a secret. MATLAB is based on the notorious language C, which allows you to mix different types of operators in this way (Pascal, for example, would never allow such flexibility!).

(b) is surprising because we instinctively feel that `&` should have the higher precedence. `1 & 0` evaluates to 0, so `2 > 0` should evaluate to 1 instead of 0. The explanation is due partly to the resolution of surprise (a). MATLAB groups its operators in a rather curious and non-intuitive way. The complete operator precedence is given in Table 5.3 (reproduced for ease of reference in Appendix B).

Table 5.3 Operator precedence (see Help on operator precedence)

Precedence	Operators
1.	()
2.	^ .^ ' .' (pure transpose)
3.	+ (unary plus) - (unary minus) ~ (NOT)
4.	* / \ .* ./ .\
5.	+ (addition) - (subtraction)
6.	:
7.	> < >= <= == ~=
8.	& (AND)
9.	| (OR)

(Recall that the transpose operator `'` performs a *complex conjugate* transpose on complex data; the dot-transpose operator `.'` performs a 'pure' transpose without taking the complex conjugate.) Brackets always have the highest precedence.

Danger

I have seen quite a few students incorrectly convert the mathematical inequality $0 < r < 1$, say, into the MATLAB expression

```
0 < r < 1
```

Once again, the first time I saw this I was surprised that MATLAB did not report an error. Again, the answer is that MATLAB doesn't really mind how you mix up operators in an expression. It simply churns through the expression according to its rules (which may not be what you expect).

Suppose r has the value 0.5. Mathematically, the inequality is true for this value of r since it lies in the required range. However, the expression `0 < r < 1` is evaluated as 0. This is because the left hand operation (`0 < 0.5`) is first evaluated to 1 (true), followed by `1 < 1` which is false.

Inequalities like this should rather be coded as

```
(0 < r) & (r < 1)
```

The brackets are not strictly necessary (see Table 5.3) but they certainly help to clarify the logic.

Logical operators and vectors

The logical operators can also operate on vectors (of the same size), returning logical vectors, e.g.

```
~(~[1 2 0 -4 0])
```

replaces all the non-zeros by 1's, and leaves the 0's untouched. Try it.

Note that brackets must be used to separate the two `~`'s. Most operators may not appear directly next to each other (e.g. `+ ~`); if necessary separate them with brackets.

The script in Section 5.1 that avoids division by zero has the critical statement

```
x = x + (x == 0)*eps;
```

This is equivalent to

```
x = x + (~x)*eps;
```

Try it, and make sure you understand how it works.

Exercises

Work out the results of the following expressions before checking them at the command line:

```
a = [-1 0 3];
b = [0 3 1];
~a
a & b
a | b
xor(a, b)
a > 0 & b > 0
a > 0 | b > 0
~ a > 0
a + (~ b)
a > ~ b
~ a > b
~ (a > b)
```

5.3 Subscripting with logical vectors

We saw briefly in Chapter 2 that elements of a vector may be referenced with subscripts, and that the subscripts themselves may be vectors, e.g.

```
a = [-2 0 1 5 9];
a([5 1 3])
```

returns

```
9    -2    1
```

i.e. the fifth, first and third elements of *a*. In general, if *x* and *v* are vectors, where *v* has *n* elements, then *x(v)* means

```
[x(v(1)), x(v(2)), ..., x(v(n))]
```

Now with *a* as defined above, see what

```
a(logical([0 1 0 1 0]))
```

returns. The function `logical(v)` returns a logical vector, with elements which are 1 or 0 according as the elements of *v* are non-zero or 0. (In Version 4 the `logical` function was not necessary here—you could use a '0-1' vector directly as a subscript.)

A logical vector v may be a subscript of another vector x . Only the elements of x corresponding to 1's in v are returned.

Figure 5.4 Logical vector subscripts

Figure 5.4 summarizes the rules for the use of a logical vector as a subscript. So the statement above returns

```
0      5
```

i.e. the second and fourth elements of a , corresponding to the 1's in `logical([0 1 0 1 0])`. What will

```
a(logical([1 1 1 0 0]))
```

return? And what about `a(logical([0 0 0 0 0]))`?

Logical vector subscripts provide an elegant way of removing certain elements from a vector, e.g.

```
a = a(a > 0)
```

removes all the non-positive elements from a , because `a > 0` returns the logical vector `[0 0 1 1 1]`. We can verify incidentally that the expression `a > 0` is a logical vector, because the statement

```
islogical(a > 0)
```

returns 1. However, the *numeric* vector `[0 0 1 1 1]` is not a logical vector; the statement

```
islogical([0 0 1 1 1])
```

returns 0.

5.4 Logical functions

MATLAB has a number of useful *logical functions* that operate on scalars, vectors and matrices. Examples are given in the following list (where x is a vector unless otherwise stated). See Help on `logical functions`. (The functions are defined slightly differently for matrix arguments—see Chapter 6 or Help.)

`any(x)` returns the scalar 1 (true) if *any* element of x is non-zero (true).

`all(x)` returns the scalar 1 if *all* the elements of x are non-zero.

`exist('a')` returns 1 if a is a workspace variable. For other possible return values see help. Note that a must be enclosed in apostrophes.

`find(x)` returns a vector containing the subscripts of the *non-zero* (true) elements of x , so for example,

```
a = a( find(a) )
```

removes all the zero elements from a ! Try it.

Another use of `find` is in finding the subscripts of the largest (or smallest) elements in a vector, when there is more than one. Enter the following:

```
x = [8 1 -4 8 6];  
find(x >= max(x))
```

This returns the vector `[1 4]`, which are the subscripts of the largest element (8). It works because the logical expression `x >= max(x)` returns a logical vector with 1's only at the positions of the largest elements.

`isempty(x)` returns 1 if `x` is an empty array and 0 otherwise. An empty array has a size of 0-by-0.

`isinf(x)` returns 1's for the elements of `x` which are `+Inf` or `-Inf`, and 0's otherwise.

`isnan(x)` returns 1's where the elements of `x` are NaN and 0's otherwise. This function may be used to remove NaNs from a set of data. This situation could arise while you are collecting statistics; missing or unavailable values can be temporarily represented by NaNs. However, if you do any calculations involving the NaNs, they propagate through intermediate calculations to the final result. To avoid this, the NaNs in a vector may be removed with a statement like

```
x(isnan(x)) = [ ]
```

MATLAB has a number of other logical functions starting with the characters `is`. See `is*` in the Help index for the complete list.

Using any and all

Because `any` and `all` with vector arguments return *scalars*, they are particularly useful in `if` statements. For example,

```
if all(a >= 1)  
    do something  
end
```

means 'if all the elements of the vector `a` are greater than or equal to 1, then *do something*'.

Recall from Chapter 2 that a vector condition in an `if` statement is true only if *all* its elements are non-zero. So if you want to execute *statement* below when two vectors `a` and `b` are equal (i.e. the same) you could say

```
if a == b  
    statement  
end
```

since `if` considers the logical vector returned by `a == b` true only if every element is a 1.

If, on the other hand, you want to execute *statement* specifically when the vectors `a` and `b` are *not* equal, the temptation is to say

```

if a ~= b      % wrong wrong wrong!!!
    statement
end

```

However this will *not* work, since *statement* will only execute if *each* of the corresponding elements of *a* and *b* differ. This is where *any* comes in:

```

if any(a ~= b) % right right right!!!
    statement
end

```

This does what is required since `any(a ~= b)` returns the scalar 1 if *any* element of *a* differs from the corresponding element of *b*.

5.5 Logical vectors instead of `elseif` ladders

Those of us who grew up on more conventional programming languages in the last century may find it difficult to think in terms of using logical vectors when solving general problems. It's a nice challenge whenever writing a program to ask yourself whether you can possibly use logical vectors. They are almost always faster than other methods, although often not as clear to read later. You must decide when it's important for you to use logical vectors. But it's a very good programming exercise to force yourself to use them whenever possible! The following example illustrates these points by first solving a problem conventionally, and then with logical vectors.

It has been said that there are two unpleasant and unavoidable facts of life: death and income tax. A very simplified version of how income tax is calculated could be based on the following table:

<i>Taxable income</i>	<i>Tax payable</i>
\$10 000 or less	10 per cent of taxable income
between \$10 000 and \$20 000	\$1000 + 20 per cent of amount by which taxable income exceeds \$10 000
more than \$20 000	\$3000 + 50 per cent of amount by which taxable income exceeds \$20 000

The tax payable on a taxable income of \$30 000, for example, is

$\$3000 + 50 \text{ per cent of } (\$30\,000 - \$20\,000)$, i.e. \$8000.

We would like to calculate the income tax on the following taxable incomes (in dollars): 5000, 10 000, 15 000, 30 000 and 50 000.

The conventional way to program this problem is to set up a vector with the taxable incomes as elements and to use a `loop` with an `elseif` ladder to process each element, as follows:

```

% Income tax the old-fashioned way

inc = [5000 10000 15000 30000 50000];

for ti = inc

    if ti < 10000
        tax = 0.1 * ti;
    elseif ti < 20000

```

```
    tax = 1000 + 0.2 * (ti - 10000);  
else  
    tax = 3000 + 0.5 * (ti - 20000);  
end;  
  
    disp( [ti tax] )  
end;
```

Here is the output, suitably edited (note that the amount of tax paid changes continuously between tax 'brackets'—each category of tax is called a bracket):

Taxable income	Income tax
5000.00	500.00
10000.00	1000.00
15000.00	2000.00
30000.00	8000.00
50000.00	18000.00

Now here is the logical way:

```
% Income tax the logical way  
  
inc = [5000 10000 15000 30000 50000];  
  
tax = 0.1 * inc .* (inc <= 10000);  
tax = tax + (inc > 10000 & inc <= 20000) ...  
        .* (0.2 * (inc-10000) + 1000);  
tax = tax + (inc > 20000) .* (0.5 * (inc-20000) + 3000);  
  
disp( [inc' tax'] );
```

To understand how it works, it may help to enter the statements on the command line. Start by entering the vector `inc` as given. Now enter

```
inc <= 10000
```

which should give the logical vector `[1 1 0 0 0]`. Next enter

```
inc .* (inc <= 10000)
```

which should give the vector `[5000 10000 0 0 0]`. This has successfully selected only the incomes in the first bracket. The tax for these incomes is then calculated with

```
tax = 0.1 * inc .* (inc <= 10000)
```

which returns `[500 1000 0 0 0]`.

Now for the second tax bracket. Enter the expression

```
inc > 10000 & inc <= 20000
```

which returns the logical vector `[0 0 1 0 0]`, since there is only one income in this bracket. Now enter

```
0.2 * (inc-10000) + 1000
```

This returns `[0 1000 2000 5000 9000]`. Only the third entry is correct. Multiplying this vector by the logical vector just obtained blots out the other entries, giving `[0 0 2000 0 0]`. The result can be safely added to the vector `tax` since it will not affect the first two entries already there.

I am sure you will agree that the logical vector solution is more interesting than the conventional one!

Summary

- When a relational and/or logical operator operates on a vector expression, the operation is carried out element by element. The result is a logical vector consisting of 0's (FALSE) and 1's (TRUE).
- A vector may be subscripted with a logical vector of the same size. Only the elements corresponding to the 1's in the logical vector are returned.
- When one of the logical operators (`~` `&` `|`) operates on an expression any non-zero value in an operand is regarded as TRUE; zero is regarded as FALSE. A logical vector is returned.
- Arithmetic, relational and logical operators may appear in the same expression. Great care must be taken in observing the correct operator precedence in such situations.
- Vectors in a logical expression must all be the same size.
- If a logical expression is a vector or a matrix, it is considered true in an `if` statement only if all its elements are non-zero.
- Brackets are needed to separate certain juxtaposed (adjacent) operators.
- The logical functions `any` and `all` return scalars when taking vector arguments, and are consequently useful in `if` statements.
- Logical vectors may often be used instead of the more conventional `elseif` ladder. This provides faster more elegant code, but requires more ingenuity and the code may be less clear to read later on.

Exercises

5.1 Determine the values of the following expressions yourself before checking your answers using MATLAB. You may need to consult Table 5.3.

- `1 & -1`
- `13 & ~(-6)`
- `0 < -2 | 0`
- `~[1 0 2] * 3`
- `0 <= 0.2 <= 0.4`
- `5 > 4 > 3`
- `2 > 3 & 1`

5.2 Given that $a = [1 \ 0 \ 2]$ and $b = [0 \ 2 \ 2]$ determine the values of the following expressions. Check your answers with MATLAB.

- (a) $a \sim b$
- (b) $a < b$
- (c) $a < b < a$
- (d) $a < b < b$
- (e) $a \mid (\sim a)$
- (f) $b \& (\sim b)$
- (g) $a(\sim(\sim b))$
- (h) $a = b == a$ (determine final value of a)

5.3 Write some MATLAB statements on the command line which use logical vectors to count how many elements of a vector x are negative, zero or positive. Check that they work, e.g. with the vector

[-4 0 5 -3 0 3 7 -1 6]

5.4 The Receiver of Revenue (Internal Revenue Service) decides to change the tax table used in Section 5.5 slightly by introducing an extra tax bracket and changing the tax-rate in the third bracket, as follows:

<i>Taxable income</i>	<i>Tax payable</i>
\$10 000 or less	10 per cent of taxable income
between \$10 000 and \$20 000	\$1000 + 20 per cent of amount by which taxable income exceeds \$10 000
between \$20 000 and \$40 000	\$3000 + 30 per cent of amount by which taxable income exceeds \$20 000
more than \$40 000	\$9000 + 50 per cent of amount by which taxable income exceeds \$40 000

Amend the logical vector script to handle this table, and test it on the following list of incomes (dollars): 5000, 10 000, 15 000, 22 000, 30 000, 38 000 and 50 000.

5.5 A certain company offers seven annual salary levels (dollars): 12 000, 15 000, 18 000, 24 000, 35 000, 50 000 and 70 000. The number of employees paid at each level are, respectively: 3000, 2500, 1500, 1000, 400, 100 and 25. Write some statements at the command line to find the following:

- (a) The average salary *level*. Use `mean`. (Answer: 32 000)
- (b) The number of employees above and below this average salary level. Use logical vectors to find which salary levels are above and below the average level. Multiply these logical vectors element by element with the employee vector, and `sum` the result. (Answer: 525 above, 8000 below)
- (c) The *average salary earned* by an individual in the company (i.e. the total annual salary bill divided by the total number of employees). (Answer: 17 038.12).

5.6 Write some statements on the command line to remove the largest element(s) from a vector. Try it out on $x = [1 \ 2 \ 5 \ 0 \ 5]$. The idea is to end up with $[1 \ 2 \ 0]$ in x . Use `find` and the empty vector `[]`.

5.7 The electricity accounts of residents in a very small rural community are calculated as follows:

- if 500 units or less are used the cost is 2 cents per unit;
- if more than 500, but not more than 1000 units are used, the cost is \$10 for the first 500 units, and then 5 cents for every unit in excess of 500;

- if more than 1000 units are used, the cost is \$35 for the first 1000 units plus 10 cents for every unit in excess of 1000;
- in addition, a basic service fee of \$5 is charged, no matter how much electricity is used.

The five residents use the following amounts (units) of electricity in a certain month: 200, 500, 700, 1000 and 1500. Write a program which uses logical vectors to calculate how much they must pay. Display the results in two columns: one for the electricity used in each case, and one for amount owed. (Answers: \$9, \$15, \$25, \$40, \$90)

6

Matrices

Objectives

The objectives of this chapter are to introduce you to

- ways of creating and manipulating matrices;
- matrix operations.

As we have already seen, the name MATLAB stands for MATrix LABoratory, because the MATLAB system is designed specially to work with data arranged in the form of *matrices* (2-D arrays). The word ‘matrix’ has two distinct meanings in this chapter:

1. an arrangement of data in rows and columns, e.g. a table;
2. a mathematical object, for which particular mathematical operations are defined, e.g. ‘matrix’ multiplication.

We begin this chapter by looking at matrices in the first sense, summarizing and extending what we learnt about them in Chapter 2. We then go on to look briefly at the mathematical operations on matrices. In Chapter 18 we will see how these operations can be applied in a number of widely differing areas, such as systems of linear equations, population dynamics, and Markov processes.

6.1 Some basics

A concrete example

A ready-mix concrete company has three factories (S1, S2 and S3) which must supply three building sites (D1, D2 and D3). The costs, in some suitable currency, of transporting a load of concrete from any factory to any site are given by the following cost table:

	<i>D1</i>	<i>D2</i>	<i>D3</i>
<i>S1</i>	3	12	10
<i>S2</i>	17	18	35
<i>S3</i>	7	10	24

The factories can supply 4, 12 and 8 loads per day respectively, and the sites require 10, 9 and 5 loads per day respectively. The real problem is to find the cheapest way to satisfy the demands at the sites, but we are not considering that here.

Suppose the factory manager proposes the following transportation scheme (each entry represents the number of loads of concrete to be transported along that particular route):

	<i>D1</i>	<i>D2</i>	<i>D3</i>
<i>S1</i>	4	0	0
<i>S2</i>	6	6	0
<i>S3</i>	0	3	5

This sort of scheme is called a *solution* to the transportation problem. The cost table (and the solution) can then be represented by tables **C** and **X**, say, where c_{ij} is the entry in row i and column j of the cost table, with a similar convention for **X**.

To compute the cost of the above solution, each entry in the solution table must be multiplied by the corresponding entry in the cost table. (This operation is not to be confused with the mathematical operation of matrix multiplication, which is discussed later.) We therefore want to calculate

$$3 \times 4 + 12 \times 0 + \dots + 24 \times 5.$$

To do this calculation in MATLAB, enter **C** and **X** as matrices from the command line, with a semi-colon at the end of each row:

```
c = [3 12 10; 17 18 35; 7 10 24];
x = [4 0 0; 6 6 0; 0 3 5];
```

and then find the *array* product of **c** and **x**:

```
total = c .* x
```

which gives

```
    12     0     0
   102    108     0
     0     30    120
```

The command

```
sum(total)
```

then returns a vector where each element is the sum of each column of **total**:

```
    114    138    120
```

Summing this in turn, i.e. `sum(sum(total))`, gives the final answer of 372.

Creating matrices

As we saw above, use a semi-colon to indicate the end of a row when entering a matrix. Bigger matrices can be constructed from smaller ones, e.g. the statements

```
a = [1 2; 3 4];
x = [5 6];
a = [a; x]
```

result in

```
a =  
    1    2  
    3    4  
    5    6
```

Instead of a semi-colon, you can use a line-feed (**Enter**) to indicate the end of a row.

Subscripts

Individual elements of a matrix are referenced with two subscripts, the first for the row, and the second for the column, e.g. $a(3, 2)$ for a above returns 6.

Alternatively, and less commonly, a single subscript may be used. In this case you can think of the matrix as being 'unwound' column by column. So $a(5)$ for the above example returns 4.

If you refer to a subscript which is out of range, e.g. $a(3, 3)$ for a above, you will get an error message. However, if you assign a value to an element with a subscript which is out of range the matrix is enlarged to accommodate the new element. For example, the assignment

```
a(3,3) = 7
```

will add a third column to a with 0's everywhere except at $a(3, 3)$.

Transpose

The statements

```
a = [1:3; 4:6]  
b = a'
```

result in

```
a =  
    1    2    3  
    4    5    6  
  
b =  
    1    4  
    2    5  
    3    6
```

The transpose operator $'$ (apostrophe) turns rows into columns and vice versa.

The colon operator

- The colon operator is extremely powerful, and provides for very efficient ways of handling matrices, e.g. if a is the matrix

```
a =  
    1    2    3  
    4    5    6  
    7    8    9
```

the statement

```
a(2:3,1:2)
```

results in

```
4    5
7    8
```

(returns second and third rows, first and second columns), the statement

```
a(3,:)
```

results in

```
7    8    9
```

(returns third row), and the statement

```
a(1:2,2:3) = ones(2)
```

results in

```
a =
1    1    1
4    1    1
7    8    9
```

(first and second rows and columns replaced by a square matrix of 1's).

Essentially, what is happening in the above examples is that the colon operator is being used to create vector subscripts. However, a colon by itself in place of a subscript denotes *all* the elements of the corresponding row or column. So `a(3, :)` means all elements in the third row.

This feature may be used, for example, to construct tables. Suppose we want a table `trig` of the sines and cosines of the angles 0° to 180° in steps of 30° . The following statements achieve this:

```
x = [0:30:180]';
trig(:,1) = x;
trig(:,2) = sin(pi/180*x);
trig(:,3) = cos(pi/180*x);
```

- You can use vector subscripts to get more complicated effects, e.g.

```
a(:, [1 3]) = b(:, [4 2])
```

replaces the first and third columns of `a` by the fourth and second columns of `b` (`a` and `b` must have the same number of rows).

- The colon operator is ideal for the sort of row operations performed in Gauss reduction, for example. If `a` is the matrix

```
a =
1    -1    2
2     1   -1
3     0     1
```

the statement

```
a(2,:) = a(2,:) - a(2,1)*a(1,:)
```

subtracts the first row multiplied by the first element in the second row from the second row, resulting in

```
a =
     1     -1     2
     0     3    -5
     3     0     1
```

(the idea being to get a zero immediately underneath a(1,1)).

- The keyword `end` refers to the *last* row or column of an array. For example, if `r` is a row vector, the statement

```
sum(r(3:end))
```

returns the sum of all the elements of `r` from the third one to the last one.

- The colon operator may also be used as a single subscript, in which case it behaves differently if it is on the right-hand or left-hand side of an assignment. On the right-hand side of an assignment, `a(:)` gives all the elements of `a` strung out *by columns* in one long column vector, e.g. if

```
a =
     1     2
     3     4
```

the statement

```
b = a(:)
```

results in

```
b =
     1
     3
     2
     4
```

However, on the left-hand side of an assignment, `a(:)` *reshapes* a matrix. `a` must already exist. Then `a(:)` denotes a matrix with the same dimensions (shape) as `a`, but with new contents taken from the right-hand side. In other words, the matrix on the right-hand side is reshaped into the shape of `a` on the left-hand side. Some examples may help. If

```
b =
     1     2     3
     4     5     6
```

and

```
a =
     0     0
     0     0
     0     0
```


the statement

```
a(:) = b
```

results in

```
a =
     1     5
     4     3
     2     6
```

(the contents of `b` are strung out into one long column and then fed into `a` by columns). As another example, the statement

```
a(:) = 1:6
```

(with `a` as above) results in

```
a =
     1     4
     2     5
     3     6
```

Reshaping can also be done with the `reshape` function. See `help`.

Whether the colon operator appears on the right- or left-hand side of an assignment, the matrices or submatrices on each side of the assignment have the same shape (except in the special case below).

- As a special case, a single colon subscript may be used to replace *all* the elements of a matrix with a scalar, e.g.

```
a(:) = -1
```

Duplicating rows and columns: tiling

Sometimes it is useful to generate a matrix where all the rows or columns are the same. This can be done with the `repmat` function as follows. If `a` is the row vector

```
a =
     1     2     3
```

the statement

```
repmat(a, [3 1])
```

results in

```
ans =
     1     2     3
     1     2     3
     1     2     3
```

In `help`'s inimitable phraseology, this statement produces a 3-by-1 'tiling' of copies of `a`. You can think of `a` as a 'strip' of three tiles stuck to self-adhesive backing. The above statement tiles a floor with three rows and one column of such a strip of tiles.

There is an alternative syntax for `repmat`:

```
repmat(a, 3, 1)
```

An interesting example of this process appears at the end of this section in the loan repayment problem.

Deleting rows and columns

Use the colon operator and the empty array to delete entire rows or columns. For example,

```
a(:,2) = []
```

deletes the second column of a.

You can't delete a single element from a matrix while keeping it a matrix, so a statement like

```
a(1,2) = []
```

results in an error. However, using the single subscript notation you can delete a sequence of elements from a matrix and reshape the remaining elements into a row vector. For example, if

```
a =  
    1     2     3  
    4     5     6  
    7     8     9
```

the statement

```
a(2:2:6) = []
```

results in

```
a =  
    1     7     5     3     6     9
```

Get it? (First unwind a by columns, then remove elements 2, 4 and 6.)

You can use logical vectors to extract a selection of rows or columns from a matrix. For example, if a is the original 3-by-3 matrix defined above, the statement

```
a(:, logical([1 0 1]))
```

results in

```
ans =  
    1     3  
    4     6  
    7     9
```

(first and third columns extracted). The same effect is achieved with

```
a(:, [1 3])
```

Elementary matrices

There is a group of functions to generate 'elementary' matrices which are used in a number of applications. See `help elmat`.

For example, the functions `zeros`, `ones` and `rand` generate matrices of 1's, 0's and random numbers respectively. With a single argument n , they generate $n \times n$ (square) matrices. With two arguments n and m they generate $n \times m$ matrices. (For very large matrices `repmat` is usually faster than `ones` and `zeros`.)

The function `eye(n)` generates an $n \times n$ *identity* matrix, i.e. a matrix with 1's on the main 'diagonal', and 0's everywhere else, e.g. the statement

```
eye(3)
```

results in

```
ans =
     1     0     0
     0     1     0
     0     0     1
```

(The original version of MATLAB could not use the more obvious name `I` for the identity since it did not distinguish between upper- and lowercase letters and `i` was the natural choice for the imaginary unit number.)

As an example, `eye` may be used to construct a *tridiagonal* matrix as follows. The statements

```
a = 2 * eye(5);
a(1:4, 2:5) = a(1:4, 2:5) - eye(4);
a(2:5, 1:4) = a(2:5, 1:4) - eye(4)
```

result in

```
a =
     2    -1     0     0     0
    -1     2    -1     0     0
     0    -1     2    -1     0
     0     0    -1     2    -1
     0     0     0    -1     2
```

Incidentally, if you work with large tridiagonal matrices, you should have a look at the sparse matrix facilities available in MATLAB (see Chapter 18).

Specialized matrices

`pascal(n)` generates a Pascal matrix of order n . Technically, this is a symmetric positive definite matrix with entries made up from *Pascal's triangle*, e.g.

```
pascal(4)
```

results in

```
ans =
     1     1     1     1
     1     2     3     4
     1     3     6    10
     1     4    10    20
```

`magic(n)` generates an $n \times n$ *magic square*.

MATLAB has a number of other functions which generate special matrices, such as `gallery`, `hadamard`, `hankel`, `hilb`, `toeplitz`, `vander`, etc. See `help elmat`.

Using MATLAB functions with matrices

When a MATLAB mathematical or trigonometric function has a matrix argument, the function operates on every element of the matrix, as you would expect.

However, many of the other MATLAB functions operate on matrices *column by column*, e.g. if

```
a =  
    1     0     1  
    1     1     1  
    0     0     1
```

the statement

```
all(a)
```

results in

```
ans =  
     0     0     1
```

For each *column* of *a* where all the elements are true (non-zero) `all` returns 1, otherwise it returns 0. `all` therefore returns a logical vector when it takes a matrix argument. To test if all the elements of *a* are true, use `all` twice. In this example, the statement

```
all(all(a))
```

returns 0 because some of the elements of *a* are 0. On the other hand the statement

```
any(a)
```

returns

```
ans =  
     1     1     1
```

because each column of *a* has at least one non-zero element, and `any(any(a))` returns 1, since *a* itself has at least one non-zero element.

If you are not sure whether a particular function operates columnwise or element by element on matrices, you can always request `help`.

Manipulating matrices

Here are some functions for manipulating matrices. See `help` for details.

`diag` extracts or creates a diagonal.

`fliplr` flips from left to right.

`flipud` flips from top to bottom.

`rot90` rotates.

`tril` extracts the lower triangular part, e.g. the statement

```
tril(pascal(4))
```

results in

```
ans =
     1     0     0     0
     1     2     0     0
     1     3     6     0
     1     4    10    20
```

`triu` extracts the upper triangular part.

Array (element-by-element) operations on matrices

The array operations discussed in Chapter 2 all apply to matrices as well as vectors. For example, if `a` is a matrix, `a * 2` multiplies each element of `a` by 2, and if

```
a =
     1     2     3
     4     5     6
```

the statement

```
a .* 2
```

results in

```
ans =
     2     4     6
    16    25    36
```

Matrices and for

If

```
a =
     1     2     3
     4     5     6
     7     8     9
```

the statements

```
for v = a
    disp(v')
end
```

result in

```
1     4     7
2     5     8
3     6     9
```

What happens in this most general form of the `for` statement is that the index `v` takes on the value of each *column* of the matrix expression `a` in turn. This provides a neat way of processing all the columns of a matrix. You can do the same with the rows if you transpose `a`, e.g. the statements

```
for v = a'
    disp(v')
end
```

display the rows of `a` one at a time. Get it?

Visualization of matrices

Matrices can be visualized graphically in MATLAB. This subject is discussed briefly in Chapter 7, with illustrations.

Vectorizing nested fors: loan repayment tables

If a regular fixed payment P is made n times a year to repay a loan of amount A over a period of k years, where the nominal annual interest rate is r , P is given by

$$P = \frac{rA(1+r/n)^{nk}}{n[(1+r/n)^{nk} - 1]}.$$

We would like to generate a table of repayments for a loan of \$1 000 over 15, 20 or 25 years, at interest rates that vary from 10% to 20% per annum, in steps of 1%. Since P is directly proportional to A in the above formula, the repayments of a loan of any amount can be found by simple proportion from such a table.

The conventional way of handling this is with ‘nested’ fors. The `fprintf` statements are necessary in order to get the output for each interest rate on the same line (see Section 2.11):

```
A = 1000;           % amount borrowed
n = 12;            % number of payments per year

for r = 0.1 : 0.01 : 0.2
    fprintf( '%4.0f%', 100 * r );
    for k = 15 : 5 : 25
        temp = (1 + r/n) ^ (n*k);
        P = r * A * temp / n / (temp - 1);
        fprintf( '%10.2f', P );
    end;
    fprintf( '\n' );      % new line
end;
```

Some sample output (with headings edited in):

rate %	15 yrs	20 yrs	25 yrs
10	10.75	9.65	9.09
11	11.37	10.32	9.80
...			
19	16.83	16.21	15.98
20	17.56	16.99	16.78

However, we saw in Chapter 2 that `for` loops can often be vectorized, saving a lot of computing time (and also providing an interesting intellectual challenge!). The inner loop can easily be vectorized; the following code uses only one `for`:

```
...
for r = 0.1 : 0.01 : 0.2
    k = 15 : 5 : 25;
    temp = (1 + r/n) .^ (n*k);
    P = r * A * temp / n ./ (temp - 1);
    disp( [100 * r, P] );
end;
```

Note the use of the array operators.

The really tough challenge, however, is to vectorize the outer loop as well. We want a table with 11 rows and 3 columns. Start by assigning values to A and n (from the command line):

```
A = 1000;
n = 12;
```

Then generate a column vector for the interest rates:

```
r = [0.1:0.01:0.2]'
```

Now change this into a table with 3 columns each equal to r :

```
r = repmat(r, [1 3])
```

The matrix r should look like this:

0.10	0.10	0.10
0.11	0.11	0.11
...		
0.19	0.19	0.19
0.20	0.20	0.20

Now do a similar thing for the repayment periods k . Generate the row vector

```
k = 15:5:25
```

and expand it into a table with 11 rows each equal to k :

```
k = repmat(k, [11 1])
```

This should give you

15	20	25
15	20	25
...		
15	20	25
15	20	25

The formula for P is a little complicated, so let's do it in two steps:

```
temp = (1 + r/n) .^ (n * k);
P = r * A .* temp / n ./ (temp - 1)
```

Finally, you should get this for P :

10.75	9.65	9.09
11.37	10.32	9.80
...		
16.83	16.21	15.98
17.56	16.99	16.78

This works, because of the way the tables r and k have been constructed, and because the MATLAB array operations are performed element by element. For example, when the calculation is made for P in row 2 and column 1, the array operations pick out row 2 of r (all 0.11) and column 1 of k (all 15), giving the correct value for P (11.37).

The nested `for` way might be easier to program, but this way is certainly more interesting (and quicker to execute).

Multi-dimensional arrays

MATLAB arrays can have more than two dimensions. For example, suppose you create the matrix

```
a = [1:2; 3:4]
```

You can add a third dimension to `a` with

```
a(:, :, 2) = [5:6; 7:8]
```

MATLAB responds with

```
a(:, :, 1) =  
    1     2  
    3     4  
a(:, :, 2) =  
    5     6  
    7     8
```

It helps to think of the 3-D array `a` as a series of ‘pages’, with a matrix on each page. The third dimension of `a` numbers the pages. This is analogous to a spreadsheet with multiple sheets: each sheet contains a table (matrix).

You can get into hyperpages with higher dimensions if you like!

See `help datatypes` for a list of special multi-dimensional array functions.

6.2 Matrix operations

We have seen that *array* operations are performed element by element on matrices. However, *matrix* operations, which are fundamental to MATLAB, are defined differently in certain cases, in the mathematical sense.

Matrix addition and subtraction are defined in the same way as the equivalent array operations, i.e. element by element. Matrix multiplication, however, is quite different.

Matrix multiplication

Matrix *multiplication* is probably the most important matrix operation. It is used widely in such areas as network theory, solution of linear systems of equations, transformation of co-ordinate systems, and population modelling, to name but a very few. The rules for multiplying matrices look a little weird if you’ve never seen them before, but will be justified by the applications that follow.

When two matrices **A** and **B** are multiplied together in this sense, their product is a third matrix **C**. The operation is written as

$$\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{AB},$$

and the general element c_{ij} of **C** is formed by taking the *scalar product* of the i th row of **A** with the j th column of **B**. (The scalar product of two *vectors* **x** and **y** is $x_1y_1 + x_2y_2 + \dots$, where x_i and y_i are the components of the vectors.)

It follows that **A** and **B** can only be successfully multiplied (in that order) if the number of columns in **A** is the same as the number of rows in **B**.

The general definition of matrix multiplication is as follows: If **A** is a $n \times m$ matrix and **B** is a $m \times p$ matrix, their product **C** will be a $n \times p$ matrix such that the general element c_{ij} of **C** is given by

$$c_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^m a_{ik} b_{kj}.$$

Note that in general \mathbf{AB} is not equal to \mathbf{BA} (matrix multiplication is not *commutative*).

Example:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \times \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 6 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 4 \\ 15 & 14 \end{bmatrix}$$

Since a vector is simply a one-dimensional matrix, the definition of matrix multiplication given above also applies when a vector is multiplied by an appropriate matrix, e.g.

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \times \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ 18 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The operator `*` is used for matrix multiplication, as you may have guessed. For example, if

$$\mathbf{a} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$\mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 6 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

the statement

$$\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a} * \mathbf{b}$$

results in

$$\mathbf{c} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 4 \\ 15 & 14 \end{bmatrix}$$

Note the important difference between the *array* operation `a .* b` (evaluate by hand and check with MATLAB) and the *matrix* operation `a * b`.

To multiply a matrix by a vector in that order, the vector must be a column vector. So if

$$\mathbf{b} = [2 \ 3]'$$

the statement

$$\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a} * \mathbf{b}$$

results in

$$\mathbf{c} = \begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ 18 \end{bmatrix}$$

Matrix exponentiation

The matrix operation \mathbf{A}^2 means $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{A}$, where \mathbf{A} must be a square matrix. The operator `^` is used for matrix exponentiation, e.g. if

$$\mathbf{a} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

the statement

```
a ^ 2
```

results in

```
ans =  
    7    10  
   15    22
```

which is the same as `a * a` (try it).

Again, note the difference between the array operation `a .^ 2` (evaluate by hand and check with MATLAB) and the matrix operation `a ^ 2`.

6.3 Other matrix functions

Here are some of MATLAB's more advanced matrix functions.

`det` determinant.

`eig` eigenvalue decomposition.

`expm` matrix exponential, i.e. $e^{\mathbf{A}}$, where \mathbf{A} is a matrix. The matrix exponential may be used to evaluate analytical solutions of linear ordinary differential equations with constant coefficients.

`inv` inverse.

`lu` LU factorization (into lower and upper triangular matrices).

`qr` orthogonal factorization.

`svd` singular value decomposition.

Summary

- A matrix is a 2-D array. Elements may be referenced in the conventional way with two subscripts. Alternatively, one subscript may be used, in which case the matrix is 'unwound' by columns.
- The colon operator may be used to represent all the rows or columns of a matrix, and also as a single subscript.
- The keyword `end` refers to the last row or column of a matrix.
- Use `repmat` to duplicate rows or columns of a matrix.
- Use the empty array `[]` to delete rows or columns of a matrix.
- Arrays may have more than two dimensions. In the case of a 3-D array the third subscript may be thought of as numbering pages, where each page contains a matrix defined by the first two subscripts.
- The matrix operations of multiplication and exponentiation are implemented with the matrix operators `*` and `^`.

Exercise

- 6.1 Set up any 3×3 matrix a . Write some command-line statements to perform the following operations on a :
- (a) interchange columns 2 and 3;
 - (b) add a fourth column (of 0's);
 - (c) insert a row of 1's as the new second row of a (i.e. move the current second and third rows down);
 - (d) remove the second column.

7

Introduction to graphics

Objective

The objective of this chapter is to introduce you to

- MATLAB's high-level 2-D and 3-D plotting facilities.

A picture, it is said, is worth a thousand words. MATLAB has a powerful graphics system for presenting and visualizing data, which is reasonably easy to use. (Most of the figures in this book have been generated by MATLAB.)

This chapter introduces MATLAB's high-level 2-D and 3-D plotting facilities. Low-level features, such as handle graphics, are discussed later in Chapter 14.

It should be stressed that the treatment of graphics in this chapter is of necessity brief, and intended to give you a glimpse of the richness and power of MATLAB graphics. For the full treatment, you should consult `help` on the functions mentioned in this chapter, as well as the comprehensive list of graphics functions in the online Help, under **MATLAB: Reference: MATLAB Function Reference: Functions by Category: Graphics**.

7.1 Basic 2-D graphs

Graphs (in 2-D) are drawn with the `plot` statement. In its simplest form, it takes a single vector argument as in `plot(y)`. In this case the elements of `y` are plotted against their indexes, e.g. `plot(rand(1, 20))` plots 20 random numbers against the integers 1–20, joining successive points with straight lines, as in Figure 7.1(a). If `y` is a matrix, its columns are plotted against element indexes.

Axes are automatically scaled and drawn to include the minimum and maximum data points.

Probably the most common form of `plot` is `plot(x, y)` where `x` and `y` are vectors of the same length, e.g.

```
x = 0:pi/40:4*pi;  
plot(x, sin(x))
```

In this case, the co-ordinates of the i th point are x_i, y_i . This form of `plot` has been used widely in earlier chapters.

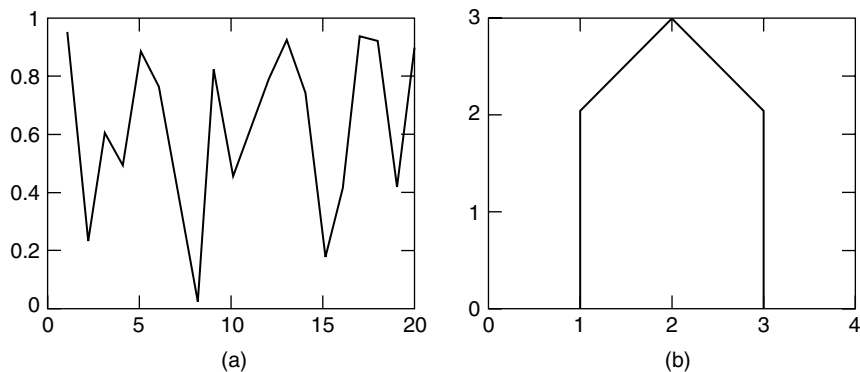


Figure 7.1 Examples of `plot`

Straight-line graphs are drawn by giving the x and y co-ordinates of the end-points in two vectors. For example, to draw a line between the point with cartesian co-ordinates $(0, 1)$ and $(4, 3)$ use the statement

```
plot([0 4], [1 3])
```

i.e. `[0 4]` contains the x co-ordinates of the two points, and `[1 3]` contains their y co-ordinates.

MATLAB has a set of ‘easy-to-use’ plotting commands, all starting with the string ‘ez’. The easy-to-use form of `plot` is `ezplot`, e.g.

```
ezplot('tan(x)')
```

Exercises

1. Draw lines joining the following points: $(0, 1)$, $(4, 3)$, $(2, 0)$ and $(5, -2)$.
2. See if you can draw a ‘house’ similar to the one depicted in Figure 7.1(b).

Labels

Graphs may be labelled with the following statements:

`gtext('text')`

writes a string (`'text'`) in the graph window. `gtext` puts a cross-hair in the graph window and waits for a mouse button or keyboard key to be pressed. The cross-hair can be positioned with the mouse or the arrow keys. For example,

```
gtext('X marks the spot')
```

Go on—try it!

Text may also be placed on a graph interactively with **Tools** -> **Edit Plot** from the figure window. See Chapter 14.

`grid`

adds/removes grid lines to/from the current graph. The grid state may be toggled.

text(x, y, 'text')

writes text in the graphics window at the point specified by *x* and *y*.

If *x* and *y* are vectors, the text is written at each point. If the text is an indexed list, successive points are labelled with corresponding rows of the text.

title('text')

writes the text as a title on top of the graph.

xlabel('horizontal')

labels the *x*-axis.

ylabel('vertical')

labels the *y*-axis.

Multiple plots on the same axes

There are at least three ways of drawing multiple plots on the same set of axes (which may however be rescaled if the new data falls outside the range of the previous data).

1. The easiest way is simply to use `hold` to keep the current plot on the axes. All subsequent plots are added to the axes until `hold` is released, either with `hold off`, or just `hold`, which toggles the hold state.
2. The second way is to use `plot` with multiple arguments, e.g.

```
plot(x1, y1, x2, y2, x3, y3, ...)
```

plots the (vector) pairs (*x*₁, *y*₁), (*x*₂, *y*₂), etc. The advantage of this method is that the vector pairs may have different lengths. MATLAB automatically selects a different colour for each pair.

If you are plotting two graphs on the same axes you may find `plotyy` useful—it allows you to have independent *y*-axis labels on the left and the right, e.g.

```
plotyy(x, sin(x), x, 10*cos(x))
```

(for *x* suitably defined).

3. The third way is to use the form

```
plot(x, y)
```

where *x* and *y* may both be matrices, or where one may be a vector and one a matrix.

If one of *x* or *y* is a matrix and the other is a vector, the rows or columns of the matrix are plotted against the vector, using a different colour for each. Rows or columns of the matrix are selected depending on which have the same number of elements as the vector. If the matrix is square, columns are used.

If *x* and *y* are both matrices of the same size, the columns of *x* are plotted against the columns of *y*. If *x* is not specified, as in `plot(y)`, where *y* is a matrix, the columns of *y* are plotted against the row index.

Line styles, markers and colour

Line styles, markers and colours may be selected for a graph with a string argument to `plot`, e.g.

```
plot(x, y, '--')
```

joins the plotted points with dashed lines, whereas

```
plot(x, y, 'o')
```

draws circles at the data points with no lines joining them. You can specify all three properties, e.g.

```
plot(x, sin(x), x, cos(x), 'om--')
```

plots $\sin(x)$ in the default style and colour and $\cos(x)$ with circles joined with dashes in magenta. The available colours are denoted by the symbols `c`, `m`, `y`, `k`, `r`, `g`, `b`, `w`. You can have fun trying to figure out what they mean, or you can use `help plot` to see the full range of possible symbols.

Axis limits

Whenever you draw a graph with MATLAB it automatically scales the axis limits to fit the data. You can override this with

```
axis( [xmin, xmax, ymin, ymax] )
```

which sets the scaling on the *current* plot, i.e. draw the graph first, then reset the axis limits.

If you want to specify one of the minimum or maximum of a set of axis limits, but want MATLAB to autoscale the other, use `Inf` or `-Inf` for the autoscaled limit.

You can return to the default of automatic axis scaling with

```
axis auto
```

The statement

```
v = axis
```

returns the current axis scaling in the vector `v`.

Scaling is frozen at the current limits with

```
axis manual
```

so that if `hold` is turned on, subsequent plots will use the same limits.

If you draw a circle, e.g. with the statements

```
x = 0:pi/40:2*pi;
plot(sin(x), cos(x))
```

the circle probably won't appear round, especially if you resize the figure window. The command

```
axis equal
```

makes unit increments along the x - and y -axis the same physical length on the monitor, so that circles always appear round. The effect is undone with `axis normal`.

You can turn axis labelling and tick marks off with `axis off`, and back on again with `axis on`.

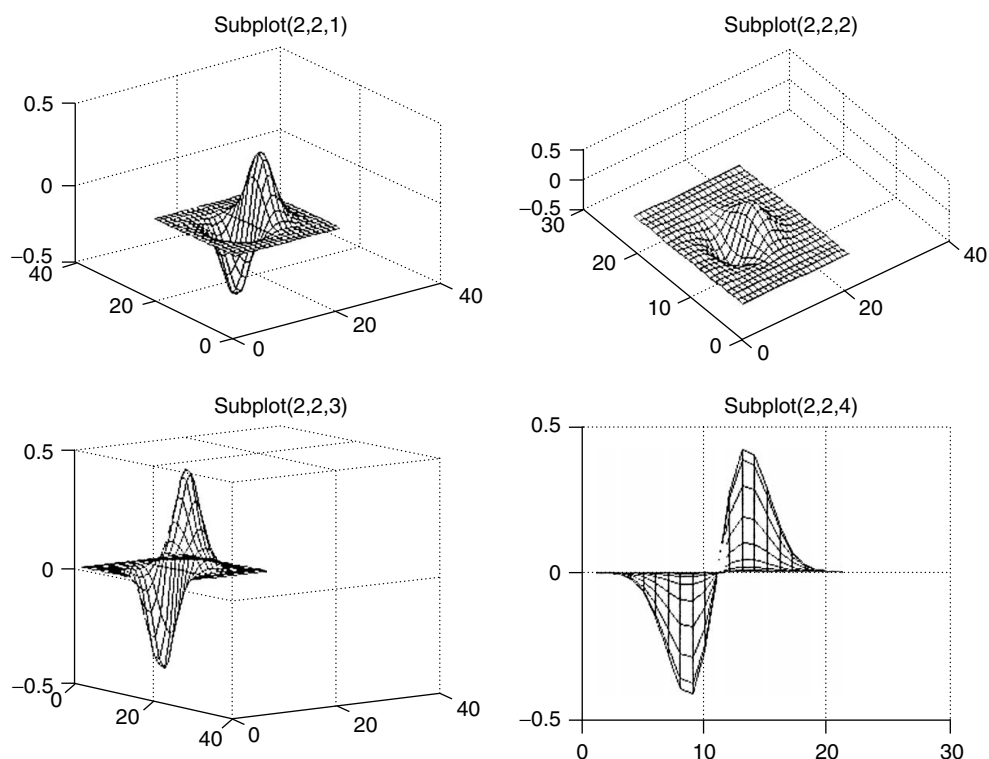


Figure 7.2 Four subplots: rotations of a 3-D surface

axes and axis?

You and I might be forgiven for thinking that the word ‘axes’ denotes the plural of ‘axis’, which it does indeed in common English usage. However, in MATLAB the word ‘axes’ refers to a particular graphics *object*, which includes not only the x -axis and y -axis and their tick marks and labels, but also everything drawn on those particular axes: the actual graphs and any text included in the figure. Axes objects are discussed in more detail in Chapter 14.

Multiple plots in a figure: subplot

You can show a number of plots in the same figure window with the `subplot` function. It looks a little curious at first, but it’s quite easy to get the hang of it. The statement

```
subplot(m, n, p)
```

divides the figure window into $m \times n$ small sets of axes, and selects the p th set for the current plot (numbered by row from the left of the top row). For example, the following statements produce the four plots shown in Figure 7.2 (details of 3-D plotting are discussed in Section 7.2).

```
[x, y] = meshgrid(-3:0.3:3);
z = x .* exp(-x.^2 - y.^2);
subplot(2,2,1)
mesh(z), title('subplot(2,2,1)')
subplot(2,2,2)
mesh(z)
view(-37.5,70), title('subplot(2,2,2)')
```



```

subplot(2,2,3)
mesh(z)
view(37.5,-10),title('subplot(2,2,3)')
subplot(2,2,4)
mesh(z)
view(0,0),title('subplot(2,2,4)')

```

The command `subplot(1,1,1)` goes back to a single set of axes in the figure.

`figure`, `clf` *and* `cla`

`figure(h)`, where `h` is an integer, creates a new figure window, or makes figure `h` the current figure. Subsequent plots are drawn in the current figure. `h` is called the *handle* of the figure. Handle graphics is discussed further in Chapter 14.

`clf` clears the current figure window. It also resets all properties associated with the axes, such as the hold state and the axis state.

`cla` deletes all plots and text from the current axes, i.e. leaves only the x - and y -axes and their associated information.

Graphical input

The command

```
[x, y] = ginput
```

allows you to select an unlimited number of points from the current graph using a mouse or arrow keys. A movable cross-hair appears on the graph. Clicking saves its co-ordinates in `x(i)` and `y(i)`. Pressing **Enter** terminates the input. See Chapter 19 for an example which involves selecting points in a figure and fitting a curve to them.

The command

```
[x, y] = ginput(n)
```

works like `ginput` except that you must select exactly `n` points.

See `help` for further information.

Logarithmic plots

The command

```
semilogy(x, y)
```

plots y with a \log_{10} scale and x with a linear scale. For example, the statements

```

x = 0:0.01:4;
semilogy(x, exp(x)), grid

```

produce the graph in Figure 7.3. Equal increments along the y -axis represent multiples of powers of 10. So, starting from the bottom, the grid lines are drawn at 1, 2, 3, ..., 10, 20, 30 ..., 100, Incidentally, the graph of e^x on these axes is a straight line, because the equation $y = e^x$ transforms into a linear equation when you take logs of both sides.

See also `semilogx` and `loglog`.

x and y may be vectors and/or matrices, just as in `plot`.

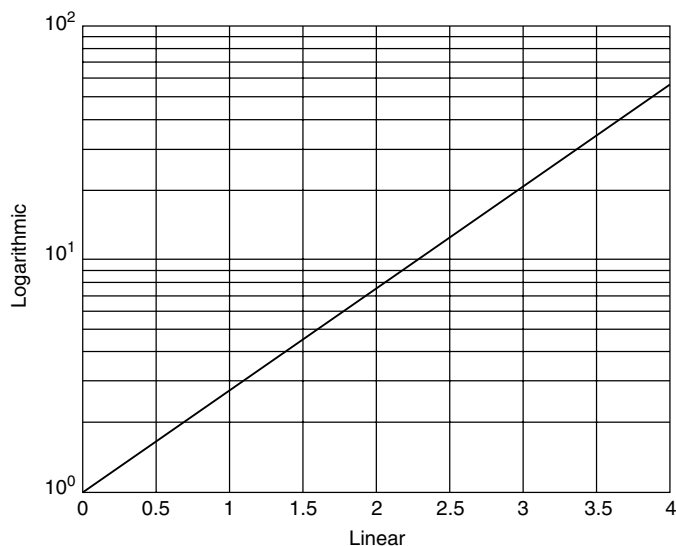


Figure 7.3 A logarithmic plot

Exercise

Draw graphs of x^2 , x^3 , x^4 and e^{x^2} over the interval $0 \leq x \leq 4$, using semilogy.

Polar plots

The point (x, y) in cartesian co-ordinates is represented by the point (θ, r) in *polar* co-ordinates, where

$$x = r \cos(\theta),$$

$$y = r \sin(\theta),$$

and θ varies between 0 and 2π radians (360°).

The command

```
polar(theta, r)
```

generates a polar plot of the points with angles in `theta` and magnitudes in `r`.

As an example, the statements

```
x = 0:pi/40:2*pi;
polar(x, sin(2*x)), grid
```

produce the plot shown in Figure 7.4.

Plotting rapidly changing mathematical functions: `fplot`

In all the graphing examples so far, the x co-ordinates of the points plotted have been incremented uniformly, e.g. `x = 0:0.01:4`. If the function being plotted changes very rapidly in some places, this can be inefficient, and can even give a misleading graph.

For example, the statements

```
x = 0.01:0.001:0.1;
plot(x, sin(1./x))
```

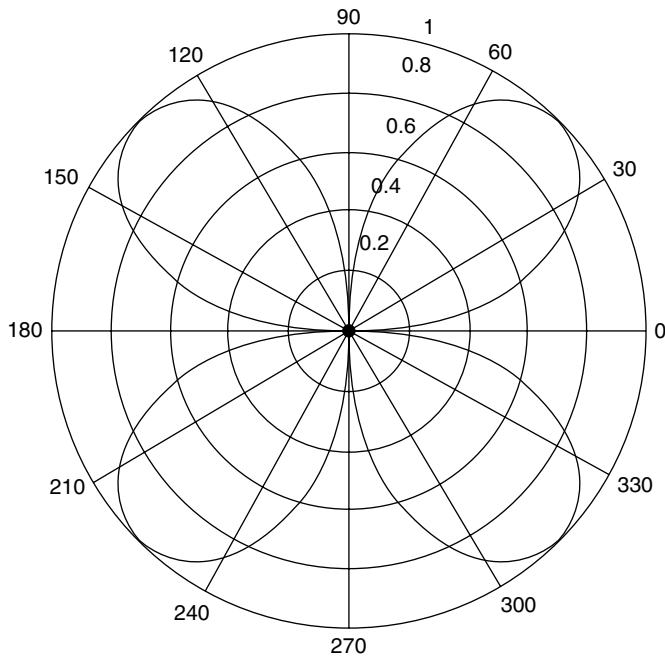


Figure 7.4 Polar plot of θ against $\sin(2\theta)$

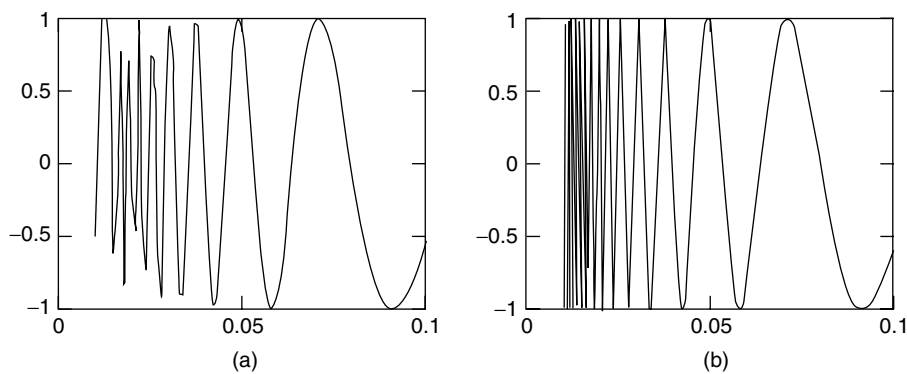


Figure 7.5 $y = \sin(1/x)$

produce the graph shown in Figure 7.5(a). But if the x increments are reduced to 0.0001, we get the graph in Figure 7.5(b) instead. For $x < 0.04$, the two graphs look quite different.

MATLAB has a function called `fplot` which uses a more elegant approach. Whereas the above method evaluates $\sin(1/x)$ at equally spaced intervals, `fplot` evaluates it more frequently over regions where it changes more rapidly. Here's how to use it:

```
fplot('sin(1/x)', [0.01 0.1]) % no, 1./x not needed!
```

The property editor

The most general way of editing a graph is by using the Property Editor, e.g. **Edit** -> **Figure Properties** from the figure window. This topic is discussed briefly in Chapter 14.

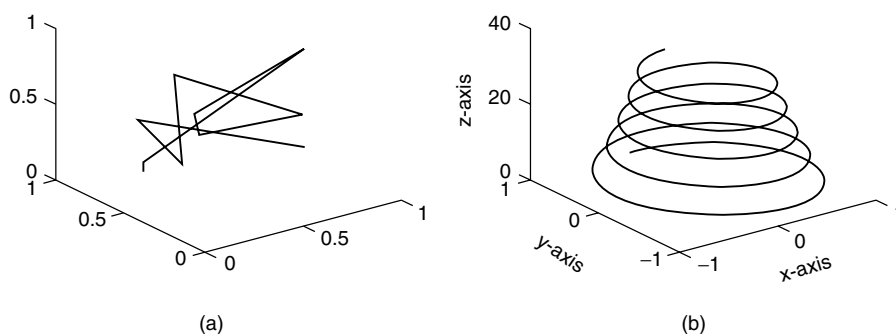


Figure 7.6 Examples of `plot3`

7.2 3-D plots

MATLAB has a variety of functions for displaying and visualizing data in 3-D, either as lines in 3-D, or as various types of surfaces. This section provides a brief overview.

`plot3`

The function `plot3` is the 3-D version of `plot`. The command

```
plot3(x, y, z)
```

draws a 2-D projection of a line in 3-D through the points whose co-ordinates are the elements of the vectors `x`, `y` and `z`. For example, the command

```
plot3(rand(1,10), rand(1,10), rand(1,10))
```

generates 10 random points in 3-D space, and joins them with lines, as shown in Figure 7.6(a).

As another example, the statements

```
t = 0:pi/50:10*pi;
plot3(exp(-0.02*t).*sin(t), exp(-0.02*t).*cos(t), t), ...
xlabel('x-axis'), ylabel('y-axis'), zlabel('z-axis')
```

produce the inwardly spiralling helix shown in Figure 7.6(b). Note the orientation of the `x`-, `y`- and `z`-axes, and in particular that the `z`-axis may be labelled with `zlabel`.

Animated 3-D plots with `comet3`

The function `comet3` is similar to `plot3` except that it draws with a moving ‘comet head’. Use `comet3` to animate the helix in Figure 7.6(b). No prizes for guessing the name of the 2-D version.

Mesh surfaces

In Chapter 1 we saw how to draw the Mexican hat (Figure 1.3):

```
[x y] = meshgrid(-8 : 0.5 : 8);
r = sqrt(x.^2 + y.^2) + eps;
z = sin(r) ./ r;
```

This drawing is an example of a *mesh surface*.

To see how such surface is drawn, let’s take a simpler example, say $z = x^2 - y^2$. The surface we are after is the one generated by the values of z as we move around the x - y plane. Let’s restrict ourselves

to part of the first quadrant of this plane, given by

$$0 \leq x \leq 5, \quad 0 \leq y \leq 5.$$

The first step is to set up the *grid* in the x - y plane over which the surface is to be plotted. You can use the MATLAB function `meshgrid` to do it, as follows:

```
[x y] = meshgrid(0:5);
```

This statement sets up two matrices, x and y . (Functions, such as `meshgrid`, which return more than one ‘output argument’, are discussed in detail in Chapter 10. However, you don’t need to know the details in order to be able to use it here.)

The two matrices in this example are:

```
x =
    0     1     2     3     4     5
    0     1     2     3     4     5
    0     1     2     3     4     5
    0     1     2     3     4     5
    0     1     2     3     4     5
    0     1     2     3     4     5

y =
    0     0     0     0     0     0
    1     1     1     1     1     1
    2     2     2     2     2     2
    3     3     3     3     3     3
    4     4     4     4     4     4
    5     5     5     5     5     5
```

The effect of this is that the *columns* of the matrix x as it is displayed hold the x co-ordinates of the points in the grid, while the *rows* of the display of y hold the y co-ordinates. Recalling the way MATLAB array operations are defined, element by element, this means that the statement

$$z = x.^2 - y.^2$$

will correctly generate the surface points:

```
z =
    0     1     4     9    16    25
   -1     0     3     8    15    24
   -4    -3     0     5    12    21
   -9    -8    -5     0     7    16
  -16   -15   -12    -7     0     9
  -25   -24   -21   -16    -9     0
```

For example, at the grid point $(5, 2)$, z has the value $5^2 - 2^2 = 21$. Incidentally, you don’t need to worry about the exact relationship between grid co-ordinates and matrix subscripts; this is taken care of by `meshgrid`.

The statement `mesh(z)` then plots the surface (Figure 7.7), with mesh lines connecting the points in the surface that lie above grid points.

Note that `mesh(z)` shows the row and column indices (subscripts) of the matrix z on the x and y axes. If you want to see proper values on the x and y axes use `mesh(x, y, z)`. This applies to many of the other 3-D plotting functions.

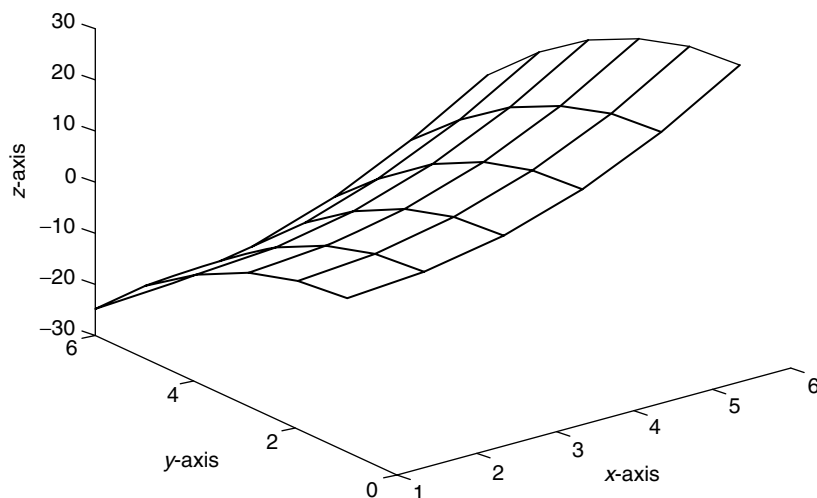


Figure 7.7 The surface $z = x^2 - y^2$

The function `mesh` draws a surface as a ‘wire frame’. An alternative visualization is provided by `surf`, which generates a faceted view of the surface (in colour), i.e. the wire frame is covered with small tiles.

See help for variations on `mesh` and `surf`.

Exercises

1. Draw the surface shown in Figure 7.7 with a finer mesh (of 0.25 units in each direction), using

```
[x y] = meshgrid(0:0.25:5);
```

(the number of mesh points in each direction is 21).

2. The initial heat distribution over a steel plate is given by the function

$$u(x, y) = 80y^2 e^{-x^2 - 0.3y^2}.$$

Plot the surface u over the grid defined by

$$-2.1 \leq x \leq 2.1, \quad -6 \leq y \leq 6,$$

where the grid width is 0.15 in both directions. You should get the plot shown in Figure 7.8.

Contour plots

If you managed to draw the plot in Figure 7.8, try the command

```
contour(u)
```

You should get a *contour plot* of the heat distribution, as shown in Figure 7.9(a), i.e. the *isothermals* (lines of equal temperature). Here’s the code:

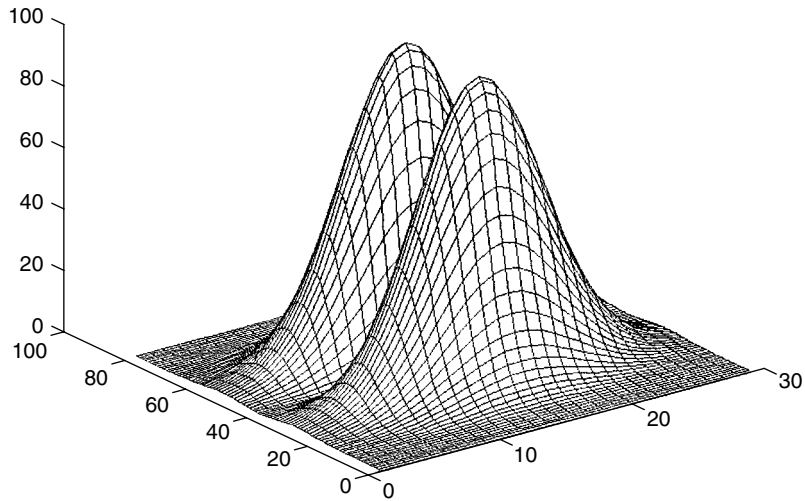


Figure 7.8 Heat distribution over a steel plate

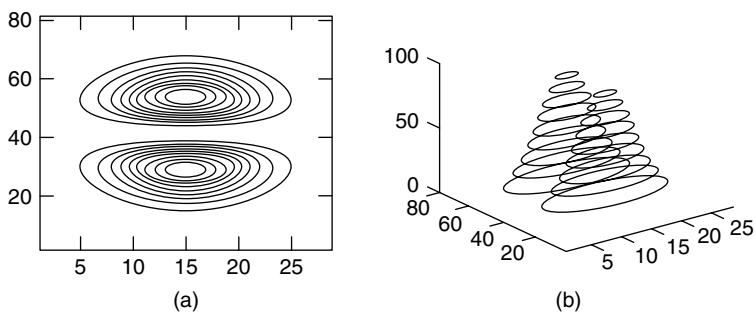


Figure 7.9 Contour plots

```
[x y] = meshgrid(-2.1:0.15:2.1, -6:0.15:6); % x- y-grids different
u = 80 * y.^2 .* exp(-x.^2 - 0.3*y.^2);
contour(u)
```

The function `contour` can take a second input variable. It can be a scalar specifying how many contour levels to plot, or it can be a vector specifying the values at which to plot the contour levels.

You can get a 3-D contour plot with `contour3`, as shown in Figure 7.9(b).

Contour levels may be labelled with `clabel` (see help).

A 3-D contour plot may be drawn under a surface with `meshc` or `surfz`. For example, the statements

```
[x y] = meshgrid(-2:.2:2);
z = x .* exp(-x.^2 - y.^2);
meshc(z)
```

produce the graph in Figure 7.10(a).

Cropping a surface with NaNs

If a matrix for a surface plot contains NaNs, these elements are not plotted. This enables you to cut away (crop) parts of a surface. For example, the statements

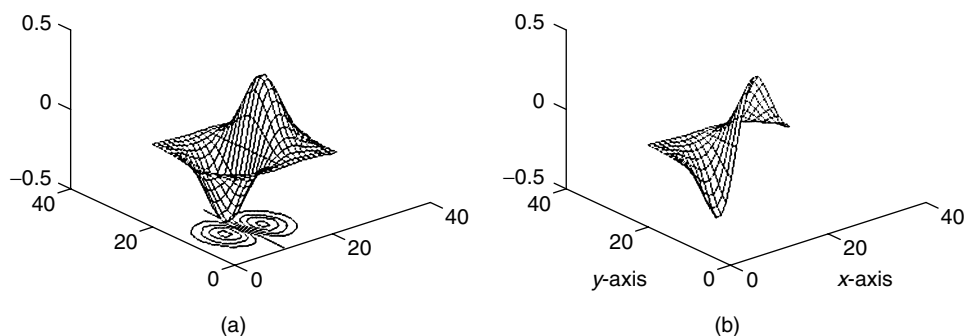


Figure 7.10 (a) meshc; (b) cropping a surface

```
[x y] = meshgrid(-2:.2:2, -2:.2:2);
z = x .* exp(-x.^2 - y.^2);
c = z; % preserve the original surface
c(1:11,1:21) = nan*c(1:11,1:21);
mesh(c), xlabel('x-axis'), ylabel('y-axis')
```

produce the graph in Figure 7.10(b).

Visualizing vector fields

The function `quiver` draws little arrows to indicate a gradient or other vector field. Although it produces a 2-D plot, it's often used in conjunction with `contour`, which is why it's described briefly here.

As an example, consider the scalar function of two variables $V = x^2 + y$. The *gradient* of V is defined as the *vector* field

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla V &= \left(\frac{\partial V}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial V}{\partial y} \right) \\ &= (2x, 1).\end{aligned}$$

The following statements draw arrows indicating the direction of ∇V at points in the x - y plane (see Figure 7.11):

```
[x y] = meshgrid(-2:.2:2, -2:.2:2);
V = x.^2 + y;
dx = 2*x;
dy = dx; % dy same size as dx
dy(:, :) = 1; % now dy is same size as dx but all 1's
contour(x, y, V), hold on
quiver(x, y, dx, dy), hold off
```

The 'contour' lines indicate families of *level surfaces*; the gradient at any point is perpendicular to the level surface which passes through that point. The vectors x and y are needed in the call to `contour` to specify the axes for the contour plot.

An additional optional argument for `quiver` specifies the length of the arrows. See `help`.

If you can't (or don't want to) differentiate V , you can use the `gradient` function to estimate the derivative:

```
[dx dy] = gradient(V, 0.2, 0.2);
```

The values 0.2 are the increments in the x and y directions used in the approximation.

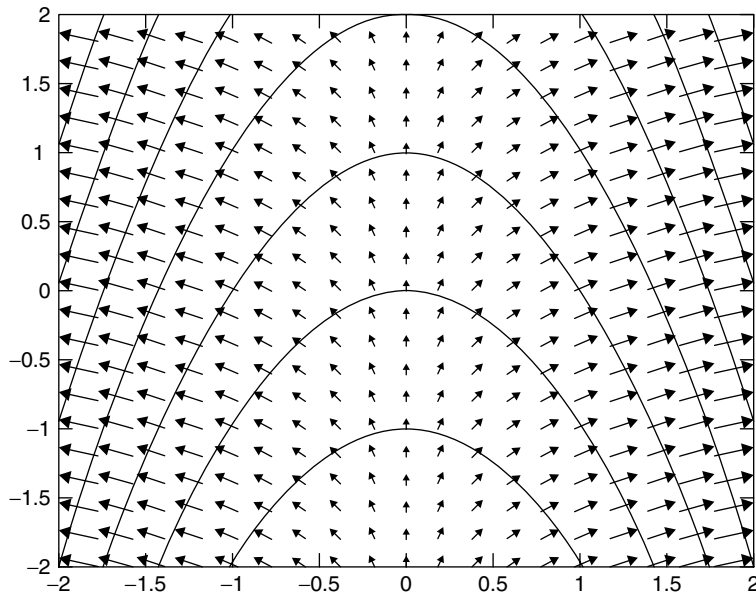


Figure 7.11 Gradients and level surfaces

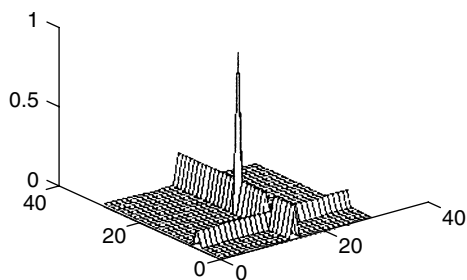


Figure 7.12 Visualization of a matrix

Visualization of matrices

The `mesh` function can also be used to ‘visualize’ a matrix. The following statements generate the plot in Figure 7.12:

```
a = zeros(30,30);
a(:,15) = 0.2*ones(30,1);
a(7,:) = 0.1*ones(1,30);
a(15,15) = 1;
mesh(a)
```

The matrix `a` is 30×30 . The element in the middle—`a(15,15)`—is 1, all the elements in row 7 are 0.1, and all the remaining elements in column 15 are 0.2. `mesh(a)` then interprets the rows and columns of `a` as an x - y co-ordinate grid, with the values `a(i,j)` forming the mesh surface above the points (i,j) .

The function `spy` is useful for visualizing sparse matrices.

Rotation of 3-D graphs

The `view` function enables you to specify the angle from which you view a 3-D graph. To see it in operation, run the following program, which rotates the visualized matrix in Figure 7.12:

```
a = zeros(30,30);
a(:,15) = 0.2*ones(30,1);
a(7,:) = 0.1*ones(1,30);
a(15,15) = 1;
el = 30;
for az = -37.5:15:-37.5+360
    mesh(a), view(az, el)
    pause(0.5)
end
```

The function `view` takes two arguments. The first one, `az` in this example, is called the *azimuth* or polar angle in the x - y plane (in degrees). `az` rotates the *viewpoint* (you) about the z -axis—i.e. about the ‘pinnacle’ at (15,15) in Figure 7.12—in a counter-clockwise direction. The default value of `az` is -37.5° . The program therefore rotates you in a counter-clockwise direction about the z -axis in 15° steps starting at the default position.

The second argument of `view` is the vertical elevation `el` (in degrees). This is the angle a line from the viewpoint makes with the x - y plane. A value of 90° for `el` means you are directly overhead. Positive values of the elevation mean you are above the x - y plane; negative values mean you are below it. The default value of `el` is 30° .

The command `pause(n)` suspends execution for n seconds.

You can rotate a 3-D figure interactively as follows. Click the Rotate 3-D button in the figure toolbar (first button from the right). Click on the axes and an outline of the figure appears to help you visualize the rotation. Drag the mouse in the direction you want to rotate. When you release the mouse button the rotated figure is redrawn.

Exercise

Rewrite the above program to change the elevation gradually, keeping the azimuth fixed at its default.

Other cool graphics functions

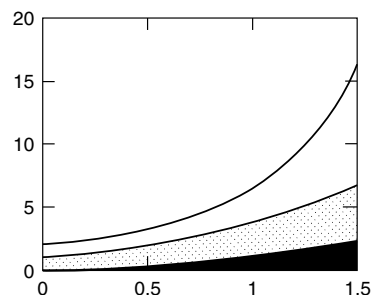
Here are more examples of interesting graphics functions. With each function a sample script and graph is shown. The list is by no means exhaustive and is meant to whet your appetite for more! You are encouraged to consult the list of graphics functions in the online **MATLAB FUNCTION REFERENCE**. Each entry has excellent examples.

Note that the MATLAB function `peaks` generates a sample surface (see under `meshz` below).

For reference purposes the figures below are all considered part of Figure 7.13. Some figures have been edited to render colours in gray-scale.

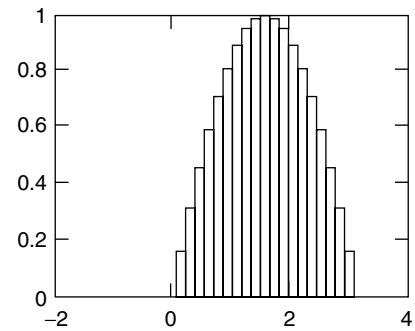
(a) `area`

```
x = 0:0.1:1.5;
area(x', [x.^2' ...
         exp(x)' exp(x.^2)'])
```



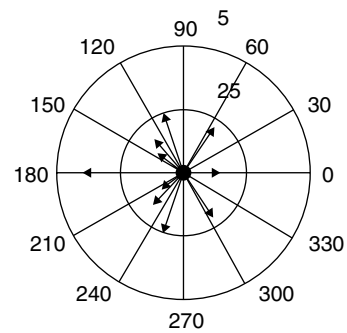
(b) bar

```
x = 0:pi/20:pi;
bar(x, sin(x))
```



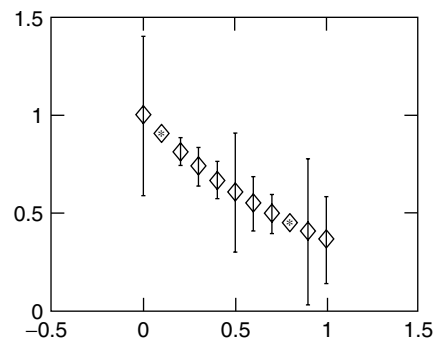
(c) compass

```
z = eig(randn(10));
compass(z)
```



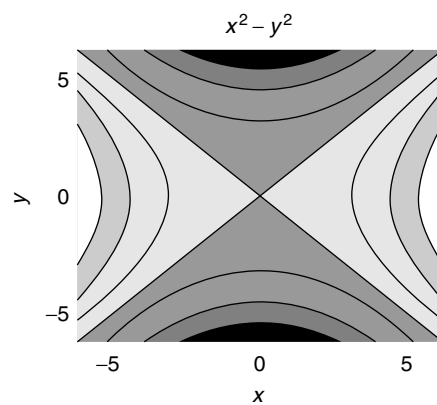
(d) errorbar

```
x = 0:0.1:1;
errorbar(x, exp(-x), ...
         0.5*rand(1, length(x)), 'd')
```



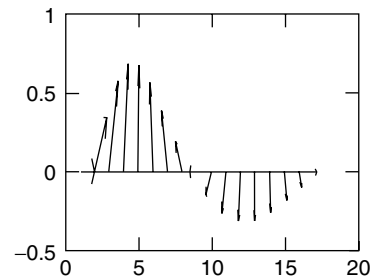
(e) ezcontourf

```
ezcontourf('x^2-y^2')
```



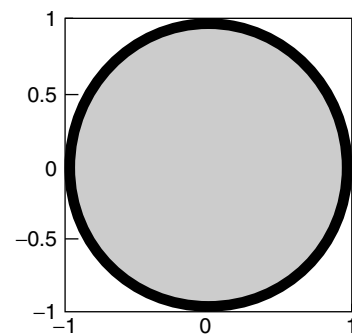
(f) feather

```
th = 0:pi/16:pi;
z = exp((-0.5+2i)*th);
feather(z)
```

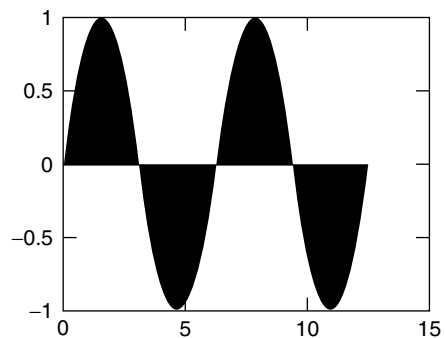


(g) fill

```
t = 0:pi/20:2*pi;
fill(cos(t),sin(t),'k', ...
     0.9*cos(t),0.9*sin(t),'y'), ...
     axis square
```

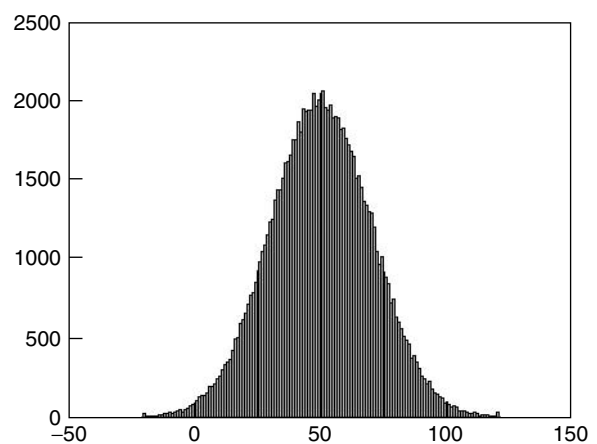


```
t = 0:pi/20:4*pi;
fill(t,sin(t),'g')
```



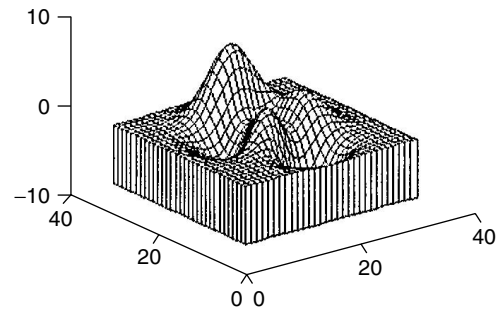
(h) hist

```
x = -20:120;
y = 50+20*randn(1,100000);
hist(y,x)
```



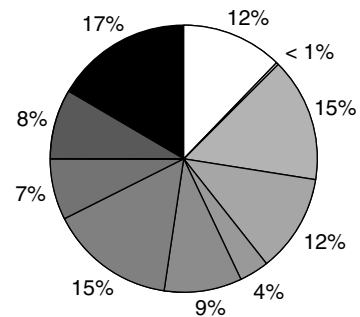
(i) meshz

```
[x y] = meshgrid(-3:0.1:3);
z = peaks(x,y);
meshz(z)
```



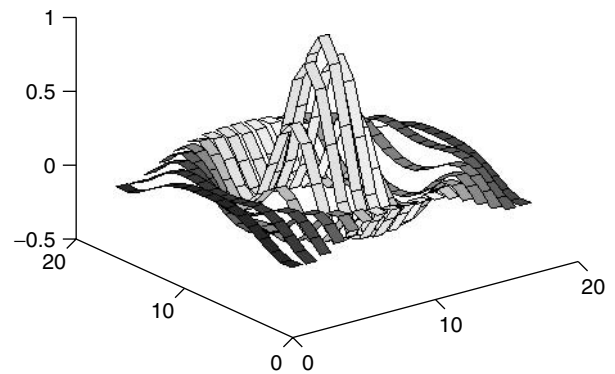
(j) pie

```
pie(rand(1,10))
```

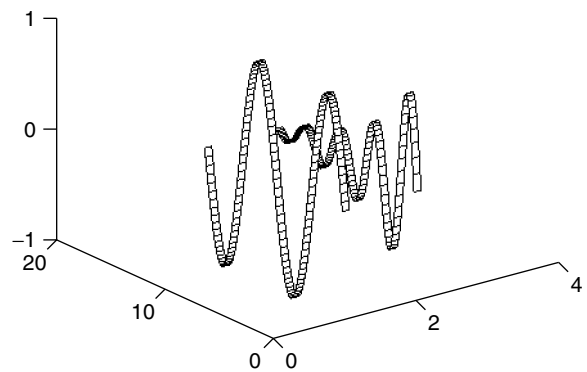


(k) ribbon

```
[x y] = meshgrid(-8 : 1 : 8);
r = sqrt(x.^2 + y.^2) + eps;
z = sin(r) ./ r;
ribbon(z)
```

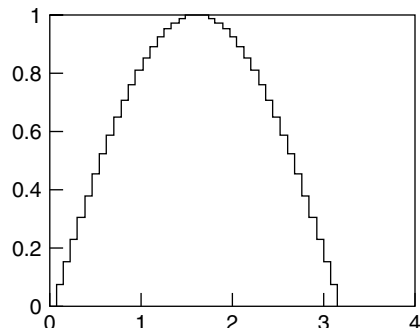


```
t = 0:pi/40:4*pi;
y1 = sin(t);
y2 = exp(-0.2*t).*sin(2*t);
y = [y1; y2];
ribbon(t', y', 0.1)
```



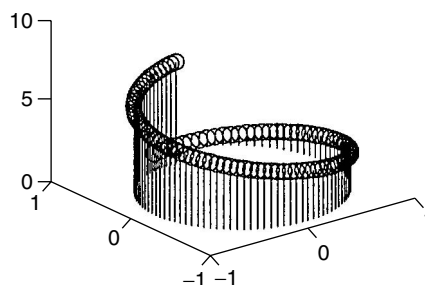
(l) stairs

```
x = 0:pi/40:pi;
stairs(x, sin(x))
```



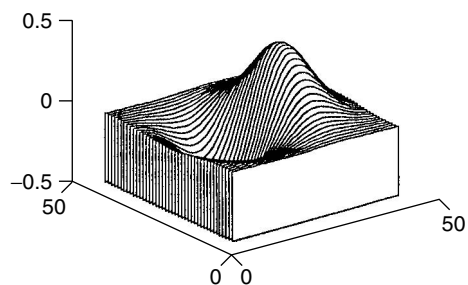
(m) stem3

```
t = 0:pi/50:2*pi;
r = exp(-0.05*t);
stem3(r.*sin(t), r.*cos(t), t)
```



(n) waterfall

```
[x y] = meshgrid(-2:0.1:2);
z = x.*exp(-x.^2-y.^2);
waterfall(z)
```



Summary

- 2-D plots are drawn with the plot statement.
- There is a set of easy-to-use plotters called ez*.
- Graphs may be labelled with grid, text, title, xlabel, ylabel, etc.
- Multiple plots may be drawn on the same axes in a number of ways.
- Line styles, markers and colour may be varied.
- Axis limits may be set explicitly.
- In MATLAB the word 'axes' refers to the graphics object in which the x and y axis and their labels, plots and text annotations are drawn.
- A number of axes may be drawn in the same figure with subplot.
- Co-ordinates of points in a figure may be selected with ginput.
- semilogx, semilogy and loglog are used to plot on \log_{10} scales.
- The polar command plots in polar co-ordinates.
- fplot provides a handy way of plotting mathematical functions.
- plot3 draws lines in 3-D.

- `comet3` animates a 3-D plot.
- A 3-D surface may be plotted with `mesh`.
- A 3-D plot may be rotated with `view` or with the **Rotate 3-D** tool in the figure window.
- `mesh` may also be used to visualize a matrix.
- `contour` and `countour3` draws contour levels in 2-D and 3-D respectively.
- 3-D surfaces may be cropped.
- For a complete list of graphics functions consult the online Help in **MATLAB Function Reference: Functions by Category: Graphics**.

Exercises

- 7.1 Draw a graph of the population of the USA from 1790 to 2000, using the (logistic) model

$$P(t) = \frac{19\,727\,300}{1 + e^{-0.03134(t-1913.25)}}$$

where t is the date in years.

Actual data (in 1000s) for every decade from 1790 to 1950 are as follows: 3929, 5308, 7240, 9638, 12 866, 17 069, 23 192, 31 443, 38 558, 50 156, 62 948, 75 995, 91 972, 1 05 711, 1 22 775, 1 31 669, 1 50 697. Superimpose this data on the graph of $P(t)$. Plot the data as discrete circles (i.e. do not join them with lines) as shown in Figure 7.14.

- 7.2 The Spiral of Archimedes (Figure 7.15) may be represented in polar co-ordinates by the equation

$$r = a\theta,$$

where a is some constant. (The shells of a class of animals called nummulites grow in this way.)

Write some command-line statements to draw the spiral for some values of a .

- 7.3 Another type of spiral is the *logarithmic* spiral (Figure 7.15), which describes the growth of shells of animals like the periwinkle and the nautilus. Its equation in polar co-ordinates is

$$r = aq^\theta,$$

where $a > 0$, $q > 1$. Draw this spiral.

- 7.4 The arrangement of seeds in a sunflower head (and other flowers, like daisies) follows a fixed mathematical pattern. The n th seed is at position

$$r = \sqrt{n},$$

with angular co-ordinate $\pi dn/180$ radians, where d is the constant angle of divergence (in degrees) between any two successive seeds, i.e. between the n th and $(n+1)$ th seeds. A perfect sunflower head (Figure 7.16) is generated by $d = 137.51^\circ$. Write a program to plot the seeds; use a circle (o) for each seed. A remarkable feature of this model is that the angle d must be exact to get proper sunflowers. Experiment with some different values, e.g. 137.45° (spokes, from fairly far out), 137.65° (spokes all the way), 137.92° (Catherine wheels).

- 7.5 The equation of an ellipse in polar co-ordinates is given by

$$r = a(1 - e^2)/(1 - e \cos \theta),$$

where a is the semi-major axis and e is the eccentricity, if one focus is at the origin, and the semi-major axis lies on the x -axis.

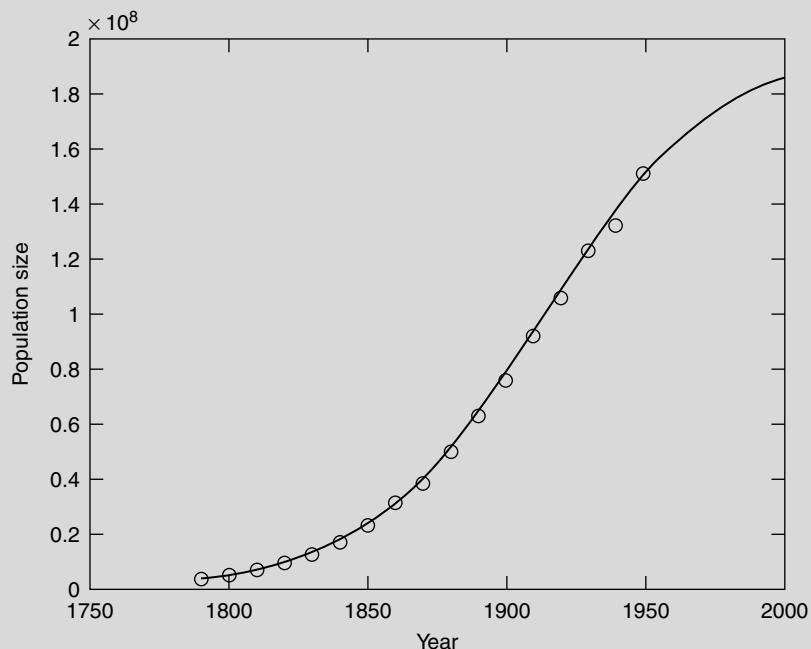


Figure 7.14 USA population: model and census data (o)

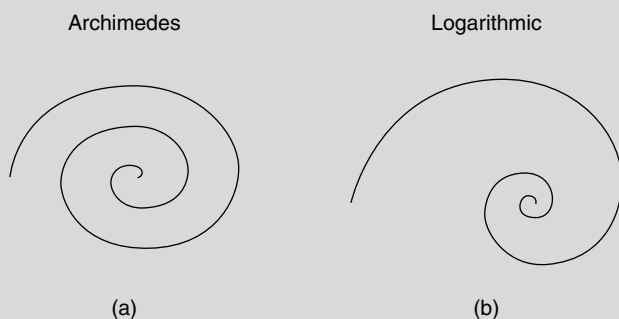


Figure 7.15 Spirals

Halley's Comet, which visited us in 1985/6, moves in an elliptical orbit about the Sun (at one focus) with a semi-major axis of 17.9 A.U. (A.U. stands for Astronomical Unit, which is the mean distance of the Earth from the Sun: 149.6 million km.) The eccentricity of the orbit is 0.967276. Write a program which draws the orbit of Halley's Comet and the Earth (assume the Earth is circular).

7.6 A very interesting iterative relationship that has been studied a lot recently is defined by

$$y_{k+1} = ry_k(1 - y_k)$$

(this is a discrete form of the well-known *logistic model*). Given y_0 and r , successive y_k 's may be computed very easily, e.g. if $y_0 = 0.2$ and $r = 1$, then $y_1 = 0.16$, $y_2 = 0.1334$, and so on.

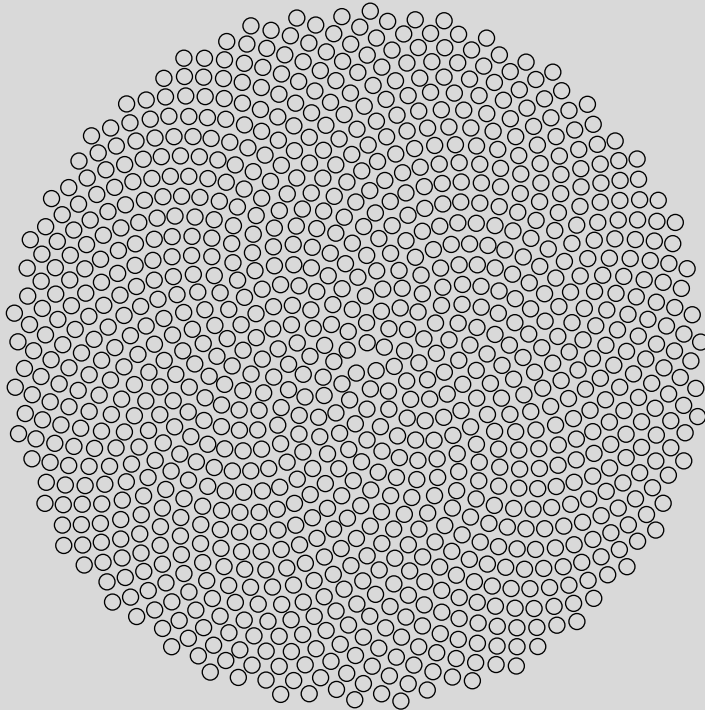


Figure 7.16 A perfect sunflower?

This formula is often used to model population growth in cases where the growth is not unlimited, but is restricted by shortage of food, living area, etc.

y_k exhibits fascinating behaviour, known as *mathematical chaos*, for values of r between 3 and 4 (independent of y_0). Write a program which plots y_k against k (as individual points).

Values of r that give particularly interesting graphs are 3.3, 3.5, 3.5668, 3.575, 3.5766, 3.738, 3.8287, and many more that can be found by patient exploration.

- 7.7 A rather beautiful *fractal* picture can be drawn by plotting the points (x_k, y_k) generated by the following difference equations

$$x_{k+1} = y_k(1 + \sin 0.7x_k) - 1.2\sqrt{|x_k|},$$

$$y_{k+1} = 0.21 - x_k,$$

starting with $x_0 = y_0 = 0$. Write a program to draw the picture (plot individual points; do not join them).

8

Loops

Objectives

The objectives of this chapter are to enable you to learn to

- code determinate loops with `for`;
- code indeterminate loops with `while`.

In Chapter 2 we introduced the powerful `for` statement, which is used to repeat a block of statements a fixed number of times. This type of structure, where the number of repetitions must be determined in advance, is sometimes called *determinate repetition*. However, it often happens that the condition to end a loop is only satisfied *during the execution of the loop itself*. Such a structure is called *indeterminate*. This chapter is mainly about indeterminate loops, but to emphasize the difference between the two types of repetition we will first look at some more examples of `for` loops.

8.1 Determinate repetition with `for`

Binomial coefficient

The *binomial coefficient* is widely used in mathematics and statistics. It is defined as the number of ways of choosing r objects out of n without regard to order, and is given by

$$\binom{n}{r} = \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!}. \quad (8.1)$$

If this form is used, the factorials can get very big, causing an overflow. But a little thought reveals we can simplify Equation (8.1) as follows:

$$\binom{n}{r} = \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)\cdots(n-r+1)}{r!}, \quad (8.2)$$

$$\text{e.g. } \binom{10}{3} = \frac{10!}{3! \times 7!} = \frac{10 \times 9 \times 8}{1 \times 2 \times 3}.$$

Using Equation (8.2) is computationally much more efficient:

```

ncr = 1;
n = ...
r = ...

for k = 1:r
    ncr = ncr * (n - k + 1) / k;
end

disp( ncr )

```

The binomial coefficient is sometimes pronounced ‘n-see-r’. Work through the program by hand with some sample values.

Update processes

Many problems in science and engineering involve modelling a process where the main variable is repeatedly updated over a period of time. Here is an example of such an *update process*.

A can of orange juice at temperature 25° C is placed in a fridge, where the ambient temperature F is 10° C. We want to find out how the temperature of the orange juice changes over a period of time. A standard way of approaching this type of problem is to break the time period up into a number of small steps, each of length dt . If T_i is the temperature at the *beginning* of step i , we can use the following model to get T_{i+1} from T_i :

$$T_{i+1} = T_i - K dt (T_i - F), \quad (8.3)$$

where K is a constant parameter depending on the insulating properties of the can, and the thermal properties of orange juice. Assume that units are chosen so that time is in minutes.

The following script implements this scheme. To make the solution more general, take the starting time as a , and the end time as b . If dt is very small, it will be inconvenient to have output displayed after every step, so the script also asks you for the *output interval* $opint$. This is the time (in minutes) between successive rows of output. It checks that this interval is an integer multiple of dt . Try the script with some sample values, e.g. $dt = 0.2$ minutes and $opint = 5$ minutes (these are the values used for the output below).

```

K = 0.05;
F = 10;
a = 0; % start time
b = 100; % end time
time = a; % initialize time
T = 25; % initialize temperature
load train % prepare to blow the whistle
dt = input( 'dt: ' );
opint = input( 'output interval (minutes): ' );
if opint/dt ~= fix(opint/dt)
    sound(y, Fs) % blow the whistle!
    disp( 'output interval is not a multiple of dt!' );
    break
end

clc
format bank
disp( ' Time Temperature' );
disp( [time T] ) % display initial values

```

```

for time = a+dt : dt : b
    T = T - K * dt * (T - F);
    if abs(rem(time, opint)) < 1e-6    % practically zero!
        disp( [time T] )
    end
end

```

Output:

Time	Temperature
0	25.00
5.00	21.67
...	
95.00	10.13
100.00	10.10

Note:

1. The function `rem` is used to display the results every `opint` minutes: when `time` is an integer multiple of `opint` its remainder when divided by `opint` should be zero. However, due to rounding error, the remainder is not always *exactly* zero. It is therefore better to test whether its absolute value is less than some very small value. (Rounding error is discussed in Chapter 9).
2. While this is probably the most obvious way of writing the script, we cannot easily plot the graph of temperature against time this way, since `time` and `T` are scalars which are repeatedly updated. To plot the graph they both need to be vectors (see Chapter 11).
3. Note how sound is implemented. See `help audio` for other interesting sounds supplied by MATLAB.
4. In case you are wondering how I got the headings in the right place, I'll let you into the secret. Run the script without a heading but with the numerical output as you want it. Then simply paste the `disp` statement with the headings into the command window and edit it until the headings fall in the right place. Paste the final version of the `disp` statement into the script.
5. Note the use of `break` to stop the script prematurely if the user gives bad input. See below for more general use of `break`.

Nested fors

As we saw in Chapter 6 (**Vectorizing nested fors**), `for` loops can be nested inside each other. The main point to note is that the index of the *inner* `for` moves faster.

8.2 Indeterminate repetition with `while`

Determinate loops all have in common the fact that you can work out in principle exactly how many repetitions are required *before the loop starts*. But in the next example, there is no way *in principle* of working out the number of repeats, so a different structure is needed.

A guessing game

The problem is easy to state. MATLAB 'thinks' of an integer between 1 and 10 (i.e. generates one at random). You have to guess it. If your guess is too high or too low, the script must say so. If your guess is correct, a message of congratulations must be displayed.

A little more thought is required here, so a structure plan might be helpful:

1. Generate random integer
2. Ask user for guess

3. While guess is wrong:
 - If guess is too low
 - Tell her it is too low
 - Otherwise
 - Tell her it is too high
 - Ask user for new guess
4. Polite congratulations
5. Stop.

Here is the script:

```
matnum = floor(10 * rand + 1);
guess = input( 'Your guess please: ' );
load splat

while guess ~= matnum
    sound(y, Fs)

    if guess > matnum
        disp( 'Too high' )
    else
        disp( 'Too low' )
    end;

    guess = input( 'Your next guess please: ' );
end

disp( 'At last!' )
load handel
sound(y, Fs)           % hallelujah!
```

Try it out a few times. Note that the while loop repeats as long as `matnum` is not equal to `guess`. There is no way in principle of knowing how many loops will be needed before the user guesses correctly. The problem is truly indeterminate.

Note that `guess` has to be input in two places: firstly to get the while loop going, and secondly during the execution of the while.

The while statement

In general the while statement looks like this:

```
while condition
    statements
end
```

The while construct repeats *statements* WHILE its *condition* remains true. The condition therefore is the condition to repeat once again. The condition is tested each time BEFORE *statements* are repeated. Since the condition is evaluated before *statements* are executed, it is possible to arrange for *statements* not to be executed at all under certain circumstances. Clearly, *condition* must depend on *statements* in some way, otherwise the loop will never end.

Recall that a *vector* condition is considered true only if *all* its elements are non-zero.

The command-line form of while is:

```
while condition statements, end
```

Doubling time of an investment

Suppose we have invested some money which draws 10 per cent interest per year, compounded. We would like to know how long it takes for the investment to double. More specifically, we want a statement of the account each year, *until* the balance has doubled. The English statement of the problem hints heavily that we should use an indeterminate loop with the following structure plan:

1. Initialize balance, year, interest rate
2. Display headings
3. Repeat
 - Update balance according to interest rate
 - Display year, balance
 - until balance exceeds twice original balance
4. Stop.

A program to implement this plan would be

```
a = 1000;
r = 0.1;
bal = a;
year = 0;
disp( 'Year          Balance' )

while bal < 2 * a
    bal = bal + r * bal;
    year = year + 1;
    disp( [year bal] )
end
```

Note that the more natural phrase in the structure plan ‘until balance exceeds twice original balance’ must be coded as

```
while bal < 2 * a ...
```

This condition is checked each time before another loop is made. Repetition occurs only if the condition is true. Here’s some output (for an opening balance of \$1000):

Year	Balance
1	1100.00
2	1210.00
3	1331.00
4	1464.10
5	1610.51
6	1771.56
7	1948.72
8	2143.59

Note that when the last loop has been completed, the condition to repeat is false for the first time, since the new balance (\$2143.59) is more than \$2000. Note also that a determinate `for` loop *cannot* be used here because we don’t know how many loops are going to be needed until after the script has run (although in this particular example perhaps you *could* work out in advance how many repeats are needed?).

If you want to write the new balance only while it is *less* than \$2000, all that has to be done is to move the statement

```
disp( [year bal] )
```

until it is the first statement in the `while` loop. Note that the initial balance of \$1000 is displayed now.

Prime numbers

Many people are obsessed with prime numbers, and most books on programming have to include an algorithm to test if a given number is prime. So here's mine.

A number is prime if it is not an exact multiple of any other number except itself and 1, i.e. if it has no factors except itself and 1. The easiest plan of attack then is as follows. Suppose P is the number to be tested. See if any numbers N can be found that divide into P without remainder. If there are none, P is prime. Which numbers N should we try? Well, we can speed things up by restricting P to odd numbers, so we only have to try odd divisors N . When do we stop testing? When $N = P$? No, we can stop a lot sooner. In fact, we can stop once N reaches \sqrt{P} , since if there is a factor greater than \sqrt{P} there must be a corresponding one less than \sqrt{P} , which we would have found. And where do we start? Well, since $N = 1$ will be a factor of any P , we should start at $N = 3$. The structure plan is as follows:

1. Input P
2. Initialize N to 3
3. Find remainder R when P is divided by N
4. While $R \neq 0$ and $N < \sqrt{P}$ repeat:
 - Increase N by 2
 - Find R when P is divided by N
5. If $R \neq 0$ then
 - P is prime
 - Else
 - P is not prime
6. Stop.

Note that there may be no repeats— R might be zero the first time. Note also that there are *two* conditions under which the loop may stop. Consequently, an `if` is required after completion of the loop to determine which condition stopped it.

See if you can write the script. Then try it out on the following numbers: 4058879 (not prime), 193707721 (prime) and 2147483647 (prime). If such things interest you, the largest *known* prime number at the time of writing was $2^{6972593} - 1$ (discovered in June 1999). It has 2098960 digits and would occupy about 70 pages if it was printed in a newspaper. Obviously our algorithm cannot test such a large number, since it's unimaginably greater than the largest number which can be represented by MATLAB. Ways of testing such huge numbers for primality are described in D.E. Knuth, *The Art of Computer Programming, Volume 2: Seminumerical Algorithms* (Addison-Wesley, 1981). This particular whopper was found by the GIMPS (Great Internet Mersenne Prime Search). See <http://www.utm.edu/research/primes/largest.html> for more information on the largest known primes.

Projectile trajectory

In Chapter 4 we considered the flight of a projectile, given the usual equations of motion (assuming no air resistance). We would like to know now when and where it will hit the ground. Although this problem can be solved with a determinate loop (if you know enough applied mathematics), it is of interest also to see how to solve it with an indeterminate `while` loop. The idea is to calculate the trajectory repeatedly with increasing time, *while* the vertical displacement (y) remains positive. Here's the script:

```
dt = 0.1;
g = 9.8;
u = 60;
ang = input('Launch angle in degrees: ');
ang = ang * pi / 180;           % convert to radians
x = 0; y = 0; t = 0;           % for starters
more(15)

while y >= 0
```

```

disp( [t x y] );
t = t + dt;
y = u * sin(ang) * t - g * t^2 / 2;
x = u * cos(ang) * t;
end

```

The command `more(n)` gives you n lines of output before pausing. This is called *paging*. To get another single line of output press **Enter**. To get the next page of n lines press the spacebar. To quit the script press **q**.

Try the script for some different launch angles. Can you find the launch angle which gives the maximum horizontal range (x)? What launch angle keeps it in the air for the longest time?

Note that when the loop finally ends, the value of y will be negative (check this by displaying y). However, the position of the `disp` statement ensures that only positive values of y are displayed. If for some reason you need to record the last value of t , say, before y becomes negative, you will need an `if` statement inside the `while`, e.g.

```

if y >= 0
    tmax = t;
end

```

Change the script so that it displays the last time for which y was positive (t_{\max}), *after* the `while` loop has ended.

Now suppose we want to plot the trajectory, as shown in Figure 8.1. Note in particular how the trajectory stops above the x -axis. We need to use vectors now. Here is the script:

```

dt = 0.1;
g = 9.8;
u = 60;
ang = input( 'Launch angle in degrees: ' );
ang = ang * pi / 180;           % convert to radians
xp = zeros(1); yp = zeros(1); % initialize

```

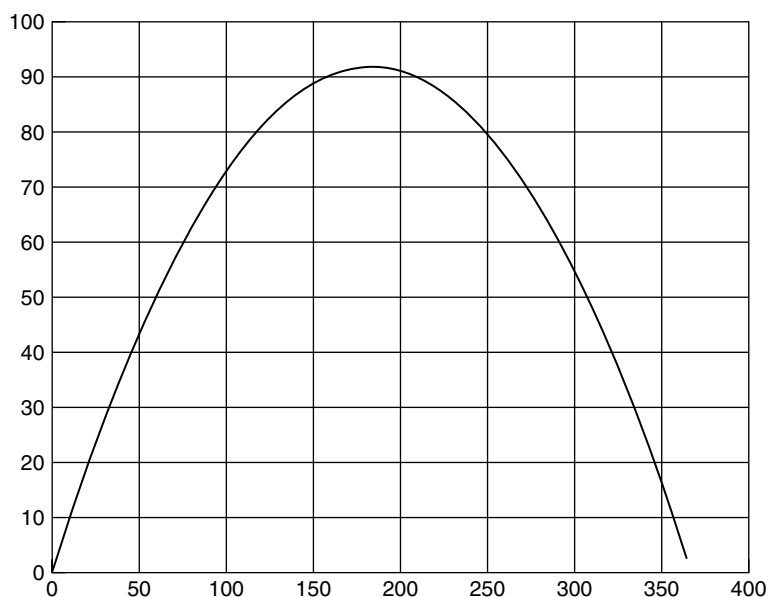


Figure 8.1 Projectile trajectory


```

y = 0; t = 0;
i = 1;                % initial vector subscript

while y >= 0
    t = t + dt;
    i = i + 1;
    y = u * sin(ang) * t - g * t^2 / 2;
    if y >= 0
        xp(i) = u * cos(ang) * t;
        yp(i) = y;
    end
end

plot(xp, yp),grid

```

Note that the function `zeros` is used to initialize the vectors. This also clears any vector of the same name hanging around in the workspace from previous runs.

Note also the use of an `if` inside the `while` loop to ensure that only co-ordinates of points above the ground are added to the vectors `xp` and `yp`.

If you want the last point above the ground to be closer to the ground, try a smaller value of `dt`, e.g. 0.01.

break *and* continue

Any loop structure you are likely to encounter in scientific programming can be coded with either 'pure' `for` or `while` loops, as illustrated by the examples in this chapter. However, as a concession to intellectual laziness I feel obliged to mention in passing the `break` and `continue` statements.

If there are a number of different conditions to stop a `while` loop you may be tempted to use a `for` with the number of repetitions set to some accepted cut-off value (or even `Inf`) but enclosing `if` statements which `break` out of the `for` when the various conditions are met. Why is this not regarded as the best programming style? The reason is simply that when you read the code months later you will have to wade through the whole loop to find all the conditions to end it, rather than see them all paraded at the start of the loop in the `while` clause.

If you are going to insist on using `break` you will have to look it up in help for yourself!

The `continue` statement is somewhat less virulent than `break` ...

Menus

Try the following program, which sets up a menu window, as in Figure 8.2:



Figure 8.2 A menu window

```

k = 0;

while k ~= 3
    k = menu( 'Click on your option', 'Do this', ...
            'Do that', 'Quit' );
    if k == 1
        disp( 'Do this ... press any key to continue ...' )
        pause
    elseif k == 2
        disp( 'Do that ... press any key to continue ...' )
        pause
    end
end;

```

Note:

1. The menu function enables you to set up a menu of choices for a user.
2. menu takes only string arguments. The first one is the title of the menu. The second and subsequent strings are the choices available to the user.
3. The value returned by menu (*k* here) numbers the user's choices.
4. Since one has no idea how many choices the user will make, menu is properly enclosed in an indeterminate while loop. The loop continues to present the menu until the last option (in this example) is selected.
5. You can design much more sophisticated menu-driven applications with the MATLAB GUIDE (Graphical User Interface Development Environment). See Chapter 15.

Summary

- A `for` statement should be used to program a determinate loop, where the number of repeats is known (in principle) *before* the loop is encountered. This situation is characterized by the general structure plan:

Repeat *N* times:
 Block of statements to be repeated

where *N* is known or computed *before* the loop is encountered for the first time, and is not changed by the block.

- A `while` statement should be used to program an indeterminate repeat structure, where the exact number of repeats is *not* known in advance. Another way of saying this is that these statements should be used whenever the truth value of the condition for repeating is changed in the body of the loop. This situation is characterized by the following structure plan:

While *condition* is true repeat:
 statements to be repeated (reset truth value of *condition*).

Note that *condition* is the condition to repeat.

- The statements in a `while` construct may sometimes never be executed.
- Loops may be nested to any depth.
- The menu statement inside a `while` loop may be used to present a user with a menu of choices.

Exercises

- 8.1 A person deposits \$1000 in a bank. Interest is compounded monthly at the rate of 1 per cent per month. Write a program which will compute the monthly balance, but write it only *annually* for 10 years (use nested `for` loops, with the outer loop for 10 years, and the inner loop for 12 months). Note that after 10 years, the balance is \$3300.39, whereas if interest had been compounded annually at the rate of 12 per cent per year the balance would only have been \$3105.85. See if you can vectorize your solution.

- 8.2 There are many formulae for computing π (the ratio of a circle's circumference to its diameter). The simplest is

$$\frac{\pi}{4} = 1 - 1/3 + 1/5 - 1/7 + 1/9 - \dots \quad (8.4)$$

which comes from putting $x = 1$ in the series

$$\arctan x = x - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} - \frac{x^7}{7} + \frac{x^9}{9} - \dots \quad (8.5)$$

- (a) Write a program to compute π using Equation (8.4). Use as many terms in the series as your computer will reasonably allow (start modestly, with 100 terms, say, and re-run your program with more and more each time). You should find that the series converges very slowly, i.e. it takes a lot of terms to get fairly close to π .
- (b) Rearranging the series speeds up the convergence:

$$\frac{\pi}{8} = \frac{1}{1 \times 3} + \frac{1}{5 \times 7} + \frac{1}{9 \times 11} \dots$$

Write a program to compute π using this series instead. You should find that you need fewer terms to reach the same level of accuracy that you got in (a).

- (c) One of the fastest series for π is

$$\frac{\pi}{4} = 6 \arctan \frac{1}{8} + 2 \arctan \frac{1}{57} + \arctan \frac{1}{239}.$$

Use this formula to compute π . Don't use the MATLAB function `atan` to compute the arctangents, since that would be cheating. Rather use Equation (8.5).

- (d) Can you vectorize any of your solutions (if you haven't already)?

- 8.3 The following method of computing π is due to Archimedes:

1. Let $A = 1$ and $N = 6$
2. Repeat 10 times, say:
 - Replace N by $2N$
 - Replace A by $[2 - \sqrt{4 - A^2}]^{1/2}$
 - Let $L = NA/2$
 - Let $U = L/\sqrt{1 - A^2/2}$
 - Let $P = (U + L)/2$ (estimate of π)
 - Let $E = (U - L)/2$ (estimate of error)
 - Print N, P, E
3. Stop.

Write a program to implement the algorithm.

- 8.4 Write a program to compute a table of the function

$$f(x) = x \sin \left[\frac{\pi(1 + 20x)}{2} \right]$$

over the (closed) interval $[-1, 1]$ using increments in x of (a) 0.2 (b) 0.1 and (c) 0.01.

Use your tables to sketch graphs of $f(x)$ for the three cases (by hand), and observe that the tables for (a) and (b) give totally the wrong picture of $f(x)$.

Get your program to draw the graph of $f(x)$ for the three cases, superimposed.

- 8.5 The transcendental number e (2.71828182845904 ...) can be shown to be the limit of

$$(1 + x)^{1/x}$$

as x tends to zero (from above). Write a program which shows how this expression converges to e as x gets closer and closer to zero.

- 8.6 A square wave of period T may be defined by the function

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & (0 < t < T) \\ -1 & (-T < t < 0). \end{cases}$$

The Fourier series for $f(t)$ is given by

$$F(t) = \frac{4}{\pi} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2k+1} \sin \left[\frac{(2k+1)\pi t}{T} \right].$$

It is of interest to know how many terms are needed for a good approximation to this infinite sum. Taking $T = 1$, write a program to compute and plot the sum to n terms of the series for t from -1.1 to 1.1 in steps of 0.01, say. Run the program for different values of n , e.g. 1, 3, 6, etc. Superimpose plots of $F(t)$ against t for a few values of n .

On each side of a discontinuity a Fourier series exhibits peculiar oscillatory behaviour known as the Gibbs phenomenon. Figure 8.3 shows this clearly for the above series with $n = 20$ (and increments in t of 0.01). The phenomenon is much sharper for $n = 200$ and t increments of 0.001.

- 8.7 If an amount of money A is invested for k years at a nominal annual interest rate r (expressed as a decimal fraction), the value V of the investment after k years is given by

$$V = A(1 + r/n)^{nk}$$

where n is the number of compounding periods per year. Write a program to compute V as n gets larger and larger, i.e. as the compounding periods become more and more frequent, like monthly, daily, hourly, etc. Take $A = 1000$, $r = 4$ per cent and $k = 10$ years. You should observe that your output gradually approaches a limit. **Hint:** use a `for` loop which doubles n each time, starting with $n = 1$.

Also compute the value of the formula Ae^{rk} for the same values of A , r and k (use the MATLAB function `exp`), and compare this value with the values of V computed above. What do you conclude?

- 8.8 Write a program to compute the sum of the series $1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 \dots$ such that the sum is as large as possible without exceeding 1000. The program should display how many terms are used in the sum.
- 8.9 One of the programs in Section 8.2 shows that an amount of \$1000 will double in eight years with an interest rate of 10 per cent. Using the same interest rate, run the program with initial balances of \$500, \$2000 and \$10000 (say) to see how long they all take to double. The results may surprise you.
- 8.10 Write a program to implement the structure plan of Exercise 3.2.

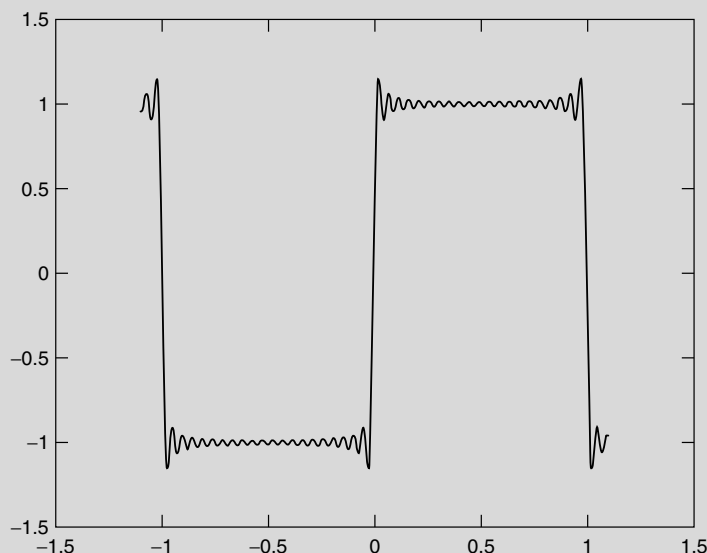


Figure 8.3 Fourier series: Gibbs phenomenon

8.11 Use the Taylor series

$$\cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \dots$$

to write a program to compute $\cos x$ correct to four decimal places (x is in radians). See how many terms are needed to get 4-figure agreement with the MATLAB function `cos`. Don't make x too large; that could cause rounding error.

- 8.12 A student borrows \$10 000 to buy a used car. Interest on her loan is compounded at the rate of 2 per cent per month while the outstanding balance of the loan is more than \$5000, and at 1 per cent per month otherwise. She pays back \$300 every month, except for the last month, when the repayment must be less than \$300. She pays at the end of the month, *after* the interest on the balance has been compounded. The first repayment is made one month after the loan is paid out. Write a program which displays a monthly statement of the balance (after the monthly payment has been made), the final payment, and the month of the final payment.
- 8.13 A projectile, the equations of motion of which are given in Chapter 4, is launched from the point O with an initial velocity of 60 m/s at an angle of 50° to the horizontal. Write a program which computes and displays the time in the air, and horizontal and vertical displacement from the point O every 0.5 seconds, as long as the projectile remains above a horizontal plane through O.
- 8.14 When a resistor (R), capacitor (C) and battery (V) are connected in series, a charge Q builds up on the capacitor according to the formula

$$Q(t) = CV(1 - e^{-t/RC})$$

if there is no charge on the capacitor at time $t = 0$. The problem is to monitor the charge on the capacitor every 0.1 seconds in order to detect when it reaches a level of 8 units of charge, given that $V = 9$, $R = 4$ and $C = 1$. Write a program which displays the time and charge every 0.1 seconds until the charge first exceeds 8 units (i.e. the last charge displayed must exceed 8). Once you have done this, rewrite the program to display the charge only while it is strictly less than 8 units.

- 8.15 Adapt your program for the prime number algorithm in Section 8.2 to find all the prime factors of a given number (even or odd).

9

Errors and pitfalls

Objective

The objective of this chapter is to enable you to

- recognize and avoid different sorts of errors and pitfalls.

Even experienced programmers seldom get programs to run correctly the first time. In computer jargon, an error in a program is called a *bug*. The story is that a hapless moth short-circuited two thermionic valves in one of the earliest computers. This primeval (charcoaled) ‘bug’ took days to find. The process of detecting and correcting such errors is therefore called *debugging*. There are a number of different types of errors and pitfalls, some of which are peculiar to MATLAB, and some of which may occur when programming in any language. These are discussed briefly in this chapter.

9.1 Syntax errors

Syntax errors are typing errors in MATLAB statements (e.g. `plog` instead of `plot`). They are the most frequent type of error, and are *fatal*: MATLAB stops execution and displays an error message. Since MATLAB is not even remotely as intelligent as you are, the messages can sometimes be rather unhelpful—even misleading. A few common examples are given below.

```
)" expected, "end of line" found.
```

This is generated in response to something like

```
2*(1+3
```

What could possibly be more helpful than that?

You also get this message, quite properly, after something like

```
disp(['the answer is ' num2str(2)])
```

because the closing right parenthesis has been omitted. However, if you omit the closing square bracket instead, you get the somewhat unhelpful `;" expected,)" found`.

"end" expected, "End of Input" found.

This seems pretty obvious, and usually is. But you also get it after the following

```
x = input( 'x: ' );
if x < 0
    disp( 'negative' )
else if x == 0
    disp( 'zero' )
else
    disp( 'positive' )
end
```

where end is *not* missing. The actual error is that `else if` has been typed as *two* words instead of one, as required in an `elseif` ladder. The effect of this is to open a new (nested) `if` statement as part of the `else`. This naturally requires its own end. In fact, adding an extra end at the end will suppress the error message, but may not give you what you expected (see **Nested ifs** in Chapter 2).

Error using ==> * Inner matrix dimensions must agree.

This is generated for example by

```
[1 2 3] * [4 5 6]
```

since *matrix* multiplication cannot be applied to two row vectors. Presumably the array operation `.*` was intended. You get a similar message after something like

```
[1 2 3] + [4 5]
```

because the vectors don't have the same number of elements.

Missing operator, comma, or semi-colon.

This is a very common message. It is generated, for example, by the following statement:

```
if x < 0 disp('negative') end
```

(as long as `x` is defined) because there is no comma after the `disp` statement, or after

```
2(1+3)
```

because `*` (say) was left out after the `2`.

But it can be misleading. For example, it occurs after the statement

```
2x = 3
```

(perhaps you meant to type `x2` for a variable name). Maybe MATLAB thought you were trying to evaluate a logical expression like `2*x == 3` in which case two operators were omitted. Who knows?

You also get it after the following statement, which a BASIC programmer might try:

```
name$ = 'Joe'
```

Expected a variable, function, or constant, found ...

This message occurs, quite naturally, after something like

```
x =
```

(you simply forgot to complete the statement) or

```
y = sin()
```

(you left out the argument of `sin`).

But you get the misleading variation `Missing variable or function with`

```
disp( "Hi there" )
```

or

```
king = "Henry VIII"
```

(for using double instead of single quotes).

There are a large number of possible syntax errors—you will probably have discovered a good few yourself. With experience you will gradually become more adept at spotting your mistakes.

`lasterr`

The function `lasterr` returns the last error message generated.

9.2 Pitfalls and surprises

Incompatible vector sizes

Consider the following statements:

```
x = 0:pi/20:3*pi;  
y = sin(x);  
x = 0:pi/40:3*pi;  
plot(x,y)
```

You'll get the error message

```
Error using ==> plot  
Vectors must be the same lengths.
```

because you forgot to recalculate `y` after reducing the `x` increments. `whos` reveals the problem:

```
 x          1x121      ...  
 y          1x61      ...
```

Name hiding

Recall that a workspace variable 'hides' a script or function of the same name. The only way to access such a script or function is to clear the offending variable from the workspace.

Furthermore, a MATLAB function hides a script of the same name, e.g. create a script called `why.m` that displays some junk message, and then type `why` at the command line.

If you are worried that a variable or script which you are thinking of creating, say `blob`, may be a MATLAB function, try `help blob` first.

Other pitfalls for the unwary

It may be a good idea to work through the following sections in Chapter 2 again: **Vectorization of formulae: Danger!** and **A common mistake: for less loops!**.

You might wonder why MATLAB is used at all, since it appears to have so many ways of catching you out. There are two responses to this. Firstly, other languages have different pitfalls. Secondly, the fact that powerful motor cars can kill people has never been accepted as an excuse for not owning or driving one. You simply have to learn the rules of the road and drive carefully to avoid accidents.

9.3 Errors in logic

These are errors in the actual algorithm you are using to solve a problem, and are the most difficult to find; the program runs, but gives the wrong answers! It's even worse if you don't realize the answers are wrong. The following tips might help you to check out the logic.

- Try to run the program for some special cases where you know the answers.
- If you don't know any exact answers, try to use your insight into the problem to check whether the answers seem to be of the right order of magnitude.
- Try working through the program by hand (or use MATLAB's excellent interactive debugging facilities—see Chapter 10) to see if you can spot where things start going wrong.

9.4 Rounding error

At times, as we have seen, a program will give numerical answers which we know are wrong. This can also be due to *rounding error*, which results from the finite precision available on the computer, i.e. eight bytes per variable, instead of an infinite number.

Run the following program:

```
x = 0.1;
while x ~= 0.2
    x = x + 0.001;
    fprintf( '%g %g\n', x, x - 0.2 )
end
```

You will find that you need to crash the program to stop it, i.e. with **Ctrl-break** on a PC. The variable `x` never has the value 0.2 *exactly*, because of rounding error. In fact, `x` misses 0.2 by about 8.3×10^{-17} , as can be seen from displaying the value of `x - 0.2`. It would be better to replace the `while` clause with

```
while x <= 0.2
```

or, even better, with

```
while abs(x - 0.2) > 1e-6
```

In general, it is always better to test for 'equality' of two non-integer expressions as follows:

```
if abs((a-b)/a) < 1e-6 disp( 'a practically equals b' ), end
```

or

```
if abs((a-b)/b) < 1e-6 ...
```

Note that this equality test is based on the *relative* difference between a and b , rather than on the *absolute* difference.

Rounding error may sometimes be reduced by a mathematical re-arrangement of a formula. Recall yet again the common or garden quadratic equation

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0,$$

with solutions

$$x_1 = \frac{-b + \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a},$$

$$x_2 = \frac{-b - \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}.$$

Taking $a = 1$, $b = -10^7$ and $c = 0.001$ gives $x_1 = 10^7$ and $x_2 = 0$. The second root is expressed as the difference between two nearly equal numbers, and considerable significance is lost. However, as you no doubt remember, the product of the two roots is given by c/a . The second root can therefore be expressed as $(c/a)/x_1$. Using this form gives $x_2 = 10^{-10}$, which is more accurate.

9.5 Trapping and generating errors

The functions `eval` and `lasterr` may be used to trap errors when a user is trying to input a valid MATLAB expression. See Chapter 12 for an example involving these functions in a `try/catch` structure, which may be used to recover gracefully from an error (i.e. without the script crashing).

The `error` statement displays an error message and returns control to the keyboard. For example, a program to compute the roots of the quadratic equation given above could have the following code segment to prevent division by zero:

```
if (a == 0)
    error( 'if a = 0 equation is not a quadratic, dum-dum!' )
end
```

Summary

- Syntax errors are mistakes in the construction of MATLAB statements.
- Logical errors are errors in the algorithm used to solve a problem.
- Rounding error occurs because a computer can store numbers only to a finite accuracy.

Exercises

9.1 The Newton quotient

$$\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$$

may be used to estimate the first derivative $f'(x)$ of a function $f(x)$, if h is 'small'. Write a program to compute the Newton quotient for the function

$$f(x) = x^2$$

at the point $x = 2$ (the exact answer is 4) for values of h starting at 1, and decreasing by a factor of 10 each time (use a `for` loop). The effect of rounding error becomes apparent when h gets 'too small', i.e. less than about 10^{-12} .

9.2 The solution of the set of simultaneous equations

$$\begin{aligned} ax + by &= c \\ dx + ey &= f \end{aligned}$$

(Exercise 3.6) is given by

$$\begin{aligned} x &= (ce - bf)/(ae - bd), \\ y &= (af - cd)/(ae - bd). \end{aligned}$$

If $(ae - bd)$ is small, rounding error may cause quite large inaccuracies in the solution. Consider the system

$$\begin{aligned} 0.2038x + 0.1218y &= 0.2014, \\ 0.4071x + 0.2436y &= 0.4038. \end{aligned}$$

Show that with four-figure floating point arithmetic the solution obtained is $x = -1$, $y = 3$. This level of accuracy may be simulated in the solution of Ex. 3.6 with some statements like

```
ae = floor( a * e * 1e4 ) / 1e4
```

and appropriate changes in the coding. The exact solution, obtained without rounding, is $x = -2$, $y = 5$. If the coefficients in the equations are themselves subject to experimental error, the 'solution' of this system using limited accuracy is totally meaningless.

MATLAB can of course solve linear equations directly, as we shall see in Chapter 18.

10

Function M-files

Objective

The objective of this chapter is to enable you to

- represent your own functions with inline objects and function M-files.

We have already seen that MATLAB has a number of *built-in* (compiled) functions, e.g. `sin`, `sqrt`, `sum`. You can verify that they are built-in by attempting to type them. Try type `sin` for example. MATLAB also has some functions in the form of *function M-files*, e.g. `fzero`, `why`. You can see what's in them with `type`, e.g. `type why`.

MATLAB enables you to create your own function M-files. A function M-file is similar to a script file in that it also has a `.m` extension. However, a function M-file differs from a script file in that a function M-file communicates with the MATLAB workspace only through specially designated *input* and *output arguments*.

Functions are indispensable when it comes to breaking a problem down into manageable logical pieces.

Short mathematical functions may be written as one-line *inline objects*.

This chapter outlines how to write your own functions, and also introduces MATLAB's interactive debugging facilities.

10.1 Some examples

Inline objects: harmonic oscillators

If two coupled harmonic oscillators, e.g. two masses connected with a spring on a very smooth table, are considered as a single system, the output of the system as a function of time t could be given by something like

$$h(t) = \cos(8t) + \cos(9t). \quad (10.1)$$

You can represent $h(t)$ at the command line by creating an *inline object* as follows:

```
h = inline( 'cos(8*t) + cos(9*t)' );
```

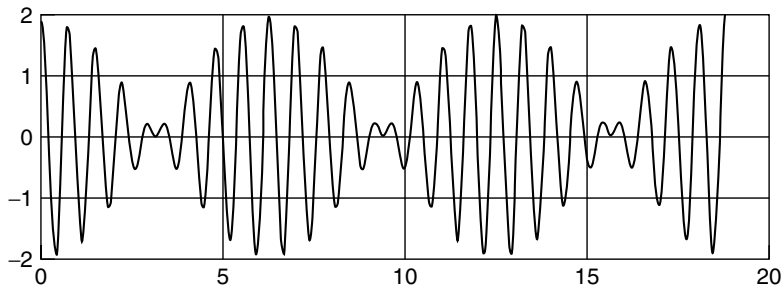


Figure 10.1 $\cos(8t) + \cos(9t)$

Now write some MATLAB statements in the Command Window which use your function `h` to draw the graph in Figure 10.1 e.g.

```
x = 0 : pi/40 : 6*pi;
plot(x, h(x)), grid
```

Note:

- The variable `t` in the `inline` definition of `h` is the *input argument*. It is essentially a ‘dummy’ variable, and serves only to provide input to the function from the outside world. You can use any variable name here; it doesn’t have to be the same as the one used when you invoke (use) the function.
- You can create functions of more than one argument with `inline`. For example,

```
f = inline( 'x.^2 + y.^2', 'x', 'y' );
f(1, 2)
ans =
     5
```

Function M-files: Newton’s method again

Newton’s method may be used to solve a general equation $f(x) = 0$ by repeating the assignment

$$x \text{ becomes } x - \frac{f(x)}{f'(x)},$$

where $f'(x)$ (i.e. df/dx) is the first derivative of $f(x)$ (see Chapter 19 for a derivation). The process continues until successive approximations to x are close enough.

Suppose that $f(x) = x^3 + x - 3$, i.e. we want to solve the equation $x^3 + x - 3 = 0$ (another way of stating the problem is to say we want to find the *zero* of $f(x)$). We have to be able to differentiate $f(x)$. That’s quite easy here: $f'(x) = 3x^2 + 1$. We could write inline objects for both $f(x)$ and $f'(x)$, but for this example we will use function M-files instead.

Use the Editor to create and save (in the current MATLAB directory) the function file `f.m` as follows:

```
function y = f(x)
y = x^3 + x - 3;
```

Then create and save another function file `df.m`:

```
function y = df(x)
y = 3*x^2 + 1;
```

Now write a *separate* script file, `newtgen.m` (in the same directory), which will stop either when the *relative* error in x is less than 10^{-8} , or after 20 steps, say:

```
% Newton's method in general
% exclude zero roots!

steps = 0;                               % iteration counter
x = input( 'Initial guess: ' );          % estimate of root
re = 1e-8;                               % required relative error
myrel = 1;

while myrel > re & (steps < 20)
    xold = x;
    x = x - f(x)/df(x);
    steps = steps + 1;
    disp( [x f(x)] )
    myrel = abs((x-xold)/x);
end;

if myrel <= re
    disp( 'Zero found at' )
    disp( x )
else
    disp( 'Zero NOT found' )
end;
```

Note that there are *two* conditions that will stop the `while` loop: convergence, or the completion of 20 steps. Otherwise the script could run indefinitely.

Here is a sample run (with `format long e`), starting with $x = 1$:

```
Initial guess: 1
1.2500000000000000e+000    2.0312500000000000e-001
1.214285714285714e+000    4.737609329445558e-003
1.213412175782825e+000    2.779086666571118e-006
1.213411662762407e+000    9.583445148564351e-013
1.213411662762230e+000    -4.440892098500626e-016

Zero found at
1.213411662762230e+000
```

Note:

- The variable `y` in the function files `f.m` and `df.m` is the *output argument*. It is a dummy variable, and defines how output will be sent back to the outside world.

By the way, you realize of course that you can use your own functions from the command line, don't you? For example,

```
>> f(2)
```

should return 7 with `f.m` defined as above.

10.2 Basic rules

Try the following more general example, which returns the mean (`avg`) and standard deviation (`stdev`) of the values in the vector `x`. Although there are two MATLAB functions to do this

(mean and std), it is useful to have them combined into one. Write a function file stats.m:

```
function [avg, stdev] = stats( x )           % function definition line
% STATS      Mean and standard deviation    % H1 line
%           Returns mean (avg) and standard % Help text
%           deviation (stdev) of the data in the
%           vector x, using Matlab functions

avg = mean(x);                             % function body
stdev = std(x);
```

Now test it in the Command Window with some random numbers, e.g.

```
r = rand(100,1);
[a, s] = stats(r);
```

Note the following points about function M-files in general:

- **General form of a function**

A function M-file *name*.m has the following general form:

```
function [ outarg1, outarg2, ... ] = name( inarg1, inarg2, ... )
% comments to be displayed with help
...
outarg1 = ... ;

outarg2 = ... ;
...
```

- **function keyword**

The function file *must* start with the keyword function (in the function definition line).

- **Input and output arguments**

The input and output arguments (*inarg1*, *outarg1*, etc.) are ‘dummy’ variables, and serve only to define the function’s means of communication with the workspace. Other variable names may therefore be used in their place when the function is called (referenced).

You can think of the *actual* input arguments being copied into the dummy input arguments when the function is called. So when `stats(r)` is called in the above example, the actual input argument *r* is copied into the input argument *x* in the function file. When the function *returns* (i.e. execution of it is completed) the dummy output arguments *avg* and *std* in the function file are copied into the actual output arguments *a* and *s*.

- **Multiple output arguments**

If there is more than one output argument, the output arguments *must* be separated by commas and enclosed in square brackets in the function definition line, as shown.

However, when a function is called with more than one output argument, the actual output arguments may be separated by commas or spaces.

If there is only one output argument square brackets are not necessary.

- **Naming convention for functions**

Function names must follow the MATLAB rules for variable names.

If the filename and the function definition line name are different, the internal name is ignored.

- **Help text**

When you type `help function_name`, MATLAB displays the comment lines that appear between the function definition line and the first non-comment (executable or blank) line.

The first comment line is called the *H1 line*. The `lookfor` function searches on and displays only the H1 line. The H1 lines of all M-files in a directory are displayed under the **Description** column of the Desktop Current Directory browser.

You can make help text for an entire directory by creating a file with the name `Contents.m` that resides in the directory. This file must contain only comment lines. The contents of `Contents.m` is displayed with the command

```
help directory_name
```

If a directory does not have a `Contents.m` file, this command displays the H1 line of each M-file in the directory.

- **Local variables: scope**

Any variables defined inside a function are inaccessible outside the function. Such variables are called *local variables*—they exist only inside the function, which has its own workspace separate from the base workspace of variables defined in the Command Window.

This means that if you use a variable as a loop index, say, inside a function, it will not clash with a variable of the same name in the workspace or in another function.

You can think of the *scope* of a variable as the range of lines over which the variable is accessible.

- **Global variables**

Variables which are defined in the base workspace are not normally accessible inside functions, i.e. their scope is restricted to the workspace itself, unless they have been declared `global`, e.g.

```
global PLINK PLONK
```

If several functions, and possibly the base workspace, all declare particular variables as `global`, then they all share single copies of those variables. MATLAB recommends that global variables be typed in capital letters, to remind you that they are global.

The function `isglobal(A)` returns 1 if `A` is global, and 0 otherwise.

The command `who global` gives a list of global variables.

Use `clear global` to make all variables non-global, or `clear PLINK` to make `PLINK` non-global.

- **Persistent variables**

A variable in a function may be declared `persistent`. Local variables normally cease to exist when a function returns. Persistent variables, however, remain in existence between function calls. A persistent variable is initialized to the empty array.

In the following example, the persistent variable `count` is used to count how many times the function `test` is called:

```
function test
persistent count
if isempty(count)
    count = 1
else
    count = count + 1
end
```

Persistent variables remain in memory until the M-file is cleared or changed, e.g.

```
clear test
```

The function `mlock` inside an M-file prevents the M-file from being cleared. A locked M-file is unlocked with `munlock`. The function `mislocked` indicates whether an M-file can be cleared or not.

The Help entry on `persistent` declares confidently: ‘It is an error to declare a variable persistent if a variable with the same name exists in the current workspace.’ However, this is definitely not the case at the time of writing (I tried it!).

- **Functions that do not return values**

You might want to write a function that doesn't return values (such functions are called *procedures* or *subroutines* in languages like Pascal and Fortran, and *void* in C++ and Java). In that case you simply omit the output argument(s) and the equal sign in the function definition line. For example, the following function will display n asterisks:

```
function stars(n)
    asteriks = char(abs('*')*ones(1,n));
    disp( asteriks )
```

See Chapter 12 for an explanation of how it works.

Write such a function file (`stars.m`), and test it out, e.g. `stars(13)` should produce 13 asterisks.

- **Vector arguments**

It should come as no surprise that input and output arguments may be vectors, e.g. the following function generates a vector of n random rolls of a die:

```
function d = dice( n )
    d = floor( 6 * rand(1, n) + 1 );
```

When an output argument is a vector, it is initialized each time the function is called, any previous elements being cleared. Its size at any moment is therefore determined by the most recent call of the function. For example, suppose the function `test.m` is defined as

```
function a = test
    a(3) = 92;
```

Then if `b` is defined in the base workspace as

```
b =
     1     2     3     4     5     6
```

the statement

```
b = test
```

results in

```
b =
     0     0    92
```

- **How function arguments are passed**

If a function changes the value of any of its input arguments, the change is *not reflected* in the actual input argument on return to the workspace (unless the function is called with the same input and output argument—see below). For the technically minded, input arguments appear to be passed *by value*.

You might think that passing a large matrix as an input argument by value is wasteful of memory, and you would be correct. However, the designers of MATLAB were aware of this, and so an input argument is only passed by value if a function modifies it (although the modification is not reflected on return). If a function does not modify an input argument it is passed by reference.

- **Simulated pass by reference**

A function may be called with the same actual input and output argument. For example, the following function `prune.m` removes all the zero elements from its input argument:

```
function y = prune(x)
y = x(x ~= 0);
```

(if you can't figure out why, refer to **Subscripting with logical vectors** in Chapter 5).

You can use it to remove all the zero elements of the vector `x` as follows:

```
x = prune(x)
```

- **Checking the number of function arguments**

A function may be called with all, some, or none of its input arguments. If called with no arguments, the parentheses must be omitted. You may not use more input arguments than appear in its definition. The same applies to output arguments—you may specify all, some, or none of them when you use the function. If you call a function with no output arguments, the value of the first one in the definition is returned.

There are times when a function may need to know how many input/output arguments are used on a particular call. In that case, the functions `nargin` and `nargout` can be used to determine the number of actual input and output arguments. For example,

```
function y = foo(a, b, c);
disp( nargin );
...
```

will display the number of input arguments present on each call of `foo`.

- **Passing a variable number of arguments**

The functions `varargin` and `varargout` allow you to call a function with any number of input or output arguments. Since this facility involves packing arguments into a *cell array*, discussion of it is deferred to Chapter 13.

Subfunctions

A function M-file may contain the code for more than one function. The first function in a file is the *primary* function, and is the one invoked with the M-file name. Additional functions in the file are called *subfunctions*, and are visible only to the primary function and to other subfunctions.

Each subfunction begins with its own function definition line. Subfunctions follow each other in any order *after* the primary function.

Private functions

A private function is a function residing in a subdirectory with the name `private`. Private functions are visible only to functions in the parent directory. See Help for more details.

P-code files

The first time a function is called during a MATLAB session it is parsed ('compiled') into pseudocode and stored in memory to obviate the need for it to be parsed again during the current session. The pseudocode remains in memory until you clear it with `clear function_name` (see Help for all the possibilities with `clear`).

You can use the `pcode` function to save the parsed version of an M-file for use in later MATLAB sessions, or by users from whom you want to hide your algorithms. For example, the command

```
pcode stats
```

parses `stats.m` and stores the resulting pseudocode in the file named `stats.p`.

MATLAB is very efficient at parsing so producing your own P-code files seldom makes much of a speed difference, except in the case of large GUI applications where many M-files have to be parsed before the application surfaces.

Improving M-file performance with the profiler

The MATLAB Profiler enables you to see where the bottlenecks in your programs are, e.g. which functions are consuming most of the time. With this information you can often redesign programs to be more efficient. See **Using MATLAB: Development Environment: Improving M-File Performance - the Profiler**.

10.3 Function handles

Our script file `newtgen.m` in Section 10.1 solves the equation $f(x) = 0$, where $f(x)$ is defined in the function file with the specific name `f.m`. This is restrictive because to solve a different equation `f.m` has to be edited first. To make `newtgen` even more general, it can be rewritten as a function M-file itself, with a *handle* to `f.m` as an input argument. This process is made possible by the built-in function `feval`, and the concept of a function handle, which we now examine.

Try the following on the command line:

```
fhandle = @sqrt;
feval(fhandle, 9)
feval(fhandle, 25)
```

Can you see that `feval(fhandle, x)` is the same as `sqrt(x)`? The statement

```
fhandle = @sqrt
```

creates a *handle* to the function `sqrt`. The handle provides a way of referring to the function, for example in a list of input arguments to another function. A MATLAB function handle is similar to a pointer in C++, although more general.

If you have still got a function file `f.m` defined for $f(x) = x^3 + x - 3$, verify that

```
feval(@f, 2)
```

for example, returns the same value as `f(2)`.

- In general, the first argument of `feval` is a handle to the function to be evaluated in terms of the subsequent arguments of `feval`.

You can use `feval` inside a function to evaluate another function whose handle is passed as an argument, as we will see now. As an example, we would like to rewrite our `newtgen` script as a function `newtfun`, to be called as follows,

```
[x f conv] = newtfun( fh, dfh, x0 )
```

where `fh` and `dfh` are handles for the M-files containing $f(x)$ and $f'(x)$ respectively, and `x0` is the initial guess. The outputs are the zero, the function value at the zero, and an argument

conv to indicate whether or not the process has converged. The complete M-file newtfun.m is as follows:

```
function [x, f, conv] = newtfun(fh, dfh, x0)
% NEWTON      Uses Newton's method to solve f(x) = 0.
%            fh is handle to f(x), dfh is handle to f'(x).
%            Initial guess is x0.
%            Returns final value of x, f(x), and
%            conv (1 = convergence, 0 = divergence)

steps = 0;           % iteration counter
x = x0;
re = 1e-8;          % required relative error
myrel = 1;

while myrel > re & (steps < 20)
    xold = x;
    x = x - feval(fh, x)/feval(dfh, x);
    steps = steps + 1;
    disp( [x feval(fh, x)] )
    myrel = abs((x-xold)/x);
end;

if myrel <= re
    conv = 1;
else
    conv = 0;
end;

f = feval(fh, x);
```

Try it out. Verify that you can call newtfun with less than three output variables. Also check help newton.

A function handle gives you more than just a reference to the function. See **Using MATLAB: Programming and Data Types: Function Handles**.

Functions, such as feval, fplot, newtfun, etc. which take function handles as arguments are referred to by MATLAB as *function functions*, as opposed to functions which take numeric arrays as arguments.

Use of a function handle to evaluate a function supersedes the earlier use of feval where a string containing the function's name was passed as an argument.

10.4 Command/function duality

In the earliest versions of MATLAB there was a clear distinction between *commands* like

```
clear
save junk x y z
whos
```

and *functions* like

```
sin(x)
plot(x, y)
```

If commands had any arguments they had to be separated by blanks with no brackets. Commands altered the environment, but didn't return results. New commands could not be created with M-files.

From Version 4 onwards commands and functions are 'duals', in that commands are considered to be functions taking string arguments. So

```
axis off
```

is the same as

```
axis( 'off' )
```

Other examples are

```
disp Error!  
hold('on')
```

This duality makes it possible to generate command arguments with string manipulations, and also to create new commands with M-files.

10.5 Function name resolution

Remember that a variable in the workspace can 'hide' a built-in function of the same name, and a built-in function can hide an M-file.

Specifically, when MATLAB encounters a name it resolves it in the following steps:

1. Checks if the name is a variable.
2. Checks if the name is a *subfunction* of the calling function.
3. Checks if the name is a *private function*.
4. Checks if the name is in the directories specified by MATLAB's search path.

MATLAB therefore always tries to use a name as a variable first, before trying to use it as a script or function.

10.6 Debugging M-files

Run-time errors (as opposed to syntax errors) which occur inside function M-files are often hard to fix, because the function workspace is lost when the error forces a return to the base workspace. The Editor/Debugger enables you to get inside a function while it is running, to see what's going wrong.

Debugging a script

To see how to debug interactively, let's first try the script `newtgen.m` in Section 10.3. Go through the following steps.

- Open `newtgen.m` with the MATLAB Editor/Debugger. (Incidentally, have you found out that you can run the Editor directly from the command line, e.g. with `edit newtgen`).

You will have noticed that the lines in the Editor window are numbered. You can generate these line numbers from the command line for reference purposes with the command `dbtype`:

```
dbtype newtgen
```

```

1      % Newton's method in general
2      % exclude zero roots!
3
4      steps = 0;                % iteration counter
5      x = input( 'Initial guess: ' ); % estimate of root
6      re = 1e-8;                % required relative error
7      myrel = 1;
8
9      while myrel > re & (steps < 20)
10     xold = x;
11     x = x - f(x)/df(x);
12     steps = steps + 1;
13     disp( [x f(x)] )
14     myrel = abs((x-xold)/x);
15     end;
16
17     if myrel <= re
18         disp( 'Zero found at' )
19         disp( x )
20     else
21         disp( 'Zero NOT found' )
22     end;

```

- To get into Debug mode you need to set a *breakpoint* just before where you think the problem might be. Alternatively, if you just want to ‘step through’ a script line by line, set a breakpoint at the first executable statement. The column to the right of the line numbers is called the *breakpoint alley*. You can only set breakpoints at executable statements—these are indicated by dashes in the breakpoint alley.
Set a breakpoint at line 4 (`steps = 0;`) by clicking in the breakpoint alley. You can remove a breakpoint by clicking on the breakpoint icon, or using the Editor’s **Breakpoints** menu (this menu also allows you to specify stopping conditions). You can also set/clear breakpoints on the current line with the set/clear breakpoint button on the toolbar.
- Having set your breakpoints, run the script in the Editor by clicking the run button in the toolbar, or with **Debug -> Run (F5)**.
You can also run the script from the command line.
- When the script starts to run, there are two things in particular to notice.
First, the symbol κ appears to left of the command-line prompt to remind you that MATLAB is in debug mode.
Second, a green arrow appears just to the right of the breakpoint in the Editor. The arrow indicates the next statement which is *about to be* executed.
- Now step through the script with **Debug -> Step (F10)**. Note when line 5 is executed you need to enter the value of `x` at the command line.
- When you get to line 11 (`x = x - f(x)/df(x);`) in this way, use **Debug -> Step In (F11)** and the Debugger will take you into the functions `f.m` and `df.m`.
- Continue with **F10**. Note that output appears in the Command Window as each `disp` statement is executed.
- There are a number of ways of examining variable values in debug mode:
 1. Position the cursor to the left of the variable in the Editor. Its current value appears in a box—this is called a *datatip*.

2. Type the name of the variable in the Command Window.
3. Use the Array Editor: open the Workspace browser and double-click a variable. If you arrange your windows carefully you can watch the value of a variable change in the Array Editor while you step through a program.

Note that you can view variables only in the current workspace. The Editor has a **Stack** field to the right of the toolbar where you can select the workspace. For example, if you have stepped into `f.m` the current workspace is shown as `f`. At this point you can view variables in the `newtgen` workspace by selecting `newtgen` in the **Stack** field.

You can use the Array Editor or the command line to change the value of a variable. You can then continue to see how the script performs with the new value.

- Another useful debugging feature is **Debug -> Go Until Cursor**. This enables you to continue running the script to the line where you've positioned the cursor.
- To quit debugging click the exit debug mode button in the Editor/Debugger toolbar, or select **Debug -> Exit Debug Mode**.

If you forget to quit debugging you won't be able to get rid of the `K` prompt on the command line!

Debugging a function

You can't run a function directly in the Editor/Debugger—you have to set a breakpoint in the function and run it from the command line. Let's use `newtfun.m` as an example.

- Open `newtfun.m` in the Editor/Debugger.
- Set a breakpoint at line 8 (`steps = 0;`).
- In the Command Window set up function handles for `f` and `df` and call `newtfun`:

```
fhand = @f;
dfhand = @df;
[x f conv] = newtfun(fhand, dfhand, 10)
```

- Note that MATLAB goes into debug mode and takes you to the breakpoint in `newtfun`. Now you can continue debugging as before.

Debugging may also be done from the command line with the debug functions. See `help debug`.

10.7 Recursion

Many (mathematical) functions are defined *recursively*, i.e. in terms of simpler cases of themselves, e.g. the factorial function may be defined recursively as

$$n! = n \times (n - 1)!$$

as long as `1!` is defined as `1`. MATLAB allows functions to call themselves; this process is called *recursion*. The factorial function may be written recursively in an M-file `fact.m` like this:

```
function y = fact(n)
% FACT      Recursive definition of n!

if n > 1
    y = n * fact(n-1);
else
    y = 1;
end;
```

Recursive functions are usually written in this way: an `if` statement handles the general recursive definition; the `else` part handles the special case ($n = 1$).

Although recursion appears deceptively simple, it is an advanced topic, as the following experiment demonstrates. Insert the statement `disp(n)` into the definition of `fact` immediately *above* the `if` statement, and run `fact(5)` from the command line. The effect is what you might expect: the integers 5 to 1 in descending order. Now move `disp(n)` to *below* the `if` statement, and see what happens. The result is the integers 1 to 5 in *ascending* order now, which is rather surprising.

In the first case, the value of `n` is displayed each time `fact` is called, and the output is obvious enough. However, there is the world of difference between a recursive function being *called*, and *executed*. In the second case, the `disp` statement is only executed after the `if` has finished executing. And when is that exactly? Well, when the initial call to `fact` takes place, `n` has the value 5, so the first statement in the `if` is invoked. However, the value of `fact(4)` is not known at this stage, so a *copy* is made of all the statements in the function which will need to be executed once the value of `fact(4)` is known. The reference to `fact(4)` makes `fact` call itself, this time with a value of 4 for `n`. Again, the first statement in the `if` is invoked, and MATLAB discovers that it doesn't know the value of `fact(3)` this time. So another (different) copy is made of all the statements that will have to be executed once the value of `fact(3)` is known. And so each time `fact` is called, separate copies are made of all the statements *yet to be executed*. Finally, MATLAB joyfully finds a value of `n` (1) for which it actually knows the value of `fact`, so it can at last begin to execute (in reverse order) the pile of statements which have been damming up inside the memory.

This discussion illustrates the point that recursion should be treated with respect. While it is perfectly in order to use it in an example like this, it can chew up huge amounts of computer memory and time.

Summary

- Good structured programming requires real problem-solving programs to be broken down into function M-files.
- The name of a function in the function definition line should be the same as the name of the M-file under which it is saved. The M-file must have the extension `.m`.
- A function may have input and output arguments, which are usually its only way of communicating with the workspace. Input/output arguments are dummy variables (placeholders).
- Comment lines up to the first non-comment line in a function are displayed when `help` is requested for the function.
- Variables defined inside a function are local variables and are inaccessible outside the function.
- Variables in the workspace are inaccessible inside a function unless they have been declared `global`.
- A function does not have to have any output arguments.
- Input arguments have the appearance of being passed by value to a function. This means that changes made to an input argument inside a function are not reflected in the actual input argument when the function returns.
- A function may be called with fewer than its full number of input/output arguments.
- The functions `nargin` and `nargout` indicate how many input and output arguments are used on a particular function call.
- Variables declared `persistent` inside a function retain their values between calls to the function.
- Subfunctions in an M-file are accessible only to the primary function and to other subfunctions in the same M-file.
- Private functions are functions residing in a sub-directory named `private` and are accessible only to functions in the parent directory.
- Functions may be parsed (compiled) with the `pcode` function. The resulting code has the extension `.p` and is called a P-code file.
- The Profiler enables you to find out where your programs spend most of their time.
- A handle for a function is created with `@`.

A function may be represented by its handle. In particular the handle may be passed as an argument to another function.

- `feval` evaluates a function whose handle is passed to it as an argument.
- MATLAB first tries to use a name as a variable, then as a built-in function, and finally as one of the various types of function.
- Command/function duality means that new commands can be created with function M-files, and that command arguments may be generated with string manipulations.
- The Editor/Debugger enables you to work through a script or function line-by-line in debug mode, examining and changing variables on the way.
- A function may call itself. This feature is called recursion.

Exercises

- 10.1 Change the function `stars` of Section 10.2 to a function `pretty` so that it will draw a line of any specified character. The character to be used must be passed as an additional input (string) argument, e.g. `pretty(6, '$')` should draw six dollar symbols.
- 10.2 Write a script `newquot.m` which uses the Newton quotient $[f(x+h) - f(x)]/h$ to estimate the first derivative of $f(x) = x^3$ at $x = 1$, using successively smaller values of h : 1, 10^{-1} , 10^{-2} , etc. Use a function M-file for $f(x)$.
Rewrite `newquot` as a function M-file able to take a handle for $f(x)$ as an input argument.
- 10.3 Write and test a function `double(x)` which doubles its input argument, i.e. the statement `x = double(x)` should double the value in `x`.
- 10.4 Write and test a function `swop(x, y)` which will exchange the values of its two input arguments.
- 10.5 Write your own MATLAB function to compute the exponential function directly from the Taylor series:

$$e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \dots$$

- The series should end when the last term is less than 10^{-6} . Test your function against the built-in function `exp`, but be careful not to make x too large—this could cause rounding error.
- 10.6 If a random variable X is distributed normally with zero mean and unit standard deviation, the probability that $0 \leq X \leq x$ is given by the standard normal function $\Phi(x)$. This is usually looked up in tables, but it may be approximated as follows:

$$\Phi(x) = 0.5 - r(at + bt^2 + ct^3),$$

where $a = 0.4361836$, $b = -0.1201676$, $c = 0.937298$, $r = \exp(-0.5x^2)/\sqrt{2\pi}$, and $t = 1/(1 + 0.3326x)$.

Write a function to compute $\Phi(x)$, and use it in a program to write out its values for $0 \leq x \leq 4$ in steps of 0.1. Check: $\Phi(1) = 0.3413$.

- 10.7 Write a function

```
function [x1, x2, flag] = quad( a, b, c )
```

which computes the roots of the quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$. The input arguments `a`, `b` and `c` (which may take any values) are the coefficients of the quadratic, and `x1`, `x2` are the two roots (if they exist), which may be equal. See Figure 3.1 in Chapter 3 for the structure

plan. The output argument `flag` must return the following values, according to the number and type of roots:

- 0: no solution ($a = b = 0, c \neq 0$);
- 1: one real root ($a = 0, b \neq 0$, so the root is $-c/b$);
- 2: two real or complex roots (which could be equal if they are real);
- 99: any x is a solution ($a = b = c = 0$).

Test your function on the data in Exercise 3.5.

10.8 The Fibonacci numbers are generated by the sequence

$$1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, \dots$$

Can you work out what the next term is? Write a recursive function `f(n)` to compute the Fibonacci numbers F_0 to F_{20} , using the relationship

$$F_n = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2},$$

given that $F_0 = F_1 = 1$.

10.9 The first three Legendre polynomials are $P_0(x) = 1$, $P_1(x) = x$, and $P_2(x) = (3x^2 - 1)/2$. There is a general *recurrence* formula for Legendre polynomials, by which they are defined recursively:

$$(n + 1)P_{n+1}(x) - (2n + 1)xP_n(x) + nP_{n-1}(x) = 0.$$

Define a recursive function `p(n, x)` to generate Legendre polynomials, given the form of P_0 and P_1 . Use your function to compute `p(2, x)` for a few values of x , and compare your results with those using the analytic form of $P_2(x)$ given above.

Part II

More Advanced Topics and Applications

Part I has been concerned with those aspects of MATLAB which you need in order to get to grips with the essentials of MATLAB and of scientific programming. Part II contains a mixture of interesting applications and more advanced topics which don't really fall under the heading of 'essentials'.

11

Vectors as arrays: working with subscripts

Objective

The objective of this chapter is to enable you to

- solve problems which involve working carefully with array subscripts.

In MATLAB an array is just another name for a vector. So why have a whole chapter on arrays, when we have already been using vectors for most of the book? It is helpful to talk about arrays (as opposed to vectors) when we are concerned with handling individual elements by means of their subscripts, rather than with the vector as a whole.

In this chapter we look at a number of problems which are best solved by treating vectors as arrays, usually with the help of `for` loops.

11.1 Update processes

In Chapter 8 (**Update processes**) we considered the problem of calculating the temperature of orange juice (OJ) in a can as it cools in a fridge. This is an example of an *update process*, where the main variable is repeatedly updated over a period of time. We now examine how to solve this problem more generally.

The OJ is initially at temperature 25° C when it is placed in the fridge, where the ambient temperature F is 10°. The standard way to solve such an update process is to break the time period up into a number of small steps, each of length dt . If T_i is the temperature at the beginning of step i , we can get T_{i+1} from T_i as follows:

$$T_{i+1} = T_i - K dt (T_i - F), \quad (11.1)$$

where K is a physical constant, and units are chosen so that time is in minutes.

Unit time steps

We first solve the problem using a unit time step, i.e. $dt = 1$. The simplest way is to use scalars for the time and the temperature, as we saw in Chapter 8 (although we didn't use a unit time step there):

```
K = 0.05;  
F = 10;  
T = 25;                                % initial temperature of OJ
```

```

for time = 1:100           % time in minutes
    T = T - K * (T - F);   % dt = 1
    if rem(time, 5) == 0
        disp( [time T] )
    end
end
end;

```

Note the use of `rem` to display the results every 5 minutes: when `time` is an integer multiple of 5 its remainder when divided by 5 will be zero.

While this is undoubtedly the easiest way of writing the script, we cannot easily plot the graph of temperature against time. In order to do that, `time` and `T` must be vectors. The index of the `for` loop must be used as the subscript of each element of `T`. Here's the script (`update1.m`):

```

K = 0.05;
F = 10;
time = 0:100;           % initialize vector time
T = zeros(1,101);      % pre-allocate vector T
T(1) = 25;              % initial temperature of OJ

for i = 1:100           % time in minutes
    T(i+1) = T(i) - K * (T(i) - F); % construct T
end;

disp([ time(1:5:101)' T(1:5:101)' ]); % display results
plot(time, T), grid    % every 5 mins

```

See Figure 11.1 for typical graphs.

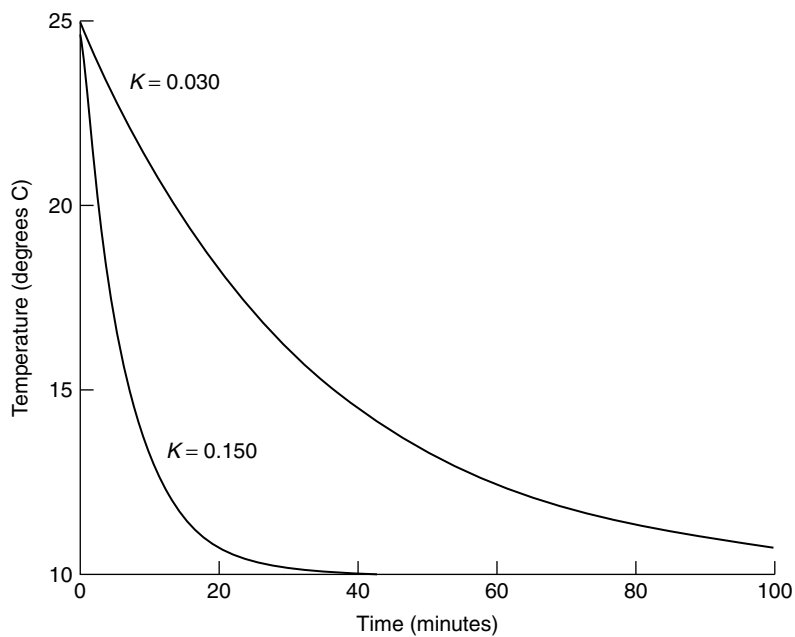


Figure 11.1 Cooling curves

Note:

- The statement `time = 0:100` sets up a (row) vector for time where `time(1)` has the value 0 minutes, and `time(101)` has the value 100 minutes. This is necessary because the first subscript of a MATLAB vector must be 1.
- The statement `T = zeros(1,101)` sets up a corresponding (row) vector for the temperature, with every element initialized to zero (again there must be 101 elements, because the first element is for the temperature at time zero). This process is called *pre-allocation*. It serves two important purposes.
 - (a) Firstly, it clears a vector of the same name left over from a previous run. This could cause a conflict when attempting to display or plot `T` against `time`, if the vectors have different sizes. To see this, run `update1` as it stands. It should work perfectly. Now suppose you decide to do the calculations over a shorter time period, say 50 minutes. Remove the `zeros` statement, and make the following additional two changes and re-run the script (but *don't* clear the workspace):


```

time = 0:50;           % initialize vector time
...
for i = 1:50          % time in minutes

```

This time you get an error message:

```

??? Error using ==> plot
Vectors must be the same lengths.

```

`whos` will reveal that `time` is correctly 51-by-1, but `T` is still 101-by-1. The `plot` command naturally requires these vectors to have the same lengths.

The problem is that, while the operation `0:50` redefines `time` correctly, the `for` loop does not have the same effect on `T`. Since `T` is being updated element by element, the unused elements from 51 to 101 from the previous run are left untouched in the workspace. Pre-allocation of the correct number of elements to `T` with `zeros` avoids this problem.

- (b) Secondly, although the script will work without the `zeros` statement, as we have seen, it will be much *slower*, since then `T` has to be *redimensioned* during each repeat of the `for` loop, in order to make space for a new element each time.

It's extremely instructive to do an experiment using a vector size of 10000 elements, say, i.e.

```

time = 0:9999;           % initialize vector time
T = zeros(1,10000);     % pre-allocate vector T
...
for i = 1:10000
...

```

(and comment out the `disp` and `plot` statements, since these will obscure the issue). My Pentium II takes 0.99 seconds to run the script with pre-allocation of `T`, but 13.19 seconds to run without pre-allocation—more than 10 times longer. This could be a critical consideration in a script which does a lot of such element-by-element processing.

- The first element of `T` is set to the initial temperature of the OJ. This is the temperature at time zero.
- The `for` loop computes the values for `T(2), ..., T(101)`. This arrangement ensures that temperature `T(i)` corresponds to `time(i)`.
- The colon operator is used to display the results at 5-minute intervals.

Non-unit time steps

It's not always appropriate and/or accurate enough to take $dt = 1$ in Equation (11.1). There is a standard way of generating the solution vector in MATLAB, given (almost) any value of dt . We introduce a more general notation to do this.

Call the initial time a , and the final time b . If we want time steps of length dt , the number m of such steps will be

$$m = (b - a)/dt.$$

The time at the *end* of step i will therefore be $a + i dt$.

The following script, `update2.m`, implements this scheme. It has some additional features. It prompts you for a value of dt , and checks that this value gives an integer number of steps m . It also asks you for the output interval `opint` (the intervals in minutes at which the results are displayed in table form) and checks that this interval is an integer multiple of dt . Try the script with same sample values, e.g. $dt = 0.4$ and `opint = 4`.

```
K = 0.05;
F = 10;
a = 0;           % initial time
b = 100;        % final time
load train
dt = input( 'dt: ' );
opint = input( 'output interval (minutes): ' );
if opint/dt ~= fix(opint/dt)
    sound(y, Fs)
    disp( 'output interval is not a multiple of dt!' )
    break
end;

m = (b - a) / dt; % m steps of length dt
if fix(m) ~= m   % make sure m is integer
    sound(y, Fs)
    disp( 'm is not an integer - try again!' );
    break
end;

T = zeros(1,m+1); % pre-allocate (m+1) elements
time = a:dt:b;
T(1) = 25;        % initial temperature

for i = 1:m
    T(i+1) = T(i) - K * dt * (T(i) - F);
end;

disp( [time(1:opint/dt:m+1)' T(1:opint/dt:m+1)'] )
plot(time, T),grid
```

Note:

- The vectors `T` and `time` must each have $m + 1$ elements, because there are m time steps, and we need an extra element for the initial value of each vector.
- The expression `opint/dt` gives the index increment for displaying the results, e.g. $dt = 0.1$ and `opint = 0.5` displays every (0.5/0.1)th element, i.e. every 5th element.

Using a function

The really cool way of solving this problem is to write a function to do it. This makes it a lot easier to generate a table of results for different values of dt , say, using the function from the command line. Here is `update2.m` rewritten as a function `cooler.m`:

```
function [time, T, m] = cooler( a, b, K, F, dt, T0 )

m = (b - a) / dt;      % m steps of length dt
if fix(m) ~= m        % make sure m is integer
    disp( 'm is not an integer - try again!' );
    break
end;

T = zeros(1,m+1);     % pre-allocate
time = a:dt:b;
T(1) = T0;            % initial temperature

for i = 1:m
    T(i+1) = T(i) - K * dt * (T(i) - F);
end;
```

Suppose you want to display a table of temperatures against time at 5 minute intervals, using $dt = 1$ and $dt = 0.1$. Here is how to do it (in the Command Window):

```
dt = 1;
[t T m] = cooler(0, 100, 0.05, 10, dt, 25);
table(:,1) = t(1:5/dt:m+1)';
table(:,2) = T(1:5/dt:m+1)';
dt = 0.1;
[t T m] = cooler(0, 100, 0.05, 10, dt, 25);
table(:,3) = T(1:5/dt:m+1)';
format bank
disp(table)
```

Output:

0	25.00	25.00
5.00	21.61	21.67
10.00	18.98	19.09
...		
100.00	10.09	10.10

Note:

- The advantage of using a function which generates a vector output variable is that even if you forget to pre-allocate the vector inside the function (with `zeros`) MATLAB automatically clears any previous versions of the output vector before returning from the function.
- The variable `table` is a two-dimensional array (or matrix). Recall that the colon operator may be used to indicate all elements of a matrix in a row or column. So `table(:,1)` means the elements in every row and column 1, i.e. the entire first column. The vectors `t` and `T` are row vectors, so they must be transposed before being inserted into columns 1 and 2 of `table`. The third column of `table` is inserted in a similar way.
- The results in the third column (for $dt = 0.1$) will be more accurate.

Exact solution

This cooling problem has an exact mathematical solution. The temperature $T(t)$ at time t is given by the formula

$$T(t) = F + (T_0 - F)e^{-Kt}, \quad (11.2)$$

where T_0 is the initial temperature. You can insert values for this exact solution into a fourth column of `table`, by vectorizing the formula, as follows:

```
tab(:,4) = 10 + (T(1)-10)*exp(-0.05 * t(1:5/dt:m+1)');
```

The enlarged table should look something like this:

0	25.00	25.00	25.00
5.00	21.61	21.67	21.68
10.00	18.98	19.09	19.10
...			

Note that the numerical solution generated by Equation (11.1) gets more accurate as dt gets smaller. That is because Equation (11.2) (the exact solution) is derived from Equation (11.1) *in the limit* as $dt \rightarrow 0$.

Exercise

To complete the analysis of the cooling problem, you may like to superimpose graphs for different values of K and draw them in different colours. It would also be useful to label each graph at some convenient place, e.g. with the label ' $K = 0.08$ '. The command

```
gtext('text')
```

causes an arrow to appear on the graphics screen. You can position the arrow with a mouse or the arrow keys. When you click (or press **Enter**), the specified text appears at that point.

The function `gtext` takes a string argument. If you want to label with a variable numeric value, use `sprintf` to convert a number into a string. It works just like `fprintf`, except that the output goes into a string variable, e.g.

```
gtext(sprintf('K = %5.3f', K))
```

- Draw some graphs, on the same set of axes, for different values of K , in different colours, and label them. Figure 11.1 shows what to aim for. Also superimpose the exact solution, given by Equation (11.2).

Plots can also be labelled interactively in plot editing mode or with the Properties Editor.

11.2 Frequencies, bar charts and histograms

A random walk

Imagine an ant walking along a straight line, e.g. the x -axis. She starts at $x = 40$. She moves in steps of one unit along the line. Each step is to the left or the right with equal probability. We would like a visual representation of how much time she spends at each position.

Start by running the following script, `ant.m`:

```
f = zeros(1,100);
x = 40;
```

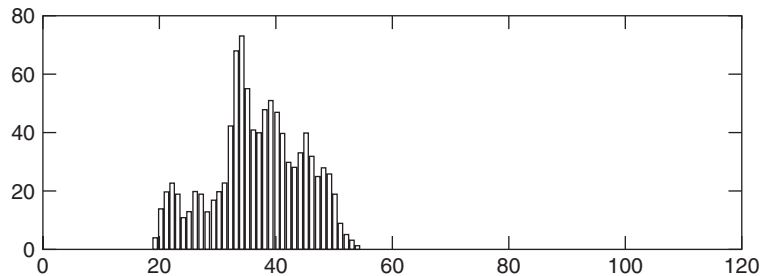


Figure 11.2 Random walk frequencies

```

for i = 1:1000
    r = rand;
    if r >= 0.5
        x = x + 1;
    else
        x = x - 1;
    end
    f(x) = f(x) + 1;
end
    
```

Now enter the statement `bar(f)` in the Command Window. You should get a graph which is similar to the one in Figure 11.2.

Note:

- The function `rand` returns a random number in the range 0–1. If it’s greater than 0.5, the ant moves right ($x = x + 1$), otherwise she moves left ($x = x - 1$).
- The vector `f` has 100 elements, initially all zero. We define $f(x)$ as the number of times the ant lands at position x . Suppose her first step is to the right, so x has the value 41. The statement

$$f(x) = f(x) + 1$$

then increases the value of $f(41)$ to 1, meaning that she has been there once. When she next wanders past this value of x , $f(41)$ will be increased to 2, meaning she’s been there twice.

When I ran this script, the final value of $f(41)$ was 33—the number of times the ant was there.

- $f(x)$ is called a *frequency distribution*, and the graph obtained from `bar(f)` is called a *bar graph*. Each element of `f` is represented by a vertical bar of proportional height. See also `help bar`.
- The script `ant.m` *simulates* the random movement of the ant. If you re-run it, you will get a different bar graph, because `rand` will generate a different sequence of random numbers. Simulation is discussed more fully in Chapter 17.

Histograms

Another helpful way of representing data is with a *histogram*.

As an example, suppose 12 students write a test and obtain the following marks (expressed as percentages), which are assigned to the vector `m`:

```

0 25 29 35 50 55 55 59 72 75 95 100
    
```

The statement `hist(m)` will draw a histogram. Try it. The histogram shows the distribution of marks in 10 ‘bins’ (categories) which are equally spaced between the minimum (0) and maximum (100) marks

in the set of data. The number of bins (10 by default) can be specified by a second argument, e.g. `hist(m, 25)`.

To generate the frequencies plotted by `hist` use the following form (which does not actually draw the histogram):

```
[n x] = hist(m)
```

`n` is a vector containing the frequencies, viz.

```
1    0    2    1    0    4    0    2    0    1    1
```

For example, there is one mark in the first bin (0–9), none in the second (10–19), two in the third, etc.

The second output vector `x` contains the midpoints of the bins, such that `bar(x, n)` plots the histogram. See Help for more details.

Note the subtle difference between a histogram and a bar graph. The values plotted by `hist` are computed from the distribution of values in a vector, whereas `bar` generates a bar graph directly from the values themselves.

11.3 Sorting

One of the standard applications of arrays is sorting a list of numbers into, say, ascending order. Although MATLAB has its own sorting function (`sort`), you may be interested in how sorting algorithms actually work.

Bubble Sort

The basic idea is that the unsorted list is assigned to a vector. The numbers are then ordered by a process which essentially passes through the vector many times, swapping consecutive elements that are in the wrong order, until all the elements are in the right order. Such a process is called a Bubble Sort, because the smaller numbers rise to the top of the list, like bubbles of air in water. (In fact, in the version shown below, the largest number will ‘sink’ to the bottom of the list after the first pass, which really makes it a ‘Lead Ball’ sort.) There are many other methods of sorting, such as the Quick Sort, which may be found in most textbooks on computer science. These are generally more efficient than the Bubble Sort, but its advantage is that it is by far the easiest method to program. A structure plan for the Bubble Sort is as follows:

1. Input the list X
2. Set N to the length of X
3. Repeat $N - 1$ times with counter K :
 - Repeat $N - K$ times with counter J :
 - If $X_j > X_{j+1}$ then
 - Swap the contents of X_j and X_{j+1}
4. Stop since the list X is now sorted.

As an example, consider a list of five numbers: 27, 13, 9, 5 and 3. They are initially input into the vector X . Part of MATLAB’s memory for this problem is sketched in Table 11.1. Each column shows the list during each *pass*. A stroke in a row indicates a change in that variable during the pass as the script works down the list. The number of tests ($X_j > X_{j+1}$?) made on each pass is also shown in the table. Work through the table by hand with the structure plan until you understand how the algorithm works.

Sorting algorithms are compared by calculating the number of tests (comparisons) they carry out, since this takes up most of the execution time during the sort. On the K th pass of the Bubble Sort there are exactly $N - K$ tests, so the total number of tests is

$$1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + (N - 1) = N(N - 1)/2$$

Table 11.1 Memory during a Bubble Sort

	1st pass	2nd pass	3rd pass	4th pass
X ₁ :	27/13	13/9	9/5	5/3
X ₂ :	13/27/9	9/13/5	5/9/3	3/5
X ₃ :	9/27/5	5/13/3	3/9	9
X ₄ :	5/27/3	3/13	13	13
X ₅ :	3/27	27	27	27
	4 tests	3 tests	2 tests	1 test

(approximately $N^2/2$ for large N). For a list of five numbers there are therefore 10 tests, but for 10 numbers there are 45 tests. The computer time needed goes up as the square of the length of the list.

The function M-file `bubble.m` below departs slightly from the structure plan above, which will make $N - 1$ passes, *even if the list is sorted before the last pass*. Since most real lists are partially sorted, it makes sense to check after each pass if any swaps were made. If none were, the list must be sorted, so unnecessary (and therefore time-wasting) tests can be eliminated. In the function, the variable `sorted` is used to detect when the list is sorted, and the outer loop is coded instead as a non-deterministic while loop. Here it is:

```
function y = bubble( x )
n = length(x);
sorted = 0;           % flag to detect when sorted
k = 0;              % count the passes

while ~sorted
    sorted = 1;      % they could be sorted
    k = k + 1;      % another pass
    for j = 1:n-k   % fewer tests on each pass
        if x(j) > x(j+1) % are they in order?
            temp = x(j); % no ...
            x(j) = x(j+1);
            x(j+1) = temp;
            sorted = 0; % a swop was made
        end
    end
end
end;

y = x;
```

You can test it on the command line to sort say 20 random numbers as follows:

```
r = rand(1,20);
r = bubble( r );
```

Note how `bubble` changes its input vector.

On my PC `bubble` takes 1.81 seconds to sort 200 random numbers, but 7.31 seconds to sort 400 numbers. This is consistent with the theoretical result obtained above.

MATLAB's sort

The built-in MATLAB function `sort` returns two output arguments: the sorted list (in ascending order) and a vector containing the *indexes* used in the sort, i.e. the positions of the sorted numbers in the original list. If the random numbers

```
r = 0.4175    0.6868    0.5890    0.9304    0.8462
```

are sorted with the command

```
[y,i] = sort(r)
```

the output variables are

```
y = 0.4175    0.5890    0.6868    0.8462    0.9304
i = 1         3         2         5         4
```

For example, the index of the second largest number (0.5890) is 3, which is its subscript in the original unsorted list `r`.

As a matter of fact, the built-in functions `max` and `min` also return second output variables giving indexes.

MATLAB's `sort` is *very* fast. My PC takes 2.36 seconds to sort a list of one million random numbers! This is because (a) a Quick Sort is used, and (b) the script has been compiled as a built-in function; this makes for faster code.

Summary

- Although an array in MATLAB is just another name for a vector, it is helpful sometimes to think of vectors as arrays of subscripted elements, rather than as single entities.
- `zeros` pre-allocates a vector, initializing every element to zero. This is quicker than redimensioning a vector element-by-element in a `for` loop. It also clears a vector of the same name from the workspace, avoiding a possible size conflict.
- A function should be used to set up a vector generated by an update process. The vector should be returned as an output variable. This will automatically clear a vector of the same name from the workspace, even if it is not pre-allocated inside the function.
- `bar` draws a bar graph of frequency distributions.
- `hist` draws a histogram of frequency distributions according to a specified number of bins.
- `sort` returns a list sorted into ascending order, and the indexes used in the sort.

Exercises

- 11.1 In a model of bacteria growth, time is broken up into a number of small steps each of length dt hours. If we define N_i as the number of bacteria present at the beginning of step i , we can get N_{i+1} from N_i as follows:

$$N_{i+1} = N_i + r dt N_i,$$

where r is the growth rate per hour. At time $t = 0$ there are 1000 bacteria.

Write a script to generate a vector `N` containing the bacteria numbers from time $t = 0$ to 12 hours, given $r = 0.1$ and $dt = 1$ hour.

Construct a matrix `bact` with 12 rows and two columns, with the time in hours in the first column, and the bacteria numbers `N` in the second column.

Now run the script with $dt = 0.5$, and place the bacteria numbers, at hourly intervals, in the third column of `bact`.

The exact number of bacteria at time t hours is given by the formula

$$N(t) = 1000 e^{rt}.$$

Use this formula to put the exact number of bacteria, also at hourly intervals, into the fourth column of `bact`.

Your results, with `format bank`, should be like this:

0	1000.00	1000.00	1000.00
1.00	1100.00	1102.50	1105.17
2.00	1210.00	1215.51	1221.40
...			
12.00	3138.43	3225.10	3320.12

- 11.2 Write a program which finds the mean of the elements of an array, and the element of the array furthest in absolute value from the mean, e.g. if the array elements are

-4, 0, 5, -1, 10, 3, 4, 1, 2, 4

the element 10 is furthest from the mean.

- 11.3 Write a script which generates a list of five random numbers, and then removes them from the list one at a time in ascending order, displaying the shortened list each time one number is removed.
- 11.4 Develop a structure plan to find and display all the prime numbers less than 1000 (1 and 2 are regarded as primes, and will probably have to be dealt with separately). Write the script. **Hint:** use an array to store the primes as they are found.

12

Arrays of characters: strings

Objective

The objective of this chapter is to introduce you to

- strings and facilities for handling them.

A *string* in MATLAB is a collection of characters enclosed in apostrophes (single quotes). In this chapter we look at strings (also sometimes referred to as *text*) in a little more detail.

12.1 Basic concepts

Assignment

Strings may be assigned to variables by enclosing them in apostrophes:

```
s = 'Hi there';
```

If an apostrophe is to be included in the string it must be repeated:

```
s = 'o' 'clock';
```

Input

Strings may be entered in response to the `input` statement in two ways:

1. You can enclose the string in apostrophes when you enter it, or
2. you can use an additional argument `'s'` with `input`, in which case you must not use apostrophes when entering the string, e.g.

```
>> name = input( 'Enter your surname: ', 's' );  
Enter your surname: O'Reilly
```


Strings are arrays

A MATLAB string is actually an array with each element representing one character in the string. For example, if

```
s = 'Napoleon'
```

whos reveals that `s` is 1-by-8. The statement

```
s(8:-1:1)
```

will therefore display the string 'Napoleon' backwards.

If a string must contain an apostrophe, the apostrophe must be repeated when entering the string. However, only one apostrophe is actually stored in the string. For example, in

```
name = 'M' 'kombe'
```

`name(3)` is 'k'.

You can exploit the vector nature of strings in a number of ways, e.g. to find and/or remove certain characters. The following code will remove all the blanks from the string `s`.

```
s = 'Twas brillig and the slithy toves';
nonblanks = s ~= ' ';
s(nonblanks)
```

`nonblanks` is a logical vector with 0's corresponding to the positions of the blanks in `s`. Using `nonblanks` as a subscript then removes the blanks (**Subscripting with logical vectors**, Chapter 5).

Concatenation of strings

Because strings are vectors, they may be *concatenated* (joined) with square brackets, e.g.

```
king = 'Henry';
king = [king, ' VIII']
```

ASCII codes, double and char

A MATLAB character is represented internally by a 16-bit numerical value. The character codes start at 1; the first 127 such codes are the *ASCII* codes. For example, the ASCII codes for the letters 'A' to 'Z' are the consecutive integers from 65 to 90, while the codes for 'a' to 'z' run from 97 to 122. (Appendix D gives all the ASCII codes.)

You can see the ASCII codes for a string with `double`, e.g.

```
double('Napoleon')
```

returns

```
78    97   112   111   108   101   111   110
```

Conversely, `char` returns a string from the ASCII codes, e.g.

```
char(65:70)
```

returns

```
ABCDEF
```

You can use `char` and `double` to generate rows of identical characters, e.g.

```
x = char(ones(4,20)*double('#'))
```

gives

```
#####  
#####  
#####  
#####
```

Can you see why? The function `ones(4,20)` generates 4 rows and 20 columns of 1's. Multiplying by `double('#')` replaces all the 1's with the ASCII code for # (whatever that is), and `char` converts the ASCII codes back to text.

If a character variable is involved in an arithmetic expression, MATLAB uses the ASCII code of the character in the calculation, e.g. if

```
s = 'a'
```

the expression `s + 1` returns 98, since the ASCII code for 'a' is 97.

Array operations can be performed on strings. For example, if `s` is a string of letters, the expression `char(s+1)` returns each letter in the string advanced by one place in the alphabet.

The relationship between characters and their ASCII codes means you can do neat things like this:

```
alpha = double('a'):double('z')
```

Can you see what the result will be?

fprintfing strings

Strings may be displayed with `fprintf` using the `%s` format specifier. They can be right- or left-justified, and truncated, e.g. the statements

```
fprintf( '%8sVIII\n', 'Henry' )  
fprintf( '%-8sVIII\n', 'Henry' )  
fprintf( '%.3sVIII\n', 'Henry' )
```

result in (the boxes indicate spaces)

```
□□□HenryVIII  
Henry□□□VIII  
HenVIII
```

To display single characters with `fprintf` use the `%c` format specifier.

Comparing strings

Try out the following statements:

```
s1 = 'ann';
s2 = 'ban';
s1 < s2
```

You should get the logical vector

```
1    0    0
```

because the logical expression `s1 < s2` compares the ASCII codes of the two strings element by element (the strings must have the same length). This is the basis of alphabetical sorting.

The function `strcmp(s1, s2)` compares the two strings `s1` and `s2`, returning 1 if they are identical, and 0 otherwise. (The strings do not have to be the same length.)

Other string functions

`blanks`
generates a string of blanks.

`deblank`
removes trailing blanks from a string.

`int2str`, `num2str`
convert their numeric arguments to strings. These functions are handy for labelling graphs with text which includes variable numeric values.

`ischar`
returns 1 if its argument is a string, and 0 otherwise.

`lower`, `upper`
convert strings to lower- and uppercase respectively.

`sprintf`
works like `fprintf`, except that it returns a string according to the format specification, e.g.

```
s = sprintf( 'Value of K: %g', K )
```

returns the string `Value of K: 0.015` in `s` if `K` has the value 0.015.
See `help matlab\strfun` for a complete list of string-handling functions.

12.2 Two-dimensional strings

You can create a two-dimensional character array in the same way as you would a matrix, except that each row must have the same length; if necessary pad the shorter strings with blanks on the right. For example,

```
nameAndAddress = ['Adam B Carr   '; '21 Barkly Ave'; 'Discovery   ']
```

results in

```
nameAndAddress =  
  
Adam B Carr  
21 Barkly Ave  
Discovery
```

An easier way to create two-dimensional strings is to use the `char` function which automatically pads the shorter strings for you:

```
nameAndAddress = char('Adam B Carr', '21 Barkly Ave', 'Discovery')
```

Remember that if you use single-subscript notation the array is referenced by column, so

```
nameAndAddress(1:3)
```

returns

```
A2D
```

(the first letter of each row).

12.3 eval and text macros

If a MATLAB expression is 'encoded' as a string in a variable `t`, say, the function `eval(t)` causes the expression in `t` to be evaluated. (Strictly, the string is *interpreted*.) This is called a *text macro* facility. For example, if the assignment

```
s = 'x = -b/(2*a);'
```

is made, `eval(s)` makes MATLAB interpret the text in `s` as the statement

```
x = -b/(2*a);
```

which is then carried out with the current values of `a`, `b` and `c`.

Another use of `eval` could be as a 'user-friendly' way of inputting a function from the Command Window. Consider the following script:

```
f = input('Enter function (of x) to be plotted: ', 's');  
x = 0:0.01:10;  
plot(x, eval(f)),grid
```

Here's how the command line looks after you enter the function:

```
>> Enter function (of x) to be plotted: exp(-0.5*x) .* sin(x)
```

Use of the second argument 's' for `input` means that you don't need to enclose the text in quotes. Whatever expression you enter will be plotted, as long as it's a function of `x`.

Note that you should use `feval` (Chapter 10: **Function handles**) rather than `eval` whenever possible, since `feval` is faster and code using it can be compiled with the MATLAB compiler.

Error trapping with eval and lasterr

The use of `eval` to evaluate an expression which is input by a user can misfire if the user enters an invalid expression; the script grinds to a halt. However, `eval` together with the function `lasterr` enables you to trap and correct errors like this without the script crashing.

The function `eval` can take a second (string) argument, representing an expression to be executed if an error is encountered in the first argument. This is demonstrated below with `lasterr`, which MATLAB sets to the error message corresponding to the last error encountered. `lasterr` can also be set to any string value. See `help` for more details.

As an example, the script below will continue running until you enter a valid expression.

```
lasterr('1'); % true (not empty)
while ~isempty(lasterr)
    lasterr(''); % false (empty)
    f = input('Enter expression: ', 's');
    f = [f ';'']; % suppress display when evaluated
    eval(f, 'disp(''Dum-dum!'')'); % trap error and display message
    if ~isempty(lasterr)
        lasterr
        fprintf('Please try again!\n' )
    end
end
end
```

(note the use of double apostrophes in the second (string) argument of `eval`).

eval with try...catch

I am indebted to Dean Redelinghuys and Grant Grobbelaar for the following example, which provides an alternative way of dealing with errors generated by `eval`.

The user is invited to define variables in the workspace by typing them in. The user's input is evaluated by `eval`. If an invalid assignment is entered, the script would normally crash. However, if an error occurs in the `try` clause of a `try...catch` statement, control is transferred to the `catch` clause, which deals with the error. The `try...catch` statement is embedded in a `while` loop which perseveres until the user eventually enters a valid assignment statement!

```
stopflag = 0;
while ~stopflag
    clc; % Clear the screen!
    disp('Your variables are:')
    whos
    a = input('Enter Variable definition or empty to quit: ', 's');
    if isempty(a),
        stopflag = 1;
    else
        try
            eval([a ';'']); % Force no output to command window!
        catch
            disp('Invalid variable assignment statement. The error was:');
            disp([' ', lasterr]);
            disp('Press a key to continue');
            pause
        end
    end
end;
end
```

Summary

- A MATLAB string (of text) is an array, where each element represents one character in the string.
- Since a string is usually enclosed in apostrophes (single quotes), if the apostrophe itself is to be included in the string, it must be repeated.
- Strings may be concatenated (joined) with square brackets.
- Characters are represented by the numerical ASCII codes.
`double` returns the ASCII codes for the characters in a string.
`char` returns the string represented by the ASCII codes in an array.
- When strings (of equal length) are compared in a logical expression, the ASCII codes of the two strings are compared element by element, resulting in a logical array.
- `char` may be used to create two-dimensional character arrays.
- `eval` interprets its string argument as a MATLAB statement. This is the basis for text macros in MATLAB.
`eval` can be used with `lasterr` and `try...catch` to trap and correct errors.

Exercises

- 12.1 Write a function `deblank(s)` which removes all the blanks from the string `s`.
- 12.2 Write a function `toupper(s)` which translates the lowercase letters in the string `s` to uppercase.
- 12.3 Write a function `ispalin(s)` which returns 1 if the string `s` is a *palindrome*, or 0 if it is not. A palindrome is a sentence which reads the same backwards as forwards, such as

Reward a Toyota drawer

(someone who draws Toyotas, presumably), or Napoleon's classic lament,

Able was I ere I saw Elba

Assume there is no punctuation, remove all the blanks first, and convert all letters to lowercase, say.

- 12.4 A formula, called Zeller's Congruence, may be used to compute the day of the week, given the date (within a certain range of dates). The formula is

$$f = 1 + ([2.6m - 0.2] + k + y + [y/4] + [c/4] - 2c) \text{ modulo } 7,$$

where the square brackets denote the integer part, modulo 7 means the remainder when divided by 7, and

- m is the month number, with January and February taken as months 11 and 12 of the preceding year, so March is then month 1, and December month 10;
- k is the day of the month;
- c is the century number;
- y is the year in the century;
- $f = 1$ means Sunday, 2 means Monday, etc.

For example, 23rd August 1963 is represented by $m = 6$, $k = 23$, $c = 19$, $y = 63$; 1st January 1800 is represented by $m = 11$, $k = 1$, $c = 17$, $y = 99$.

Write a function `dayofweek(d)` which takes the date in the form of a vector $\mathbf{d} = [dd\ mm\ yyyy]$ (e.g. `[9 3 2001]` for 9 March 2001) and returns the day of the week (in words) on

which it falls. Test your program on some known dates, like today's date, or your birthday, or 7 December 1941 (Pearl Harbour Sunday). **Hint:** use a 2-D array of characters for the days of the week.

The formula will not work if you go too far back. Shakespeare and Cervantes both died on 23 April 1616. Shakespeare died on a Tuesday, but Cervantes died on a Saturday! This is because England had not yet adopted the Gregorian calendar and was consequently ten days behind the rest of the world. The formula will also not work if you go too far forward.

- 12.5 Write a script which will input a number in binary code (e.g. 1100—no blanks between the digits) and write its decimal value (12 in this case). **Hint:** Input the number as a string, and make use of the fact that the string is an array.
- 12.6 Write a function `rightfill(s, n)` which fills the string `s` with blanks from the right until its total length is `n` characters. If `s` is longer than `n` characters, it must be truncated.
- 12.7 Write a function `alphacomp(str1, str2)` which returns 1 if the string `str1` is ahead of `str2` alphabetically, and 0 otherwise.

The function should work even if the strings are not of equal length.

If you are feeling energetic, you might like to use `alphacomp` as the basis for sorting a list of words alphabetically.

13

Advanced data structures

Objectives

The objectives of this chapter are to introduce you to

- structures,
- cells and cell arrays.

13.1 Structures

Up to now we have seen arrays with only one type of element—all numeric, or all character. A MATLAB *structure* allows you to put different kinds of data in its various *fields*. For example, we can create a structure called `student` with one field for a student's name,

```
student.name = 'Thandi Mangwane';
```

a second field for her student ID number,

```
student.id = 'MNGTHA003';
```

and a third field for all her marks to date,

```
student.marks = [36 49 74];
```

To see the whole structure, enter its name:

```
student  
  
student =  
    name: 'Thandi Mangwane'  
     id: 'MNGTHA003'  
  marks: [36 49 74]
```


Here's how to access her second mark:

```
student.marks(2)
ans =
    49
```

Note the use of the dot to separate the structure name from its fields when creating it and when accessing its fields.

To add further elements to the structure, use subscripts after the structure name:

```
student(2).name = 'Charles Wilson'
student(2).id = 'WLSCHA007'
student(2).marks = [49 98]
```

(the original student, Thandi Mangwane, is now accessed as `student(1)`). Note that field sizes do not have to conform across elements of a structure array: `student(1).marks` has three elements, while `student(2).marks` has only two elements.

The `student` structure now has size 1-by-2: it has two elements, each element being a student with three fields. Once a structure has more than one element MATLAB does not display the contents of each field when you type the structure name at the command line. Instead, it gives the following summary:

```
student

student =
1x2 struct array with fields:
    name
    id
    marks
```

You can also use `fieldnames(student)` to get this information.

A structure array can be preallocated with the `struct` function. See [Help](#).

A structure field can contain any kind of data, even another structure—why ever not? Thus we can create a structure `course` of courses taken by students, where one field is the name of the course, and another field is a student structure with information on all the students taking that particular course:

```
course.name = 'MTH101';
course.class = student;
course

course =
    name: 'MTH101'
    class: [1x2 struct]
```

We can set up a second element of `course` for a different class of students:

```
course(2).name = 'PHY102';
course(2).class = ...
```

To see all the courses:

```
course(1:2).name
ans =
MTH101
ans =
PHY102
```

To see all the students in a particular course:

```
course(1).class(1:2).name
ans =
Thandi Mangwane
ans =
Charles Wilson
```

There is a curious function called `deal` which ‘deals inputs to outputs’. You can use it to generate ‘comma-separated variable lists’ from structure fields:

```
[name1, name2] = deal(course(1).class(1:2).name);
```

(but you don’t actually need the commas here ...).

You can use the `rmfield` function to remove fields from a structure.

13.2 Cell arrays

A *cell* is the most general data object in MATLAB. A cell may be thought of as a ‘data container’, which can contain any type of data: numeric arrays, strings, structures, or cells. An array of cells (and they almost always occur in arrays) is called a *cell array*. While you might think a cell sounds the same as a structure, a cell is more general, and there are also notational differences (which are confusing!).

Assigning data to cell arrays

There are a number of ways of assigning data to cell arrays.

- Cell indexing:

```
c(1,1) = {rand(3)};
c(1,2) = {char('Bongani', 'Thandeka')};
c(2,1) = {13};
c(2,2) = {student};

c =
 [3x3 double]    [2x8 char ]
 [          13]    [1x2 struct]
```

(assuming that the structure `student` created above still exists). Here the round brackets on the lefthand side of the assignments refer in the normal way to the elements of the cell array. What is different are the curly braces on the right. Curly braces indicate the *contents* of a cell; on the righthand side of an assignment they are technically cell array *constructors* (remember that each element of this array is a cell).

So read the first statement as

‘Construct a cell containing `rand(3)` and assign the cell to element 1,1 of the cell array `c`.’

- Content indexing:

```
c{1,1} = rand(3);
c{1,2} = char('Bongani', 'Thandeka');
c{2,1} = 13;
c{2,2} = student;
```

Here the curly braces on the left indicate the *contents* of the cell element at that particular location. So read the first statement as

'The contents of the cell at location 1, 1 becomes rand(3).'

- You can use the curly braces to construct an entire cell array in one statement:

```
b = { [1:5], rand(2); student, char('Jason', 'Amy') }
b =
    [1x5 double]    [2x2 double]
    [1x2 struct]    [2x5 char ]
```

A cell may contain another cell array; nested curly braces may be used to create nested cell arrays.

- The `cell` function enables you to preallocate empty cell arrays, e.g.

```
a = cell(3,2)    % empty 3-by-2 cell array
a =
     []     []
     []     []
     []     []
```

You can then use assignment statements to fill the cells, e.g.

```
a(2,2) = {magic(3)}
```

Note: if you already have a numeric array with a certain name, don't try to create a cell array of the same name by assignment without first clearing the numeric array. If you don't clear the numeric array, MATLAB will generate an error (it will think you are trying to mix cell and numeric syntaxes).

Accessing data in cell arrays

You can access cell contents using content indexing (curly braces):

```
r = c{1,1}
r =
    0.4447    0.9218    0.4057
    0.6154    0.7382    0.9355
    0.7919    0.1763    0.9169
```

To access a subset of a cell's contents you can concatenate curly braces and round brackets if necessary:

```
rnum = c{1,1}(2,3)
rnum =
    0.9355
```

Here the curly braces (content indexing) indicate the contents of the cell array element `c(1,1)`, which is a 3-by-3 numeric matrix. The subscripts `(2,3)` then indicate the appropriate element within the matrix.

Curly braces may be concatenated to access nested cell arrays.

Using cell arrays

Cell arrays come into their own when you need to access (different types of) data as 'comma-separated variable lists', as the next example demonstrates.

The functions `varargin` and `varargout`, which allow a function to have any number of input or output arguments, are none other than cell arrays. The function `testvar` has a variable number of input

arguments, which are doubled into the variable number of output arguments (assuming that the number of output arguments does not exceed the number of input arguments):

```
function [varargout] = testvar(varargin)

for i = 1:length(varargin)
    x(i) = varargin{i};    % unpack the input args
end

for i = 1:nargout        % how many output arguments?
    varargout{i} = 2*x(i); % pack up the output args
end
```

Command line:

```
[a b c] = testvar(1, 2, 3, 4)
a =
    2
b =
    4
c =
    6
```

When a function is called with the input argument `varargin` MATLAB automatically packs the list of corresponding input arguments into a cell array. You then simply unpack the cell array inside the function using the curly brace content indexing. You similarly pack up the output arguments into the cell array `varargout`.

Note that, should your function have some compulsory input and output arguments, `varargin` and `varargout` must appear at the end of their respective argument lists.

MATLAB has a discussion on when to use cell arrays in the section **Organizing Data in Cell Arrays**, to be found in **Using MATLAB: Programming and Data Types: Structures and Cell Arrays**.

Displaying and visualizing cell arrays

The function `celldisp` recursively displays the contents of a cell array.

The function `cellplot` draws a visualization of a cell array. Figure 13.1 depicts the contents of the cell array `c`, created above. Non-empty array elements are shaded.

13.3 Classes and objects

You'd have to be living face down in a moon crater not to have heard about object-oriented programming. *Tom Swan*.

Object-oriented programming is an exceptionally bad idea which could only have originated in California. *Edsger Dijkstra*.

MATLAB, along with most other modern programming languages, espouses the cause of object-oriented programming, and has all the usual paraphernalia associated with this paradigm: classes, objects, encapsulation, inheritance, operator overloading, etc., etc.

Object-oriented programming is a subject which requires an entire book to do justice to it. If you want to learn about the concepts, there are many excellent books on the subject. If you want to see how MATLAB implements object-oriented programming, consult the online Help: **Using MATLAB: Programming and Data Types: MATLAB Classes and Objects**.

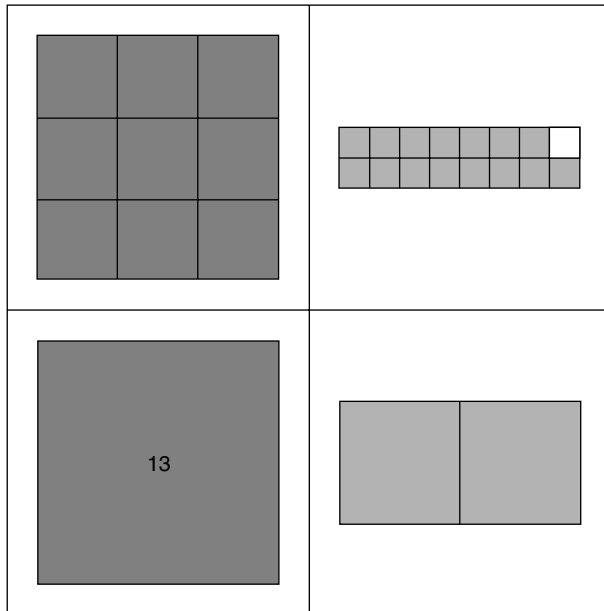


Figure 13.1 Result of `cellplot(c)`

Summary

- A MATLAB structure allows you to store different types of data in its various fields.
- Arrays of structures may be created.
- A cell is the most general data object in MATLAB, and can store any type of data.
- An array of cells is called a cell array—each cell in the array can store different types of data, including other cell arrays.
- A cell array is constructed with curly braces `{ }`.
- The contents of cell in a cell array is accessed with content indexing (curly braces).
- Cell elements in a cell array are accessed in the usual way with round brackets (cell indexing).
- Arguments of functions using a variable number of arguments are packed into cell arrays.
- The function `cellplot` gives a visualization of a cell array.
- MATLAB implements object-oriented programming.

14

More graphics

Objectives

The objectives of this chapter are to introduce you to

- Handle Graphics;
- editing plots;
- animation;
- saving and exporting graphs;
- colour, lighting and the camera.

14.1 Handle Graphics

The richness and power of MATLAB graphics is made possible by its *Handle Graphics objects*. There is a very helpful section devoted to Handle Graphics in the online documentation **Using MATLAB: Graphics**. What follows is of necessity a brief summary of its main features.

Handle Graphics objects are the basic elements used in MATLAB graphics. The objects are arranged in a parent-child inheritance structure as shown in Figure 14.1. For example, Line and Text objects are children of Axes objects. This is probably the most common parent-child relationship. Axes objects define a region in a figure window and orient their children within this region. The actual plots in an Axes object are Line objects. The axis labels and any text annotations are Text objects. It is important to be aware of this parent-child hierarchy when you want to manipulate graphics objects using their handles.

Well, what exactly is the handle of a graphics object? Whenever MATLAB creates a graphics objects it automatically creates a handle to that object. You can get the handle of the object using a function that explicitly returns the handle of a graphics object, or you can create the handle explicitly when you draw the graphics object. The handle itself has a floating point representation, but its actual value need not concern you. What is more important is to save its name and then to use the handle to change or manipulate your graphics object.

The root object is the only object whose handle is 0. There is only one root object, created by MATLAB at startup. All other objects are its descendants, as you can see in Figure 14.1.

Getting handles

Here's how to get handles:

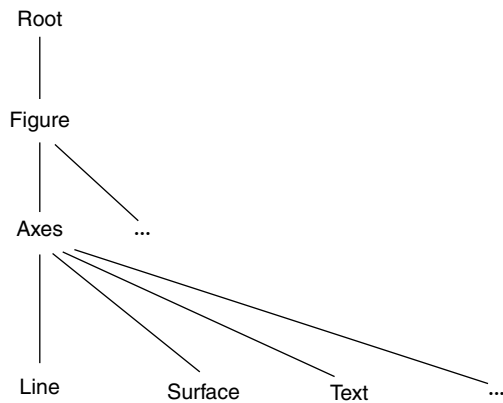


Figure 14.1 Parent-child relationships of Handle Graphics objects (from top to bottom)

- The functions that draw graphics objects can also be used to return the handle of the object drawn, e.g.

```

x = 0:pi/20:2*pi;
hsin = plot(x, sin(x))
hold on
hx = xlabel('x')

```

`hsin` is the handle of the Line object (the sine graph), and `hx` is the handle of the Text object (the x axis label) in the current Axes object.

The command

```
figure(h)
```

where `h` is an integer, creates a new figure, or makes figure `h` the current figure. `h` is the handle of the figure object.

- There are three functions that return the handle of particular graphics objects:
`gcf` gets the handle of the current figure, e.g.

```
hf = gcf;
```

`gca` gets the handle of the current axes.

`gco` gets the handle of the current graphics object, which is the last graphics object created or clicked on. For example, draw the sine graph above and get its handle `hsin`. Click on the graph in the figure window. Then enter the command

```
ho = gco
```

in the Command Window. `ho` should be set to the handle of the sine graph (it should have the same numeric value as `hsin`).

Graphics object properties and how to change them

Once you have the handle of a graphics object you can use it to change the properties of that object. As an example, draw a sine graph and get its handle, as demonstrated above:

```

x = 0:pi/20:2*pi;
hsin = plot(x, sin(x))

```

Now suppose you want to make the graph much thicker. Enter the following command:

```
set(hsin, 'linewidth', 4);
```

You should get a nice fat sine curve!

`linewidth` is just one of the many properties of our graphics object. To see all the property names of an object and their current values use `get(h)` where `h` is the object's handle. In the case of our sine graph:

```
get(hsin)
Color = [0 0 1]
EraseMode = normal
LineStyle = -
LineWidth = [4]
Marker = none
MarkerSize = [6]
MarkerEdgeColor = auto
MarkerFaceColor = none
XData = [ (1 by 41) double array]
YData = [ (1 by 41) double array]
ZData = []

BeingDeleted = off
ButtonDownFcn =
Children = []
Clipping = on
CreateFcn =
DeleteFcn =
BusyAction = queue
HandleVisibility = on
HitTest = on
Interruptible = on
Parent = [100.001]
Selected = off
SelectionHighlight = on
Tag =
Type = line
UIContextMenu = []
UserData = []
Visible = on
```

You can change any property value with the `set` function:

```
set(handle, 'PropertyName', PropertyValue)
```

The command `set(handle)` lists all the possible property values (where appropriate).

You can get an object's handle and change its properties all in the same breath. For example,

```
set(gcf, 'visible', 'off')
```

makes the current figure invisible (without closing it—i.e. it's still 'there'). No prizes for guessing how to make it visible again ...

Property names are not case-sensitive, and you can abbreviate them to as few letters as make them unique. For example, you can abbreviate the `type` property to `ty`:


```

get(hsin, 'ty')
ans =
line

```

(helpful if you don't know what type of objects you are dealing with!).

The different types of graphics objects don't all have the same set of properties, although there are some properties which are common to all graphics objects, such as `children`, `parent`, `type`, etc.

A vector of handles

If a graphics object has a number of children the `get` command used with the `children` property returns a vector of the children's handles. Sorting out the handles is then quite fun, and demonstrates why you need to be aware of the parent-child relationships!

As an example, plot a continuous sine graph and an exponentially decaying sine graph marked with `o`'s in the same figure:

```

x = 0:pi/20:4*pi;
plot(x, sin(x))
hold on
plot(x, exp(-0.1*x).*sin(x), 'o')
hold off

```

Now enter the command

```

hkids = get(gca, 'child')

```

You will see that a vector of handles with two elements is returned. The question is, which handle belongs to which plot? The answer is that the handles of children of the axes are returned in the *reverse order in which they are created*, i.e. `hkids(1)` is the handle of the exponentially decaying graph, while `hkids(2)` is the handle of the sine graph. So now let's change the markers on the decaying graph, and make the sine graph much bolder:

```

set(hkids(1), 'marker', '*')
set(hkids(2), 'linewidth', 4)

```

You should get the plots shown in Figure 14.2.

If you are desperate and don't know the handles of any of your graphics objects you can use the `findobj` function to get the handle of an object with a property value that uniquely identifies it. In the original version of the plots in Figure 14.2 the decaying plot can be identified by its `marker` property:

```

hdecay = findobj('marker', 'o')

```

Graphics object creation functions

Each of the graphics objects shown in Figure 14.1 (except the root object) has a corresponding creation function, named after the object it creates. See `help` for details.

Parenting

By default, all graphics objects are created in the current figure. However, you can specify the parent of an object when you create it. For example,

```

axes('Parent', figure_handle, ... )

```

creates an axes in the figure with handle `figure_handle`. You can also move an object from one parent to another by redefining its `parent` property:

```

set(gca, 'Parent', figure_handle)

```

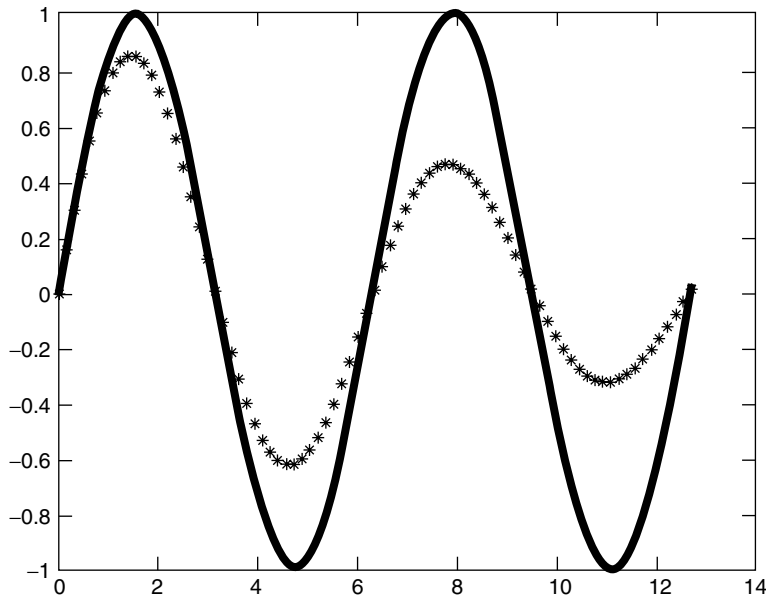


Figure 14.2 Result of manipulating a figure using the handles of axes children

Positioning figures

At startup MATLAB determines the default position and size of the figure window, according to the size of your computer screen. You can change this by setting the `Position` property of the figure object.

Before you tamper with the figure's `Position` property you need to know the dimensions of your screen—this is one of the root object's properties. For example,

```
get(0, 'screensize')
ans =
     1     1   800   600
```

i.e. my screen is 800 by 600 pixels. The units of `Screensize` are pixels by defaults. You can (naturally) change the units by setting the root's `Units` property. For example,

```
set(0, 'units', 'normalized')
```

normalizes the width and height of the screen to 1. This is useful when you are writing an M-file which is to be run on different computer systems.

Having sorted out the size of your screen, you can then fiddle with the figure `Position` property, which is defined as a vector

```
[left bottom width height]
```

`left` and `bottom` define the position of the first addressable pixel in the lower left corner of the window, specified with respect to the lower left corner of the screen. `width` and `height` define the size of the interior of the window (excluding the window border).

You can normalize the figure's `Unit` property as well as the root's `Unit` property. You can then position figures absolutely, without reference to variations in screen size. For example, the following code normalizes units and creates two figures in the upper half of the screen:

```
set(0, 'units', 'normalized')
h1 = figure('units', 'normalized', 'visible', 'off')
```

```
h2 = figure('units', 'normalized', 'visible', 'off')
set(h1, 'position', [0.05 0.5 0.45 0.35], 'visible', 'on')
set(h2, 'position', [0.53 0.5 0.45 0.35], 'visible', 'on')
```

Note that the `Visible` property is first set to `off` to avoid the figures being drawn in the default position when they are created. They are only drawn when their positions have been redefined. Alternatively you can do everything when the figures are created:

```
h1 = figure('un', 'normalized', 'pos', [0.05 0.5 0.45 0.35])
```

14.2 Editing plots

There are a number of ways of editing plots.

Plot edit mode

To see how this works draw a graph, e.g. the friendly old sine. There are several ways to activate plot edit mode:

- Select **Tools** -> **Edit Plot** in the figure window.
- Click on the Edit Plot selection button in the figure window toolbar (arrow pointing roughly north-west).
- Run the `plottedit` command in the Command Window.

When a figure is in plot edit mode the toolbar selection button is highlighted. Once you are in plot edit mode select an object by clicking on it. Selection handles will appear on the selected object.

As an exercise, get the sine graph into plot edit mode and try the following:

- Select the graph (click on it). Selection handles should appear.
- Right click on the selected object (the graph). A context menu appears.
- Use the context menu to change the graph's line style and colour.
- Use the **Insert** menu to insert a legend (although this makes more sense where you have multiple plots in the figure).
- Insert a text box inside the figure close to the graph as follows. Click on the Insert Text selection button in the toolbar (the capital A). The cursor changes shape to indicate that it is in text insertion mode. Move the insertion point until it touches the graph somewhere and click. A text box appears. Enter some text in it.
You can use a subset of $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ characters and commands in text objects. For example, the text x_k in Figure 19.1 was produced with the string `\{itx_k\}`. See the entry `Text property` under `String[1]` in the online Help for a list of a available $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ characters and commands.
- Having labelled the graph you can change the format of the labels. Select the label and right-click. Change the font size and font style.
- Play around with the Insert Arrow and Insert Line selection buttons on the toolbar to see if you can insert lines and arrows on the graph.

To exit plot edit mode, click the selection button or uncheck the **Edit Plot** option on the **Tools** menu.

Property Editor

The Property Editor is more general than plot edit mode. It enables you to change object properties interactively, rather than with the `set` function. It is ideal for preparing presentation graphics.

There are numerous ways of starting the Property Editor (you may already have stumbled onto some):

- If plot edit mode is enabled you can:
 - Double-click on an object.
 - Right-click on an object and select **Properties** from the context menu.
- Select **Figure Properties**, **Axes Properties** or **Current Object Properties** from the figure **Edit** menu.
- Run the `propedit` command on the command line.

To experiment with the Property Editor it will be useful to have multiple plots in a figure:

```
x = 0:pi/20:2*pi;  
hsin = plot(x, sin(x))  
hold on  
hcos = plot(x, cos(x))  
hold off
```

Start the Property Editor and work through the following exercises:

- The navigation bar at the top of the Property Editor (labelled **Edit Properties for:**) identifies the object being edited. Click on the down arrow at the right of the navigation bar to see all the objects in the figure. You will notice that there are two line objects. Immediately we are faced with the problem of identifying the two line objects in our figure. The answer is to give each of them tags by setting their **Tag** properties.
Go back to the figure and select the sine graph. Back in the Property Editor the navigation bar indicates you are editing one of the line objects. You will see three tabs below the navigation bar: **Data**, **Style** and **Info**. Click the **Info** tab, and enter a label in the **Tag** box, e.g. `sine`. Press **Enter**. The tag `sine` immediately appears next to the selected line object in the navigation bar.
Give the cosine graph a tag as well (start by selecting the other line object).
- Select the sine graph. This time select the **Style** tab and go berserk changing its colour, line style, line width and markers.
- Now select the axes object. Use the **Labels** tab to insert some axis labels. Use the **Scale** tab to change the y axis limits, for example.
Note that if you were editing a 3-D plot you would be able to use the **Viewpoint** tab to change the viewing angle and to set various camera properties.

Have fun!

14.3 Animation

There are three facilities for animation in MATLAB:

- The `comet` and `comet3` functions can be used to draw comet plots, as we mentioned briefly in Chapter 7.
- The `getframe` function may be used to generate ‘movie frames’ from a sequence of graphs. The `movie` function can then be used to play back the movie a specified number of times.
The MATLAB online documentation has the following script in **Using MATLAB: Graphics: Creating Specialized Plots: Animation**. It generates 16 frames from the Fast Fourier Transforms of complex matrices:

```
for k = 1:16  
    plot(fft(eye(k+16)))  
    axis equal  
    M(k) = getframe;  
end
```

Now play it back, say five times:

```
movie(M, 5)
```

You can specify the speed of the playback, among other things. See `help`.

- The most versatile (and satisfying) way of creating animations is by using the Handle Graphics facilities. Two examples follow.

Animation with Handle Graphics

For starters, run the following script, which should show the marker `o` tracing out a sine curve, leaving a trail behind it:

```
% animated sine graph
x = 0;
y = 0;
dx = pi/40;
p = plot(x, y, 'o', 'EraseMode', 'none'); % 'xor' shows only current point
                                         % 'none' shows all points
axis([0 20*pi -2 2])

for x = dx:dx:20*pi;
    x = x + dx;
    y = sin(x);
    set(p, 'XData', x, 'YData', y)
    drawnow
end
```

Note:

- The statement

```
p = plot(x, y, 'o', 'EraseMode', 'none');
```

achieves a number of things. It plots the first point of the graph. It saves the handle `p` of the plot for further reference. And it specifies that the `EraseMode` property is `none`, i.e. the object must not be erased when it is drawn again. To achieve complete animation, set this property to `xor`—try it now. Then the object is erased each time it is redrawn (in a slightly different position), creating the classic animation effect.

- The statement

```
set(p, 'XData', x, 'YData', y)
```

sets the `x` and `y` data values of the object `p` to the new values generated in the `for` loop, and ‘redraws’ the object. However, it is not drawn on the screen immediately—it joins the ‘event queue’, where it waits until it is flushed out.

- Finally, the `drawnow` function flushes the event queue and draws the object on the screen so that we can see the fruit of our labours.

As `help drawnow` will reveal, there are four events that flush the event queue:

- a return to the MATLAB prompt—this is how you have seen all the graphs you’ve drawn up to now;
- hitting a `pause` statement;
- executing a `getframe` command;
- executing a `drawnow` command.

For example, you could make the marker move in a more stately fashion by replacing `drawnow` with `pause(0.05)`—that's 0.05 seconds.

The next example is based on one in the **Animation** section of the MATLAB documentation. It involves *chaotic* motion described by a system of three non-linear differential equations having a 'strange attractor' (known as the Lorenz strange attractor). The system can be written as

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = \mathbf{A}y,$$

where $y(t)$ is a vector with three components, and \mathbf{A} is a matrix depending on y :

$$\mathbf{A}(y) = \begin{bmatrix} -8/3 & 0 & y(2) \\ 0 & -10 & 10 \\ -y(2) & 28 & -1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The following script solves the system approximately using Euler's method (a more accurate numerical solution is discussed in Chapter 19), and shows the solution orbiting about two different attractors without settling into a steady orbit about either. Figure 14.3 shows the situation after a few thousand points have been plotted.

```
A = [ -8/3 0 0; 0 -10 10; 0 28 -1 ];
y = [35 -10 -7]';
h = 0.01;
p = plot3(y(1), y(2), y(3), 'o', ...
          'erasemode', 'none', 'markersize', 2);
axis([0 50 -25 25 -25 25])
hold on
i = 1;
```

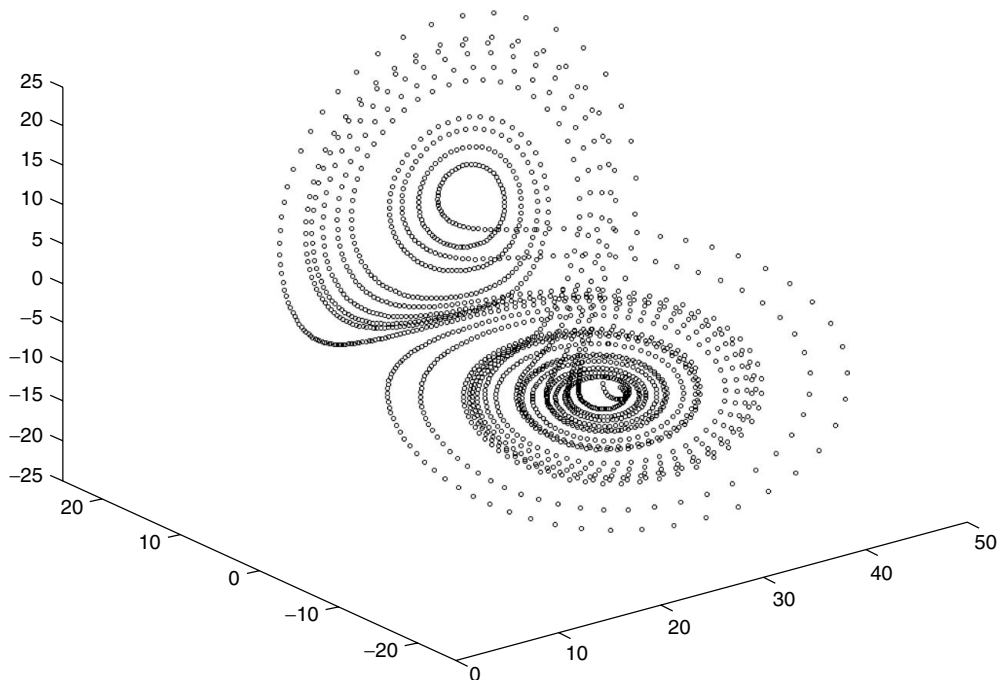


Figure 14.3 The Lorenz strange attractor

```

while 1
    A(1,3) = y(2);
    A(3,1) = -y(2);
    ydot = A*y;
    y = y + h*ydot;
    % Change colour occasionally
    if rem(i,500) == 0
        set(p, 'color', [rand, rand, rand])
    end
    % Change co-ordinates
    set(p, 'XData', y(1), 'YData', y(2), 'ZData', y(3))
    drawnow
    i=i+1;
end

```

If all the points are all plotted in the same colour you eventually wouldn't be able to see the new points generated: a large area of the screen would be filled with the drawing colour. The colour is therefore set randomly after every 500 points are plotted.

14.4 Colour etc.

Colormaps

MATLAB graphics can generate a rich variety of colours. You may be wondering how.

The following script shows a view of the Earth from space:

```

load earth
image(X); colormap(map)
axis image

```

(`axis image` is the same as `axis equal` except that the plot box fits tightly around the data). For a variation use `hot` as the argument of `colormap` instead of `map`.

The matrix `X` loaded from `earth` is 257-by-250. Each of the elements of `X` is an integer in the range 1–64. For example, here is a 3-by-3 submatrix of `X` (somewhere in north-east Africa):

```

X(39:41,100:102)
ans =
    14     15     14
    10     16     10
    10     10     10

```

The `colormap` function generates by default a 64-by-3 matrix with elements in the range 0–1. The values in the three columns represent the intensities of the red, green and blue (RGB) video components respectively. Each row of this matrix therefore defines a particular colour by specifying its RGB components. The `image` function maps each element of its argument to a row in the colormap to find the colour of that element. For example, `X(40,101)` has the value 16. Row 16 of the colormap has the three values

```
0.6784    0.3216    0.1922
```

(reddish) as you can easily verify with the statements

```

cm = colormap(map);
cm(16,:)

```

(The `map` colormap is also loaded from `earth`.) These values of RGB specify the colour of the pixel 40 from the top and 101 from the left in the figure. Incidentally, you can use the statement

```
[xp yp] = ginput
```

to get the co-ordinates of a point in the figure (crosshairs appears in the figure; click on the point whose co-ordinates you want). Clicking on the point in north-east Africa results in

```
xp =  
101.8289 % from the left (column of X)  
yp =  
40.7032 % from the top (row of X)
```

Note that `xp` and `yp` correspond to the *columns* and *rows* of `X` respectively (imagine the matrix `X` superimposed on the figure).

There are a number of functions provided by MATLAB which generate colormaps, e.g. `jet` (the default), `bone`, `flag`, `prism`. See `help graph3d` for a complete list.

You can sample the various colormaps quite nicely with the following statement, which shows 64 vertical strips, each in a different colour:

```
image(1:64), colormap(prism)
```

Or why not generate some random colours?

```
randmap(:,1) = rand(64,1);  
randmap(:,2) = rand(64,1);  
randmap(:,3) = rand(64,1);  
image(1:64), colormap(randmap)
```

The function `colorbar` displays the current colormap vertically or horizontally in the figure with your graph, indicating how the 64 colours are mapped. Try it with the image of the Earth.

Note that 64 is the default length of a colormap. The functions that generate colormaps have an optional parameter specifying the length of the colormap.

Colour of surface plots

When you draw a surface plot with a single matrix argument, e.g. `surf(z)`, the argument `z` specifies both the height of the surface and the colour. As an example use the function `peaks` which generates a surface with a couple of peaks and valleys:

```
z = peaks;  
surf(z), colormap(jet), colorbar
```

The `colorbar` indicates that the minimum element of `z` (somewhat less than -6) is mapped to row 1 of the colormap (`R = 0`, `G = 0`, `B = 0.5625`), whereas the maximum element (about 8) is mapped to row 64 (`R = 0.5625`, `G = 0`, `B = 0`).

You can specify the colour with a second argument the same size as the first:

```
z = peaks(16); % generates a 16-by-16 mesh  
c = rand(16);  
surf(z, c), colormap(prism)
```

Here the surface is tiled with a random pattern of 16-by-16 colours from the `prism` colormap.

In this form of `surf` each element of `c` is used to determine the colour of the point in the corresponding element of `z`. By default MATLAB uses a process called *scaled mapping* to map from an element of `z` (or `c`) to the colour in the colormap. The details of the scaling are determined by the `caxis` command. For

further details see `help caxis` or the section **Coloring Mesh and Surface Plots** in **Using MATLAB: 3-D Visualization: Creating 3-D Graphs**.

You can exploit the facility to specify colour in order to emphasize properties of the surface. The following example is given in the MATLAB documentation:

```
z = peaks(40);
c = del2(z);
surf(z, c)
colormap hot
```

The function `del2` computes the discrete Laplacian of a surface—the Laplacian is related to the curvature of the surface. Creating a colour array from the Laplacian means that regions with similar curvature will be drawn in the same colour. Compare the surface obtained this way with that produced by the statement

```
surf(P), colormap(hot)
```

In the second case regions with similar heights about the x - y plane have the same colour.

Alternative forms of `surf` (and related surface functions) are:

```
surf(x, y, z)           % colour determined by z
surf(x, y, z, c)       % colour determined by c
```

Truecolor

The technique of colouring by means of a colormap is called *indexed* colouring—a surface is coloured by assigning each data point an index (row) in the colour map. The Truecolor technique colours a surface using explicitly specified RGB triplets. Here is another example from the MATLAB documentation (it also demonstrates the use of a multi-dimensional array):

```
z = peaks(25);
c(:, :, 1) = rand(25);
c(:, :, 2) = rand(25);
c(:, :, 3) = rand(25);
surf(z, c)
```

The three ‘pages’ of `c` (indicated by its third subscript) specify the values of RGB respectively to be used to colour the point in `z` whose subscripts are the same as the first two subscripts in `c`. For example, the RGB values for the colour of the point `z(5,13)` are given by `c(5,13,1)`, `c(5,13,2)` and `c(5,13,3)` respectively.

14.5 Lighting and camera

MATLAB uses lighting to add realism to graphics, e.g. illuminating a surface by shining light on it from a certain angle. Here are two examples from the MATLAB documentation. Have a look at them.

```
z = peaks(25);
c(:, :, 1) = rand(25);
c(:, :, 2) = rand(25);
c(:, :, 3) = rand(25);
surf(z, c, 'facecolor', 'interp', 'facelighting', 'phong', ...
        'edgecolor', 'none')
camlight right
```

The possibilities for the `facelighting` property of the surface object are `none`, `flat` (uniform colour across each facet), `gouraud` or `phong`. The last two are the names of lighting algorithms. Phong lighting

generally produces better results, but takes longer to render than Gouraud lighting. Remember that you can see all a surface object's properties by creating the object with a handle and using `get` on the object's handle.

This one's quite stunning:

```
[x y ] = meshgrid(-8 : 0.5 : 8);
r = sqrt(x.^2 + y.^2) + eps;
z = sin(r) ./ r;
surf(x,y,z,'facecolor','interp','edgecolor','none', ...
      'facelighting','phong')

colormap jet
daspect([5 5 1])
axis tight
view(-50, 30)
camlight left
```

For more information on lighting and the camera see the sections **Lighting as a Visualization Tool** and **Defining the View** in **Using MATLAB: 3-D Visualization**.

14.6 Saving, printing and exporting graphs

Saving and opening figure files

You can save a figure generated during a MATLAB session so that you can open it in a subsequent session. Such a file has the `.fig` extension.

- Select **Save** from the figure window **File** menu.
- Make sure the **Save as type** is `.fig`.

To open a figure file select **Open** from the **File** menu.

Printing a graph

You can print everything inside a figure window frame, including axis labels and annotations:

- To print a figure select **Print** from the figure window **File** menu.
- If you have a black and white printer, coloured lines and text are 'dithered to gray' which may not print very clearly in some cases. In that case select **Page Setup** from the figure **File** menu. Select the **Lines and Text** tab and click on the **Black and white** option for **Convert solid coloured lines to:**.

Exporting a graph

A figure may be exported in one of a number of graphics formats if you want to import it into another application, such as a text processor. You can also export it to the Windows clipboard and paste it from there into an application.

To export to the clipboard:

- Select **Copy Figure** from the figure window's **Edit** menu (this action copies to the clipboard).
- Before you copy to the clipboard you may need to adjust the figure's settings. You can do this by selecting **Preferences** from the figure's **File** menu. This action opens the **Preferences** panel, from which you can select **Figure Copy Template Preferences** and **Copy Options Preferences** to adjust the figure's settings.

You may also have to adjust further settings with **Page Setup** from the figure's **File** menu.

To export a figure to a file in a specific graphics format:

- Select **Export** from the figure's **File** menu. This action invokes the **Export** dialogue box.
- Select a graphics format from the **Save as type** list, e.g. EMF (enhanced metafiles), JPEG, etc. You may need to experiment to find the best format for the target application you have in mind. For example, to insert a figure into a Word document, I find it much easier first to save it in EMF or JPEG format and then to insert the graphics file into the Word document, rather than to go the clipboard route (there are more settings to adjust that way).

For further details consult the section **Basic Printing and Exporting in Using MATLAB: Graphics**.

Summary

- MATLAB graphics objects are arranged in a parent-child hierarchy.
- A handle may be attached to a graphics object at creation; the handle may be used to manipulate the graphics object.
- If `h` is the handle of a graphics object, `get(h)` returns all the current values of the object's properties. `set(h)` shows you all the possible values of the properties.
- The functions `gcf`, `gca` and `gco` return the handles of various graphics objects.
- Use `set` to change the properties of a graphics object.
- A graph may be edited to a limited extent in plot edit mode, selected from the figure window (**Tools** -> **Edit Plot**). More general editing can be done with the Property Editor (**Edit** -> **Figure Properties** from the figure window).
- The most versatile way to create animations is by using the Handle Graphics facilities. Other techniques involve comet plots and movies.
- Indexed colouring may be done with `colormaps`.
- Graphs saved to `.fig` files may be opened in subsequent MATLAB sessions.
- Graphs may be exported to the Windows clipboard, or to files in a variety of graphics formats.

15

Graphical User Interfaces (GUIs)

Objectives

The objectives of this chapter are to introduce you to the basic concepts involved in writing your own graphical user interfaces, including:

- figure files;
- application M-files;
- callback functions.

The script files we have written so far in this book have had no interaction with the user, except by means of the occasional `input` statement. Modern users, however, have grown accustomed to more sophisticated interaction with programs, by means of windows containing menus, buttons, drop-down lists, etc. This way of interacting with a program is called a *graphical user interface*, or GUI for short (pronounced ‘gooey’), as opposed to a *text* user interface by means of command-line based `input` statements.

The MATLAB online documentation has a detailed description of how to write GUIs in MATLAB, to be found in **Using MATLAB: Creating Graphical User Interfaces**. This chapter presents a few examples illustrating the basic concepts. A more detailed example, of a GUI to drive an ODE solver, is to be found in Chapter 19. It is expected that you will study the MATLAB documentation to fill in all the nuts and bolts yourself.

I spent a day or two reading MATLAB’s documentation in order to write the GUIs in this chapter and Chapter 19. I have seldom had such fun programming!

15.1 Basic structure of a GUI

- MATLAB has a facility called GUIDE (Graphical User Interface Development Environment) for creating and implementing GUIs. You start it from the command line with the command `guide`.
- The `guide` command opens an untitled figure which contains all the GUI tools needed to create and lay out the GUI components (e.g. push buttons, menus, radio buttons, popup menus, axes, etc.). These components are called *uicontrols* in MATLAB (for user interface controls).
- GUIDE generates two files that save and launch the GUI: a *FIG-file* and an *application M-file*.
- The FIG-file contains a complete description of the GUI figure, i.e. whatever *uicontrols* and axes are needed for your graphical interface.

- The application M-file (the file you run to launch the GUI) contains the functions required to launch and control the GUI. The application M-file does not contain the code that lays out the GUI components; this information is saved in the FIG-file. The GUI is controlled largely by means *callback functions*, which are subfunctions in the application M-file.
- Callback functions are written by you and determine what action is taken when you interact with a GUI component, e.g. click a button. GUIDE generates a callback function prototype for each GUI component you create. You then use the Editor to fill in the details.

15.2 A first example: getting the time

For our first example we will create a GUI with a single push button. When you click the button the current time should appear on the button (Figure 15.1). Go through the following steps:

- Run `guide` from the command line. This action opens the Layout Editor (Figure 15.2).
- We want to place a push button in the layout area. Select the push button icon in the component palette to the left of the layout area. The cursor changes to a cross. You can use the cross either to select the position of the top-left corner of the button (in which it has the default size), or you can set the size of the button by clicking and dragging the cursor to the bottom-right corner of the button. A button imaginatively names `Push Button` appears in the layout area.



Figure 15.1 Click the button to see the time

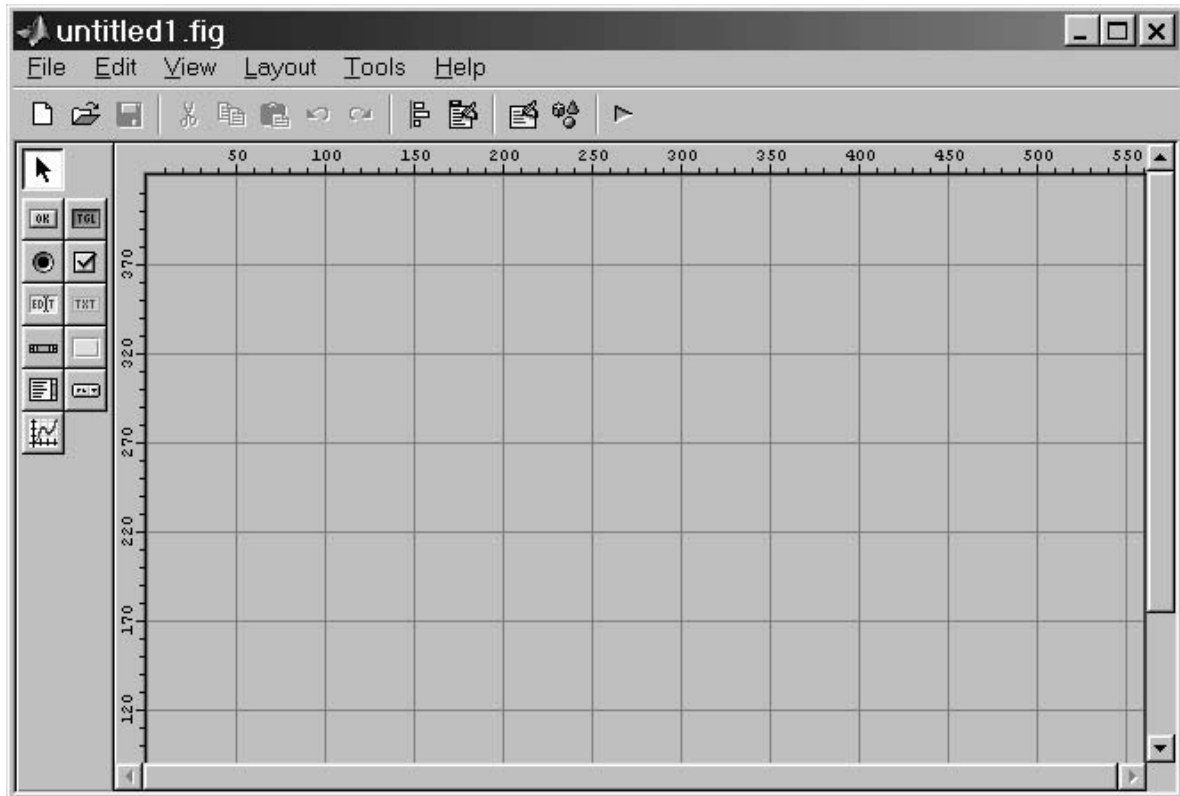


Figure 15.2 GUIDE Layout Editor

- Select the push button (click on it). Right-click for its context menu and select **Inspect Properties**. Use the Property Inspector to change the button's *String* property to *Time*. The text on the button in the layout area will change to *Time*. Note that the *Tag* property of the button is set to *pushbutton1*. This is the name GUIDE will use for the button's callback function when it generates the application M-file in a few minutes. If you want to use a more meaningful name when creating a GUI which may have many such buttons, now is the time to change the tag.

If you change a component's tag after generating the application M-file you have to change its callback function name by hand (and all references to the callback). You also have to change the name of the callback function in the component's *Callback* property. For example, suppose you have generated an application M-file with the name *myapp.m*, with a push button having the tag *pushbutton1*. The push button's *Callback* property will be something like

```
myapp('mybutton_Callback',gcbo,[],guidata(gcbo))
```

If you want to change the tag of the push button to *Open*, say, you will need to change its *Callback* property to

```
myapp('Open_Callback',gcbo,[],guidata(gcbo))
```

- Back in the Layout Editor select your button again and right-click for the context menu. Select **Edit Callback**. A dialog box appears for you to save your FIG-file. Choose a directory and give a filename of *time.fig*—make sure that the *.fig* extension is used.

GUIDE now generates the application M-file (`time.m`), which the Editor opens for you at the place where you now have to insert the code for whatever action you want when the Time button is clicked:

```
function varargout = pushbutton1_Callback(h, eventdata, ...
                                       handles, varargin)
% Stub for Callback of the uicontrol handles.pushbutton1.
disp('pushbutton1 Callback not implemented yet.')
```

Note that the callback's name is `pushbutton1_Callback` where `pushbutton1` is the button's Tag property.

Note also that the statement

```
disp('pushbutton1 Callback not implemented yet.')
```

is automatically generated for you.

- If you are impatient to see what your GUI looks like at this stage click the **Activate Figure** button at the right-hand end of the Layout Editor toolbar. An untitled window should appear with a Time button in it. Click the Time button—the message

```
pushbutton1 Callback not implemented yet
```

should appear in the Command Window.

- Now go back to the (M-file) Editor to change the `pushbutton1_Callback` function. Insert the following lines of code, which are explained below:

```
% get time
d = clock;
% convert time to string
time = sprintf( '%02.0f:%02.0f:%02.0f', d(4), d(5), d(6) );
% change the String property of pushbutton1
set(gcbo, 'String', time)
```

The function `clock` returns the date and time as a six-component vector in the format

```
[year month day hour minute seconds]
```

The `sprintf` statement converts the time into a string `time` in the usual format, e.g. `15:05:59`

- The last statement is the most important one as it is the basis of the button's action:

```
set(gcbo, 'String', time)
```

It is the button's `String` property which is displayed on the button in the GUI. It is therefore this property which we want to change to the current time when it is clicked.

The command `gcbo` stands for 'get callback object', and returns the handle of the current callback object, i.e. the most recently activated uicontrol. In this case the current callback object is the button itself (it could have been some other GUI component). The `set` statement then changes the `String` property of the callback object to the string `time` which we have created.

Easy!

- Save the application M-file and return to the Layout Editor. For completeness give the entire figure a name. Do this by right-clicking anywhere in the layout area outside the Time button. The context menu appears. Select **Property Inspector**. This time the Property Inspector is looking at the figure's properties (instead of the push button's properties) as indicated at the top of its window. Change the Name property to something suitable (like Time).

- Finally, click **Activate Figure** again in the Layout Editor. Your GUI should now appear in a window entitled *Time*. When you click the button the current time should appear on the button.
- If you want to run your GUI from the command line, enter the application M-file name.

Exercise

You may have noticed that graphics objects have a `Visible` property. See if you can write a GUI with a single button which disappears when you click on it! This exercise reminds me of a project my engineering friends had when I was a first-year student. They had to design a black box with a switch on the outside. When it was switched on a lid opened, and a hand came out of the box to switch it off ...

15.3 Newton again

Our next example is a GUI version of Newton's method to find a square root: you enter the number to be square-rooted, press the **Start** button, and some iterations appear on the GUI (Figure 15.3).

We will use the following uicontrols from the component palette in the Layout Editor:

- a static text control to display the instruction `Enter number to square root and press Start`: (static text is not interactive, so no callback function is generated for it);
- an edit text control for the user to enter the number to be square-rooted;
- a push button to start Newton's method;
- a static text control for the output, which will consist of several iterations. You can of course send the output to the command line with `disp`.
- We will also make the GUI window resizeable (did you notice that you couldn't resize the *Time* window in the previous example?).

Proceed as follows:

- Run `guide` from the command line. When the Layout Editor starts right-click anywhere in the layout area to get the figure's Property Inspector and set the figure's Name property to `Newton`.
- Now let's first make the GUI resizeable. Select **Tools** in the Layout Editor's toolbar and then **Application Options**. There are three **Resize behavior** options: **Non-resizable** (the default), **Proportional** and **User-specified**. Select **Proportional**. Note that under **Proportional** when you resize the window the GUI components are also resized, although the font size of labels does not resize.

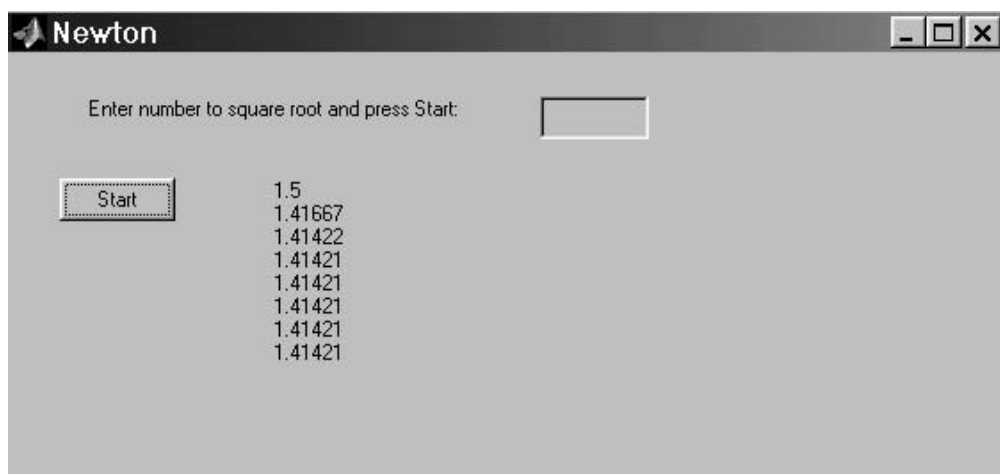


Figure 15.3 Square-rooting with Newton

- Place a static text control for the instruction to the user in the layout area. Note that you can use the Alignment Tool in the Layout Editor toolbar to align controls accurately if you wish. You can also use the **Snap to Grid** option in the **Layout** menu. If **Snap to Grid** is checked then any object which is moved to within nine pixels of a grid line jumps to that line. You can change the grid spacing with **Layout -> Grid and Rulers -> Grid size**. Use the Property Inspector to change the static text control's `String` property to `Enter number to square root and press Start`:
- Place an edit text control on the layout area for the user to input the number to be square-rooted. Set its `String` property to blank. Note that you don't need to activate the Property Inspector for each control. Once the Property Inspector has been started it switches to whichever object you select in the layout area. The tag of this component will be `edit1` since no other edit text components have been created.
- Activate the figure at this stage (use the Activate Figure button in the Layout Editor toolbar), and save it under the name `Newton.fig`. The application M-file should open in the Editor. Go to the `edit1_Callback` subfunction and remove the statement

```
disp('edit1 Callback not implemented yet.')
```

No further coding is required in this subfunction since action is to be initiated by the `Start` button. Remember to remove this `disp` statement from each callback subfunction as you work through the code.

- Insert another static text control in the layout area, for the output of Newton's method. Make it long enough for six or seven iterations. Set its `String` property to `Output` and its `HorizontalAlignment` to `left` (so that output will be left-justified). Make a note of its tag, which should be `text2` (`text1` being the tag of the other static text control).
- Place a push button in the layout area. Set its `String` property to `Start`. Its tag should be `pushbutton1`.
- Activate the figure again so that the application M-file gets updated. We now have to program the `pushbutton1_Callback` subfunction to
 - get the number to be square-rooted from the edit text control;
 - run Newton's method to estimate the square root of this number;
 - put the output of several iterations of Newton's method in the `Output` static text control.
 - clear the edit text control in readiness for the next number to be entered by the user.

These actions are achieved by the following code, which is explained below:

```
function varargout = pushbutton1_Callback(h, eventdata, ...
                                         handles, varargin)
% Stub for Callback of the uicontrol handles.pushbutton1.

a = str2num(get(handles.edit1,'String'));
x = a; % initial guess

for i = 1:8
    x = (x + a/x)/2;
    str(i) = {sprintf('%g',x)};
end

set(handles.edit1,'String','');
set(handles.text2,'String',str);
```

If you have read the helpful comments generated in the application M-file you will have seen that the input argument `handles` is a structure containing handles of components in the GUI, using their tags as fieldnames. This mechanism enables the various components to communicate with each other in the callback subfunctions. This is why it is not a good idea to change a tag after its callback subfunction has been generated; you would then need to change the name of the callback function as well as any references to its handle.

When you type anything into an edit text control, its `String` property is automatically set to whatever you type. The first statement

```
a = str2num(get(handles.edit1,'String'));
```

uses the handle of the edit text control to get its `String` property (assuming it to have been correctly entered—note that we not trying to catch any user errors here). The `str2num` function converts this string to the number `a`.

A `for` loop then goes through eight iterations of Newton's method to estimate the square root of `a`. The variable `x` in the loop contains the current estimate. `sprintf` converts the value of `x` to a string using the `g` (general) format code. The resulting string is stored in the `i`th element of a cell array `str`. Note the use of curly braces to construct the cell array. This use of a cell array is the easiest way to put multiple lines of text into an array for sending to the `text2` static text.

The statement

```
set(handles.edit1,'String','');
```

clears the display in the edit text control.

Finally, the statement

```
set(handles.text2,'String',str);
```

sets the `String` property of the `text2` static text control to the cell array containing the output.

- Save your work and activate the figure again to test it.

15.4 Axes on a GUI

This example demonstrates how to plot graphs in axes on a GUI. We want a button to draw the graph, one to toggle the grid on and off, and one to clear the axes (Figure 15.4). The only new feature in this example is how to plot in axes which are part of the GUI. We address this issue first.

- Open a new figure in the GUIDE Layout Editor. Right-click anywhere in the layout area to open the figure's Property Inspector. Note that the figure has a `HandleVisibility` property which is set to `off` by default. This prevents any drawing in the figure. For example, you would probably not want plot statements issued at the command-line to be drawn on the GUI. However, you can't at the moment draw on the GUI from within the GUI either! The answer is to set the figure's `HandleVisibility` property to `callback`. This allows any GUI component to plot graphs on axes which are part of the GUI, while still protecting the GUI from being drawn all over from the command line.
- Place an axes component on the GUI. Its `HandleVisibility` should be `on`.
- Place a push button (tag `pushbutton1`) on the GUI and change its `String` property to `Plot`. Save the figure (if you have not already) under the name `Plotter` and generate the application M-file. Edit the push button's callback subfunction to draw any graph, e.g. `sin(x)`.
- Place `pushbutton2` on the GUI to toggle the grid and put the command `grid` in its callback subfunction.
- Put `pushbutton3` on the GUI with the command `cla` to clear the axes.

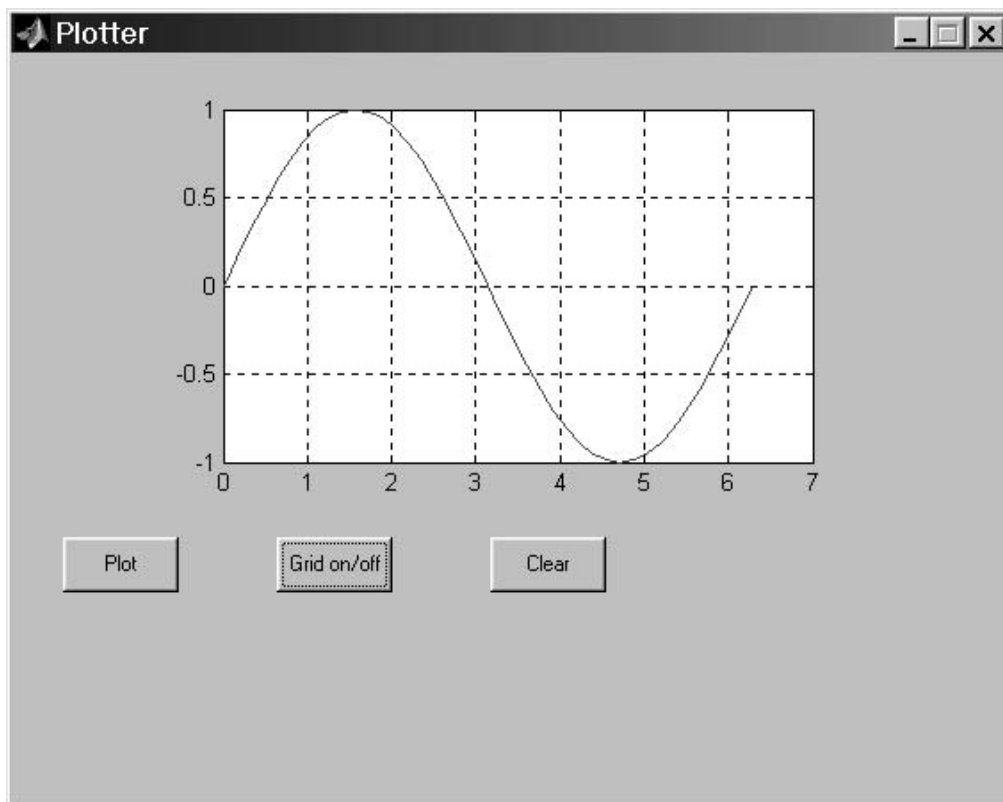


Figure 15.4 Axes on a GUI

- Save and re-activate the figure. Test it out. Change the figure's `HandleVisibility` back to `off`, activate the figure, and see what happens. Note that the figure object has a `IntegerHandle` property set to `off`. This means that even if `HandleVisibility` is on you can't plot on the axes from the command line (or another GUI) because a figure needs an integer handle in order to be accessed. If you want to be able to draw all over your GUI from the command line just set the figure's `IntegerHandle` to `on`.

15.5 Adding colour to a button

The final example in this chapter shows you how to add an image to a button.

- Create a GUI with a single push button in it.
- Set the button's `Units` property to `pixels`.
- Expand the button's `Position` property and set `width` to 100 and `height` to 50.
- Insert the following code in the button's callback subfunction:

```
a(:,:,1) = rand*ones(50,100);
a(:,:,2) = rand*ones(50,100);
a(:,:,3) = rand*ones(50,100);
set(h,'CData',a);
```

- The matrix `a` defines a truecolor image the same size as the push button, with each pixel in the image the same (random) colour.

The third dimension of `a` sets the RGB video intensities. If, for example, you would prefer the button to be a random shade of green, say, try

```
a(:, :, 1) = zeros(50, 100);  
a(:, :, 2) = rand*ones(50, 100);  
a(:, :, 3) = zeros(50, 100);
```

- The input argument `h` of the callback subfunction is the callback object's handle (obtained from `gcbo`).
- An image may also be added to a toggle button control.

An important issue which hasn't been dealt with yet is how to implement global application-defined data which can be shared amongst the callback subfunctions. This is discussed in Chapter 19 (**A GUI ODE solver: Driver**).

Summary

- GUIs are designed and implemented by MATLAB's GUIDE facility.
- The `guide` command starts the Layout Editor, which is used to design GUIs.
- GUIDE generates a FIG-file, which contains the GUI design, and an application M-file, which contains the code necessary to launch and control the GUI.
- You launch the GUI by running its application M-file.
- Many GUI components have callback subfunctions in the application M-file where you write the code to specify the components' actions.
- You use the Property Inspector to set a GUI component's properties at the design stage.
- The handles of all GUI components are fields in the `handles` structure in the application M-file. These handles are available to all callback subfunctions and enable you to find and change components' properties.

16

Importing and exporting data

Objectives

The objectives of this chapter are to introduce you briefly to ways of importing and exporting data in and out of the MATLAB workspace using

- the `load` and `save` commands;
- the Import Wizard;
- low-level file I/O functions.

When you get into serious programming you will often need to store data on a disk. The process of moving data between MATLAB and disk files is called importing (from disk files) and exporting (to disk files). Data are saved in disk files in one of two formats: text or binary. In text format, data values are ASCII codes, and can be viewed in any text editor. In binary format, data values are not ASCII codes and cannot be viewed in a text editor. Binary format is more efficient in terms of storage space required. This chapter provides a brief summary of the main ways in which MATLAB imports and exports data. For full details consult **Using MATLAB: Development Environment: Importing and Exporting Data**.

16.1 The `load` and `save` commands

If you want to save data between MATLAB sessions the `save` and `load` commands are probably the best ones to use.

Exporting text (ASCII) data

To export (save) the array

```
A =  
    1     2     3  
    4     5     6
```

in ‘delimited’ ASCII format in the file `myData.txt` use the command

```
save myData.txt A -ascii
```

If you view `myData.txt` in a text editor (or type it in the Command Window) it looks like this:

```
1.0000000e+000 2.0000000e+000 3.0000000e+000
4.0000000e+000 5.0000000e+000 6.0000000e+000
```

Delimiters are the characters used to separate the data values in the file—spaces by default. You can tabs instead of spaces by specifying the `-tabs` qualifier instead of `-ascii`.

If you save character arrays (strings) in this way, the ASCII codes of the characters are written to the file.

Importing text (ASCII) data

The `load` command is the reverse of `save`, but has a curious twist. If the array `A` has been saved in `myData.txt` as above the command

```
load myData.txt
```

creates a variable in the workspace *with the same name as the file, minus the extension*, i.e. `myData`. If you don’t want the filename as the variable name (who would?) use the functional form of the command, e.g.

```
A = load('myData.txt')
```

Data imported in this way doesn’t have to be created by MATLAB. You can create it in a text editor, or it could be created by any other program that exports data in ASCII format.

Exporting binary data

The command

```
save filename x y z
```

saves the variables `x`, `y` and `z` in the file `filename.mat` in MATLAB proprietary binary format, i.e. such a MAT-file can only be used by MATLAB.

If no variables are listed the entire workspace is saved.

The extension `.mat` is the default—you can specify a different extension.

See `help` for all the `save` options.

Importing binary data

The command

```
load filename
```

loads all the variables from `filename.mat` into the workspace.

See `help` for all the `load` options.

16.2 The Import Wizard

The MATLAB Import Wizard is the easiest way of importing data into the workspace during an interactive session.

Importing ASCII data

Use the Import Wizard to import ASCII data as follows:

- Start the Import Wizard by selecting **Import Data** on the MATLAB **File** menu. You can also use `uiimport` on the command line to start it.
A list of files appears in a dialogue box. **Open** the file you want to import.
- Select the delimiter used in the text file (if necessary). Click **Next**.
- Select the variables you want to import. By default the Import Wizard puts all the numeric data in one variable and all the text data in other variables, but you can choose other options.
- Click **Finish** to import the data into the selected variables.

Importing binary data

To import binary data with the Import Wizard, start it in the same way as when importing text data. When the file opens the Import Wizard attempts to process its contents and creates variables depending on the type of data in the file. Check the variables you want to import and click **Finish** to create the selected variables.

You can, for example, import data from an Excel spreadsheet in this way. If the data are numeric with row and column headers, the Import Wizard imports the numeric data into a numeric array and the headers into a cell array. Neat isn't it?

16.3 Low-level file I/O functions

MATLAB has a set of low-level file I/O (input/output) functions based on the I/O functions of the ANSI Standard C Library. You would typically use these functions to access binary data written by C or Java programs, for example, or to access a database which is too large to be loaded into the workspace in its entirety.

C programmers should note that the MATLAB file I/O commands are not all identical to their C counterparts. For example, `fread` is 'vectorized', i.e. it reads until it encounters a text string or the end of file.

Files can be accessed with these functions in text or binary mode. In binary mode you can think of the file as a long continuous stream of bytes, which are your responsibility to interpret correctly. Files opened in binary mode can be accessed 'randomly', i.e. you can specify at which particular byte you want to start reading or writing.

The short programs which follow show how to create a file in binary mode, how to read it, and how to change it. Explanations of new features follow each program. You will need to consult the online documentation and `help` to see the wide range of options available for these I/O functions.

Writing binary data

The example we are going to use has a wide variety of applications. We want to set up a database of *records*, each record consisting of information about individuals (clients, customers, students). In this example each record will have a student's name and one mark. (The term 'record' has no particular significance in MATLAB, as it does, for example, in Pascal. It is used here as a convenient way of thinking of the basic unit in a database.)

The following program (`writer.m`) invites you to enter any number of names and marks from the command line, and writes them as binary data to a file. To terminate the process just hit **Enter** for the next name.

```
namelen = 10;           % 10 bytes for name
fid = fopen('marks.bin', 'w'); % open for write only
str = '?';             % not empty to start
```

```
while ~isempty(str)
    str = input( 'Enter name: ', 's' );
    if ~isempty(str)
        if length(str) > namelen
            name = str(1:namelen);           %only first ten chars allowed
        else
            name = str;
            name(length(str)+1:namelen) = ' '; %pad with blanks if
                                                ...too short
        end
        fwrite(fid, name);
        mark = input( 'Enter mark: ' );
        fwrite(fid, mark, 'float');         % 4 bytes for mark
    end
end

fclose(fid);
```

Note:

- The statement

```
fid = fopen('marks.bin', 'w');
```

creates a file `marks.bin` for writing only. If the file is successfully opened `fopen` returns a non-negative integer called the *file identifier* (`fid`) which can be passed to other I/O functions to access the opened file. If `fopen` fails (e.g. if you try to open a non-existent file for reading) it returns `-1` to `fid` and assigns an error message to an optional second output argument.

The second argument `'w'` of `fopen` is the permission string and specifies the kind of access to the file you require, e.g. `'r'` for read only, `'w'` for write only, `'r+'` for both reading and writing, etc. See `help fopen` for all the possible permission strings.

- The while loop continues asking for names until an empty string is entered (`str` must therefore be non-empty initially).
- Each name written to the file must be the same length (otherwise you won't know where each record begins when it comes to changing them). The `if` statement ensures that each name has exactly 10 characters (`namelen`) no matter how many characters are entered (the number 10 is arbitrary of course!).
- The first `fwrite` statement

```
fwrite(fid, name);
```

writes all the characters in `name` to the file (one byte each).

- The second `fwrite` statement

```
fwrite(fid, mark, 'float');
```

writes `mark` to the file. The third (optional) argument (`precision`) specifies both the number of bits written for `mark` and how these bits will be interpreted in an equivalent `fread` statement. `'float'` means single-precision numeric (usually 32 bits—4 bytes—although this value is hardware dependent). The default for this argument is `'uchar'`—unsigned characters (one byte).

- The statement

```
fclose(fid);
```

closes the file (returning 0 if the operation succeeds). Although MATLAB automatically closes all files when you exit from MATLAB it is good practice to close files explicitly with `fclose` when you have finished using them.

You can close all files with `fclose('all')`

Reading binary data

The next program (`reader.m`) reads the file written with `writer.m` above and displays each record:

```

namelen = 10;                % 10 bytes for name
fid = fopen('marks.bin', 'r');

while ~feof(fid)
    str = fread(fid,namelen);
    name = char(str');
    mark = fread(fid, 1, 'float');
    fprintf('%s %4.0f\n', name, mark)
end

fclose(fid);

```

Note:

- The file is opened for read only ('r').
- The function `feof(fid)` returns 1 if the end of the specified file has been reached, and 0 otherwise.
- The first `fread` statement reads the next `namelen` (10) bytes from the file into the variable `str`. When the name was written by `fwrite` the ASCII codes of the characters were actually written to the file. Therefore the `char` function is needed to convert the codes back to characters. Furthermore the bytes being read are interpreted as entries in a column matrix; `str` must be transposed if you want to display the name in the usual horizontal format.
- The second `fread` statement specifies that one value (the number of values is given by the second argument) is to be read in `float` precision (four bytes). You could, for example, read an entire array of 78 `float` numbers with

```
a = fread(fid, 78, 'float');
```

Changing binary data

To demonstrate how to change records in a file we assume for simplicity that you will only want to change a student's mark, and not the name. The program below (`changer.m`) asks which record to change, displays the current name and mark in that record, asks for the corrected mark, and overwrites the original mark in that record.

```

namelen = 10;                % 10 bytes for name
reclen = namelen + 4;
fid = fopen('marks.bin', 'r+'); % open for read and write

rec = input('Which record do you want to change? ');
fpos = (rec-1)*reclen;        % file position indicator
fseek(fid, fpos, 'bof');      % move file position indicator
str = fread(fid,namelen);     % read the name
name = char(str');
mark = fread(fid, 1, 'float'); % read the mark
fprintf('%s %4.0f\n', name, mark)

mark = input('Enter corrected mark: '); % new mark
fseek(fid, -4, 'cof');        % go back 4 bytes to start of mark
fwrite(fid, mark, 'float');   % overwrite mark
fprintf('Mark updated\n');

fclose(fid);

```

Note:

- The file is opened for reading *and* writing ('r+').
- When a file is opened with `fopen` MATLAB maintains a *file position indicator*. The position in the file where MATLAB will begin the next operation on the file (reading or writing) is *one byte beyond* the file position indicator.
`fpos` calculates the value of the file position indicator in order to commence reading the record number `rec`.
- The `fseek` function moves the file position indicator. Its second argument specifies where in the file to move the file position indicator, relative to an origin given by the third argument. Possible origins are 'bof' (beginning of file), 'cof' (current position in file) or 'eof' (end of file). In this example, the records are 14 bytes long (10 for the name, four for the mark). If we wanted to update the second record, say, we would use

```
fseek(fid, 14, 'bof');
```

which moves the file position indicator to byte 14 from the beginning of the file, ready to start accessing at byte 15, which is the beginning of the second record.

`fseek` returns 0 (successful) or -1 (unsuccessful).

Incidentally, if you get lost in the file you can always use `ftell` to find out where you are!

- The `fread` statement, which reads the mark to be changed, automatically advances the file position indicator by four bytes (the number of bytes required `float` precision). In order to overwrite the mark, we therefore have to move the file position indicator *back* four bytes from its current position. The statement

```
fseek(fid, -4, 'cof');
```

achieves this.

- The `fwrite` statement then overwrites the mark.

Note that the programs above don't have any error trapping devices, for example, preventing you from reading from a non-existent file, or preventing you from overwriting a record that isn't there. It is left to you to fill in these sort of details.

Exercise

If you are feeling enthusiastic, why not dress these programs up with a GUI, for example:

- a **Next** button to display the next record (start at the first record) on the GUI in a static text component;
- a **Previous** button to display the previous record;
- a **Change** button to change the current record;
- an edit text component in which to enter the new mark.

See Chapter 19 (**A GUI ODE solver: Driver**) for how best to share data between GUI subfunctions (global data handling).

16.4 Other import/export functions

Other import/export functions, with differing degrees of flexibility and ease of use, include `csvread`, `csvwrite`, `dlmread`, `dlmwrite`, `fgets`, `fprintf` (which has an optional argument to specify a file), `fscanf`, `textread`, `xlsread`. You know where to look for the details!

Finally, recall that the `diary` command can also be used to export small arrays as text data, although you will need to edit out extraneous text.

Summary

- Data can be saved to disk files in text (ASCII) format or in binary format.
- `load` and `save` can be used to import/export both text and binary data (the latter in the form of MAT-files).
- The Import Wizard provides an easy way of importing both text and binary data.
- MATLAB's low-level I/O functions such as `fread` and `fwrite` provide random access to binary files.

17

Simulation

Objective

The objective of this chapter is to introduce you to

- simulation of real-life events.

Simulation is an area of application where computers have come into their own. A simulation is a *computer experiment* which mirrors some aspect of the real world that appears to be based on random processes, or is too complicated to understand properly. (Whether events can be really random is actually a philosophical or theological question.) Some examples are: radio-active decay, rolling dice, bacteria division and traffic flow. The essence of a simulation program is that the programmer is unable to predict beforehand exactly what the outcome of the program will be, which is true to the event being simulated. For example, when you spin a coin, you do not know for sure what the result will be.

17.1 Random number generation

Random events are easily simulated in MATLAB with the function `rand`, which we have briefly encountered already. By default, `rand` returns a *uniformly distributed pseudo-random* number in the range $0 \leq \text{rand} < 1$. (A computer cannot generate truly random numbers, but they can be practically unpredictable.) `rand` can also generate row or column vectors, e.g. `rand(1, 5)` returns a row vector of five random numbers (1 row, 5 column) as shown:

```
0.9501    0.2311    0.6068    0.4860    0.8913
```

If you generate more random numbers during the same MATLAB session, you will get a different sequence each time, as you would expect. However, each time you start a MATLAB session, the random number sequence begins at the same place (0.9501), and continues in the same way. This is not true to life, as every gambler knows. To produce a different sequence each time you start a session, `rand` can be initially *seeded* in a different way each time you start.

Seeding rand

The random number generator `rand` can be seeded with the statement

```
rand('state', n)
```

where `n` is any integer. (By default, `n` is set to 0 when a MATLAB session starts.) This is useful if you want to generate the *same* random sequence every time a script runs, e.g. in order to debug it properly. Note that this statement does not generate any random numbers; it only initializes the generator.

However, you can also arrange for `n` to be different each time you start MATLAB by using the system time. The function `clock` returns the date and time in a six-element vector with seconds to two decimal places, so the expression `sum(100*clock)` never has the same value (well, hardly ever). You can use it to seed `rand` as follows:

```
>> rand('state', sum(100*clock))
>> rand(1,7)
ans =
    0.3637    0.2736    0.9910    0.3550    0.8501    0.0911    0.4493
>> rand('state', sum(100*clock))
>> rand(1,7)
ans =
    0.9309    0.2064    0.7707    0.7644    0.2286    0.7722    0.5315
```

Theoretically `rand` can generate over 2^{1492} numbers before repeating itself.

If you are upgrading from MATLAB Version 4 you can use the MATLAB 4 generator with `rand('seed', n)`.

17.2 Spinning coins

When a fair (unbiased) coin is spun, the probability of getting heads or tails is 0.5 (50%). Since a value returned by `rand` is equally likely to anywhere in the interval $[0, 1)$ we can represent heads, say, with a value less than 0.5, and tails otherwise.

Suppose an experiment calls for a coin to be spun 50 times, and the results recorded. In real life you may need to repeat such an experiment a number of times; this is where computer simulation is handy. The following script simulates spinning a coin 50 times:

```
for i = 1:50
    r = rand;
    if r < 0.5
        fprintf( 'H' )
    else
        fprintf( 'T' )
    end
end
fprintf( '\n' )           % newline
```

Here is the output from two sample runs:

```
THHTTHHHHTTTTTHTHTTTHHTHTTTTHHTTTTHTTTHHTHHHHHTTHTT
THTHHHTHTHTTHTTHTTTHHTTTTTTTHHTTTHTHHHTHHHTTHTHTT
```

Note that it should be impossible in principle to tell from the output alone whether the experiment was simulated or real (if the random number generator is sufficiently random).

Can you see why it would be wrong to code the `if` part of the coin simulation like this:

```
if rand < 0.5 fprintf( 'H' ), end
if rand >= 0.5 fprintf( 'T' ), end
```

The basic principle is that `rand` should be called only *once* for each ‘event’ being simulated. Here the single event is spinning a coin, but `rand` is called twice. Also, since two different random numbers are generated, it is quite possible that *both* logical expressions will be true, in which case ‘H’ and ‘T’ will both be displayed for the same coin!

Exercise 17.1 invites you to do this problem more efficiently with 0-1 vectors instead of a `for` loop.

17.3 Rolling dice

When a fair dice is rolled, the number uppermost is equally likely to be any integer from 1 to 6. We saw in **Counting random numbers** (Chapter 5) how to use `rand` to simulate this. The following statement generates a vector with 10 random integers in the range 1–6:

```
d = floor( 6 * rand(1,10) + 1 )
```

Here are the results of two such simulations:

```
2      1      5      5      6      3      4      5      1      1
4      5      1      3      1      3      5      4      6      6
```

We can do statistics on our simulated experiment, just as if it were a real one. For example, we could estimate the mean of the number obtained when the dice is rolled 100 times, and the probability of getting a six, say.

17.4 Bacteria division

If a fair coin is spun, or a fair dice is rolled, the different events (e.g. getting ‘heads’, or a 6) happen with equal likelihood. Suppose, however, that a certain type of bacteria divides (into two) in a given time interval with a probability of 0.75 (75%), and that if it does not divide, it dies. Since a value generated by `rand` is equally likely to be anywhere between 0 and 1, the chances of it being *less than* 0.75 are precisely 75%. We can therefore simulate this situation as follows:

```
r = rand;
if r < 0.75
    disp( 'I am now we' )
else
    disp( 'I am no more' )
end
```

Again, the basic principle is that one random number should be generated for each event being simulated. The single event here is the bacterium’s life history over the time interval.

17.5 A random walk

A seriously short-sighted sailor has lost his contact lenses returning from a symphony concert, and has to negotiate a jetty to get to his ship. The jetty is 50 paces long and 20 wide. He is in the middle of the jetty at the quay-end, pointing toward the ship. Suppose at every step he has a 60% chance of stumbling

blindly toward the ship, but a 20% chance of lurching to the left or right (he manages to be always facing the ship). If he reaches the ship-end of the jetty, he is hauled aboard by waiting mates.

The problem is to simulate his progress along the jetty, and to estimate his chances of getting to the ship without falling into the sea. To do this correctly, we must simulate one *random walk* along the jetty, find out whether or not he reaches the ship, and then repeat this simulation 1000 times, say (if we have a fast enough computer!). The proportion of simulations that end with the sailor safely in the ship will be an estimate of his chances of making it to the ship. For a given walk we assume that if he has not either reached the ship or fallen into the sea after, say, 10000 steps, he dies of thirst on the jetty.

To represent the jetty, we set up co-ordinates so that the x -axis runs along the middle of the jetty with the origin at the quay-end. x and y are measured in steps. The sailor starts his walk at the origin each time. The structure plan and script are as follows:

1. Initialize variables, including number of walks n
2. Repeat n simulated walks down the jetty:
 - Start at the quay-end of the jetty
 - While still on the jetty and still alive repeat:
 - Get a random number R for the next step
 - If $R < 0.6$ then
 - Move forward (to the ship)
 - Else if $R < 0.8$ then
 - Move port (left)
 - Else
 - Move starboard
 - If he got to the ship then
 - Count that walk as a success
3. Compute and print estimated probability of reaching the ship
4. Stop.

```
% random walk
n = input( 'Number of walks: ' );
nsafe = 0; % number of times he makes it

for i = 1:n
    steps = 0; % each new walk ...
    x = 0; % ... starts at the origin
    y = 0;

    while x <= 50 & abs(y) <= 10 & steps < 1000
        steps = steps + 1; % that's another step
        r = rand; % random number for that step
        if r < 0.6 % which way did he go?
            x = x + 1; % maybe forward ...
        elseif r < 0.8
            y = y + 1; % ... or to port ...
        else
            y = y - 1; % ... or to starboard
        end;
    end;

    if x > 50
        nsafe = nsafe + 1; % he actually made it this time!
    end;

end;
```

```
prob = 100 * nsafe / n;  
disp( prob );
```

A sample run of 100 walks took about 1.7 seconds on my Celeron, and gave an 93% probability of reaching the ship.

You can speed up the script by about 20% if you generate a vector of 1000 random numbers, say, at the start of each walk (with `r = rand(1,1000);`) and then reference elements of the vector in the while loop, e.g.

```
if r(steps) < 0.6 ...
```

17.6 Traffic flow

A major application of simulation is in modelling the traffic flow in large cities, in order to test different traffic light patterns before inflicting them on the real traffic. In this example we look at a very small part of the problem: how to simulate the flow of a single line of traffic through one set of traffic lights. We make the following assumptions (you can make additional or different ones if like):

1. Traffic travels straight, without turning.
2. The probability of a car arriving at the lights in a particular second is independent of what happened during the previous second. This is called a *Poisson process*. This probability (call it p) may be estimated by watching cars at the intersection and monitoring their arrival pattern. In this simulation we take $p = 0.3$.
3. When the lights are green, assume the cars move through at a steady rate of, say, eight every ten seconds.
4. In the simulation, we will take the basic time period to be ten seconds, so we want a display showing the length of the queue of traffic (if any) at the lights every ten seconds.
5. We will set the lights red or green for variable multiples of ten seconds.

The situation is modelled with a script file `traffic.m` which calls three function files: `go.m`, `stop.m`, and `prq.m`. Because the function files need access to a number of base workspace variables created by `traffic.m`, these variables are declared `global` in `traffic.m`, and in all three function files.

In this example the lights are red for 40 seconds (`red = 4`) and green for 20 seconds (`green = 2`). The simulation runs for 240 seconds (`n = 24`).

The script, `traffic.m`, is as follows:

```
clc  
clear % clear out any previous garbage!  
global CARS GTIMER GREEN LIGHTS RED RTIMER T  
  
CARS = 0; % number of cars in queue  
GTIMER = 0; % timer for green lights  
GREEN = 2; % period lights are green  
LIGHTS = 'R'; % colour of lights  
n = 48; % number of 10-sec periods  
p = 0.3; % probability of a car arriving  
RED = 4; % period lights are red  
RTIMER = 0; % timer for red lights  
  
for T = 1:n % for each 10-sec period  
    r = rand(1,10); % 10 seconds means 10 random numbers  
    CARS = CARS + sum(r < p); % cars arriving in 10 seconds
```



```

    if LIGHTS == 'G'
        go                % handles green lights
    else
        stop             % handles red lights
    end;

end;

```

The function files `go.m`, `stop.m` and `prq.m` (all separate M-files) are as follows:

```

% -----
function go
global CARS GTIMER GREEN LIGHTS
GTIMER = GTIMER + 1;      % advance green timer
CARS = CARS - 8;         % let 8 cars through

if CARS < 0                % ... there may have been < 8
    CARS = 0;
end;

prq;                       % display queue of cars

if GTIMER == GREEN        % check if lights need to change
    LIGHTS = 'R';
    GTIMER = 0;
end;

% -----
function stop
global LIGHTS RED RTIMER
RTIMER = RTIMER + 1;      % advance red timer
prq;                       % display queue of cars

if RTIMER == RED         % check if lights must be changed
    LIGHTS = 'G';
    RTIMER = 0;
end;

% -----
function prq
global CARS LIGHTS T
fprintf( '%3.0f ', T );    % display period number

if LIGHTS == 'R'         % display colour of lights
    fprintf( 'R   ' );
else
    fprintf( 'G   ' );
end;

for i = 1:CARS           % display * for each car
    fprintf( '* ' );
end;

fprintf( '\n' )          % new line

```

Typical output looks like this:

```

1 R      ****
2 R      ****
3 R      ****
4 R      ****
5 G      ****
6 G      ****
7 R      ****
8 R      ****
9 R      ****
10 R     ****
11 G     ****
12 G     ****
13 R     ****
14 R     ****
15 R     ****
16 R     ****
17 G     ****
18 G     ****
19 R     ****
20 R     ****
21 R     ****
22 R     ****
23 G     ****
24 G     ****

```

From this particular run it seems that a traffic jam is building up, although more and longer runs are needed to see if this is really so. In that case, one can experiment with different periods for red and green lights in order to get an acceptable traffic pattern before setting the real lights to that cycle. Of course, we can get closer to reality by considering two-way traffic, and allowing cars to turn in both directions, and occasionally to break down, but this program gives the basic ideas.

17.7 Normal (Gaussian) random numbers

The function `randn` generates *Gaussian* or *normal* random numbers (as opposed to *uniform*) with a mean (μ) of 0 and a variance (σ^2) of 1.

- Generate 100 normal random numbers `r` with `randn(1,100)` and draw their histogram. Use the functions `mean(r)` and `std(r)` to find their mean and standard deviation (σ).
- Repeat with 1000 random numbers. The mean and standard deviation should be closer to 0 and 1 this time.

The functions `rand` and `randn` have separate generators, each with its own seed.

Summary

- A simulation is a computer program written to mimic a real-life situation which is apparently based on chance.
- The pseudo-random number generator `rand` returns uniformly distributed random numbers in the range $[0, 1)$, and is the basis of the simulations discussed in this chapter.

- `randn` generates normally distributed (Gaussian) random numbers.
- `rand('state', n)` enables the user to seed `rand` with any integer `n`. A seed may be obtained from `clock`, which returns the system clock time.
`randn` may be seeded (independently) in a similar way.
- Each independent event being simulated requires one and only one random number.

Exercises

- 17.1 Write some statements to simulate spinning a coin 50 times using 0-1 vectors instead of a `for` loop. **Hints:** generate a vector of 50 random numbers, set up 0-1 vectors to represent the heads and tails, and use `double` and `char` to display them as a string of Hs and Ts.
- 17.2 In a game of Bingo the numbers 1 to 99 are drawn at random from a bag. Write a script to simulate the draw of the numbers (each number can be drawn only once), printing them ten to a line.
- 17.3 Generate some strings of 80 random alphabetic letters (lowercase only). For fun, see how many real words, if any, you can find in the strings.
- 17.4 A random number generator can be used to estimate π as follows (such a method is called a *Monte Carlo* method). Write a script which generates random points in a square with sides of length 2, say, and which counts what proportion of these points falls inside the circle of unit radius that fits exactly into the square. This proportion will be the ratio of the area of the circle to that of the square. Hence estimate π . (This is not a very efficient method, as you will see from the number of points required to get even a rough approximation.)
- 17.5 Write a script to simulate the progress of the short-sighted student in Chapter 18 (**Markov Processes**). Start him at a given intersection, and generate a random number to decide whether he moves toward the internet cafe or home, according to the probabilities in the transition matrix. For each simulated walk, record whether he ends up at home or in the cafe. Repeat a large number of times. The proportion of walks that end up in either place should approach the limiting probabilities computed using the Markov model described in Chapter 18. **Hint:** if the random number is less than $2/3$ he moves toward the cafe (unless he is already at home or in the cafe, in which case that random walk ends), otherwise he moves toward home.
- 17.6 The aim of this exercise is to simulate bacteria growth. Suppose that a certain type of bacteria divides or dies according to the following assumptions:
- during a fixed time interval, called a *generation*, a single bacterium divides into two identical replicas with probability p ;
 - if it does not divide during that interval, it dies;
 - the offspring (called daughters) will divide or die during the next generation, independently of the past history (there may well be no offspring, in which case the colony becomes extinct).

Start with a single individual and write a script which simulates a number of generations. Take $p = 0.75$. The number of generations which you can simulate will depend on your computer system. Carry out a large number (e.g. 100) of such simulations. The probability of ultimate extinction, $p(E)$, may be estimated as the proportion of simulations that end in extinction. You can also estimate the mean size of the n th generation from a large number of simulations. Compare your estimate with the theoretical mean of $(2p)^n$.

Statistical theory shows that the expected value of the extinction probability $p(E)$ is the smaller of 1, and $(1 - p)/p$. So for $p = 0.75$, $p(E)$ is expected to be $1/3$. But for $p \leq 0.5$, $p(E)$ is expected to be 1, which means that extinction is certain (a rather unexpected result). You can use your script to test this theory by running it for different values of p , and estimating $p(E)$ in each case.

- 17.7 I am indebted to a colleague, Gordon Kass, for suggesting this problem. Dribblefire Jets Inc. make two types of aeroplane, the two-engined DFII, and the four-engined DFIV. The engines are terrible and fail with probability 0.5 on a standard flight (the engines fail independently of each other). The manufacturers claim that the planes can fly if at least half of their engines are working, i.e. the DFII will crash only if both its engines fail, while the DFIV will crash if all four, or if any three engines fail. You have been commissioned by the Civil Aviation Board to ascertain which of the two models is less likely to crash. Since parachutes are expensive, the cheapest (and safest!) way to do this is to simulate a large number of flights of each model. For example, two calls of `Math.random` could represent one standard DFII flight: if both random numbers are less than 0.5, that flight crashes, otherwise it doesn't. Write a script which simulates a large number of flights of both models, and estimates the probability of a crash in each case. If you can run enough simulations, you may get a surprising result. (Incidentally, the probability of n engines failing on a given flight is given by the binomial distribution, but you do not need to use this fact in the simulation.)
- 17.8 Two players, A and B , play a game called *Eights*. They take it in turns to choose a number 1, 2 or 3, which may not be the same as the last number chosen (so if A starts with 2, B may only choose 1 or 3 at the next move). A starts, and may choose any of the three numbers for the first move. After each move, the number chosen is added to a common running total. If the total reaches 8 exactly, the player whose turn it was wins the game. If a player causes the total to go over 8, the other player wins. For example, suppose A starts with 1 (total 1), B chooses 2 (total 3), A chooses 1 (total 4) and B chooses 2 (total 6). A would like to play 2 now, to win, but he can't because B cunningly played it on the last move, so A chooses 1 (total 7). This is even smarter, because B is forced to play 2 or 3, making the total go over 8 and thereby losing. Write a script to simulate each player's chances of winning, if they always play at random.
- 17.9 If r is a normal random number with mean 0 and variance 1 (as generated by `randn`), it can be transformed into a random number X with mean μ and standard deviation σ by the relation

$$X = \sigma r + \mu.$$

In an experiment a Geiger counter is used to count the radio-active emissions of cobalt 60 over a 10-second period. After a large number of such readings are taken, the count rate is estimated to be normally distributed with a mean of 460 and a standard deviation of 20.

- Simulate such an experiment 200 times by generating 200 random numbers with this mean and standard deviation. Plot the histogram (use 10 bins).
 - Repeat a few times to note how the histogram changes each time.
- 17.10 Radio-active carbon 11 has a decay-rate k of 0.0338 per minute, i.e. a particular C^{11} atom has a 3.38% chance of decaying in any one minute. Suppose we start with 100 such atoms. We would like to simulate their fate over a period of 100 minutes, say. We want to end up with a bar graph showing how many atoms remain undecayed after 1, 2, ..., 100 minutes.

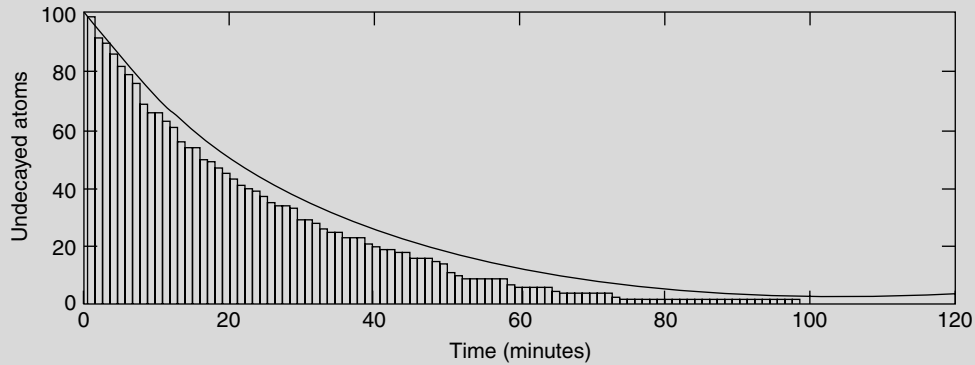


Figure 17.1 Radio-active decay of carbon 11: simulated and theoretical

We need to simulate when each of the 100 atoms decays. This can be done, for each atom, by generating a random number r for each of the 100 minutes, until either $r > k$ (that atom decays), or the 100 minutes is up. If the atom decayed at time $t < 100$, increment the frequency distribution $f(t)$ by 1. $f(t)$ will be the number of atoms decaying at time t minutes.

Now convert the number $f(t)$ decaying each minute to the number $R(t)$ remaining each minute. If there are n atoms to start with, after one minute, the number $R(1)$ remaining will be $n - f(1)$, since $f(1)$ is the number decaying during the first minute. The number $R(2)$ remaining after two minutes will be $n - f(1) - f(2)$. In general, the number remaining after t minutes will be (in MATLAB notation)

$$R(t) = n - \text{sum}(f(1:t))$$

Write a script to compute $R(t)$ and plot its bar graph. Superimpose on the bar graph the theoretical result, which is

$$R(t) = 100 \exp^{-kt} .$$

Typical results are shown in Figure 17.1.

18

More matrices

Objectives

The objectives of this chapter are to demonstrate the use of matrices in a number of application areas, including

- population dynamics
- Markov processes
- linear equations

and to introduce

- MATLAB's sparse matrix facilities.

18.1 Leslie matrices: population growth

Our first application of matrices is in population dynamics.

Suppose we want to model the growth of a population of rabbits, in the sense that given their number at some moment, we would like to estimate the size of the population in a few years' time. One approach is to divide the rabbit population up into a number of age classes, where the members of each age class are one time unit older than the members of the previous class, the time unit being whatever is convenient for the population being studied (days, months, etc.).

If X_i is the size of the i th age class, we define a *survival factor* P_i as the proportion of the i th class that survive to the $(i + 1)$ th age class, i.e. the proportion that 'graduate'. F_i is defined as the *mean fertility* of the i th class. This is the mean number of newborn individuals expected to be produced during one time interval by each member of the i th class at the beginning of the interval (only females count in biological modelling, since there are always enough males to go round!).

Suppose for our modified rabbit model we have three age classes, with X_1 , X_2 and X_3 members respectively. We will call them young, middle-aged and old-aged for convenience. We will take our time unit as one month, so X_1 is the number that were born during the current month, and which will be considered as youngsters at the end of the month. X_2 is the number of middle-aged rabbits at the end of the month, and X_3 the number of oldsters. Suppose the youngsters cannot reproduce, so that $F_1 = 0$. Suppose the fertility rate for middle-aged rabbits is 9, so $F_2 = 9$, while for oldsters $F_3 = 12$. The probability of survival from youth to middle-age is one third, so $P_1 = 1/3$, while no less than half the

middle-aged rabbits live to become oldsters, so $P_2 = 0.5$ (we are assuming for the sake of illustration that all old-aged rabbits die at the end of the month—this can be corrected easily). With this information we can quite easily compute the changing population structure month by month, as long as we have the population breakdown to start with.

If we now denote the current month by t , and next month by $(t + 1)$, we can refer to this month's youngsters as $X_1(t)$, and to next month's as $X_1(t + 1)$, with similar notation for the other two age classes. We can then write a scheme for updating the population from month t to month $(t + 1)$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} X_1(t + 1) &= F_2 X_2(t) + F_3 X_3(t), \\ X_2(t + 1) &= P_1 X_1(t), \\ X_3(t + 1) &= P_2 X_2(t). \end{aligned}$$

We now define a population vector $\mathbf{X}(t)$, with three components, $X_1(t)$, $X_2(t)$, and $X_3(t)$, representing the three age classes of the rabbit population in month t . The above three equations can then be rewritten as

$$\begin{bmatrix} X_1 \\ X_2 \\ X_3 \end{bmatrix}_{(t+1)} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & F_2 & F_3 \\ P_1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & P_2 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \times \begin{bmatrix} X_1 \\ X_2 \\ X_3 \end{bmatrix}_t$$

where the subscript at the bottom of the vectors indicates the month. We can write this even more concisely as the matrix equation

$$\mathbf{X}(t + 1) = \mathbf{L} \mathbf{X}(t), \quad (18.1)$$

where \mathbf{L} is the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 9 & 12 \\ 1/3 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1/2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

in this particular case. \mathbf{L} is called a *Leslie matrix*. A population model can always be written in the form of Equation (18.1) if the concepts of age classes, fertility, and survival factors, as outlined above, are used.

Now that we have established a matrix representation for our model, we can easily write a script using matrix multiplication and repeated application of Equation (18.1):

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{X}(t + 2) &= \mathbf{L} \mathbf{X}(t + 1), \\ \mathbf{X}(t + 3) &= \mathbf{L} \mathbf{X}(t + 2), \text{ etc.} \end{aligned}$$

We will assume to start with that we have one old (female) rabbit, and no others, so $X_1 = X_2 = 0$, and $X_3 = 1$. Here is the script:

```
% Leslie matrix population model
n = 3;
L = zeros(n);           % all elements set to zero
L(1,2) = 9;
L(1,3) = 12;
L(2,1) = 1/3;
L(3,2) = 0.5;
x = [0 0 1]';         % remember x must be a column vector!

for t = 1:24
    x = L * x;
    disp( [t x' sum(x)] ) % x' is a row
end
```

The output, over a period of 24 months (after some editing), is:

Month	Young	Middle	Old	Total
1	12	0	0	12
2	0	4	0	4
3	36	0	2	38
4	24	12	0	36
5	108	8	6	122
...				
22	11184720	1864164	466020	13514904
23	22369716	3728240	932082	27030038
24	44739144	7456572	1864120	54059836

It so happens that there are no ‘fractional’ rabbits in this example. If there are any, they should be kept, and not rounded (and certainly not truncated). They occur because the fertility rates and survival probabilities are averages.

If you look carefully at the output you may spot that after some months the total population doubles every month. This factor is called the *growth factor*, and is a property of the particular Leslie matrix being used (for those who know about such things, it’s the *dominant eigenvalue* of the matrix). The growth factor is 2 in this example, but if the values in the Leslie matrix are changed, the long-term growth factor changes too (try it and see).

Figure 18.1 shows how the total rabbit population grows over the first 15 months. To draw this graph yourself, insert the line

```
p(t) = sum(x);
```

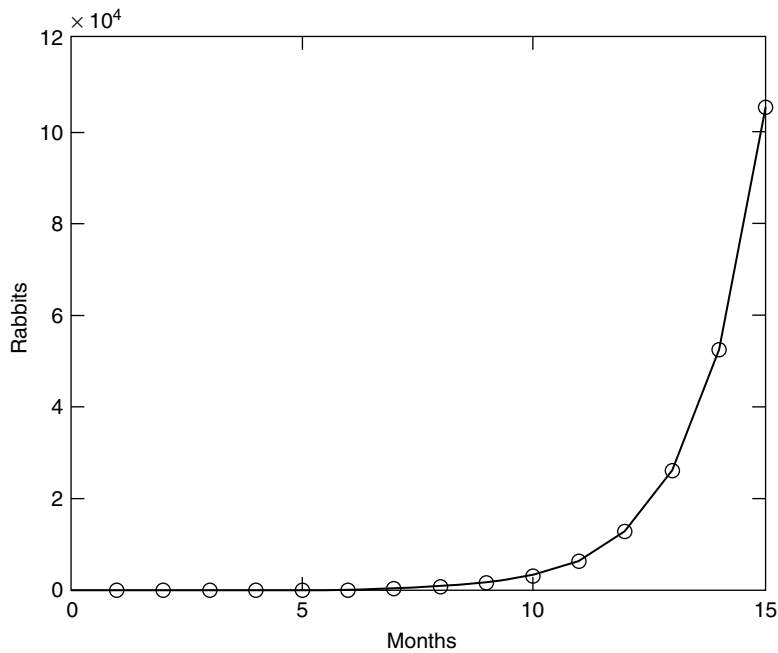


Figure 18.1 Total rabbit population over 15 months

in the `for` loop after the statement `x = L * x;`, and run the program again. The vector `p` will contain the total population at the end of each month. Then enter the commands

```
plot(1:15, p(1:15)), xlabel('months'), ylabel('rabbits')
hold, plot(1:15, p(1:15), 'o')
```

The graph demonstrates *exponential* growth. If you plot the population over the full 24-month period, you will see that the graph gets much steeper. This is a feature of exponential growth.

You probably didn't spot that the numbers in the three age classes tend to a limiting ratio of 24:4:1. This can be demonstrated very clearly if you run the model with an initial population structure having this limiting ratio. The limiting ratio is called the *stable age distribution* of the population, and again it is a property of the Leslie matrix (in fact, it is the *eigenvector* belonging to the dominant eigenvalue of the matrix). Different population matrices lead to different stable age distributions.

The interesting point about this is that a given Leslie matrix always eventually gets a population into the *same* stable age distribution, which increases eventually by the *same* growth factor each month, *no matter what the initial population breakdown is*. For example, if you run the above model with any other initial population, it will always eventually get into a stable age distribution of 24:4:1 with a growth factor of 2 (try it and see).

See `help eig` if you're interested in using MATLAB to compute eigenvalues and eigenvectors.

18.2 Markov processes

Often a process that we wish to model may be represented by a number of possible *discrete* (i.e. discontinuous) states that describe the outcome of the process. For example, if we are spinning a coin, then the outcome is adequately represented by the two states 'heads' and 'tails' (and nothing in between). If the process is random, as it is with spinning coins, there is a certain probability of being in any of the states at a given moment, and also a probability of changing from one state to another. If the probability of moving from one state to another depends on the present state only, and not on any previous state, the process is called a *Markov chain*. The progress of the myopic sailor in Chapter 17 is an example of such a process. Markov chains are used widely in such diverse fields as biology and business decision making, to name just two areas.

A random walk

This example is a variation on the random walk simulation of Chapter 17. A street has six intersections. A short-sighted student wanders down the street. His home is at intersection 1, and his favourite internet cafe at intersection 6. At each intersection other than his home or the cafe he moves in the direction of the cafe with probability $2/3$, and in the direction of his home with probability $1/3$. In other words, he is twice as likely to move towards the cafe as towards his home. He never wanders down a side street. If he reaches his home or the cafe, he disappears into them, never to re-appear (when he disappears we say in Markov jargon that he has been *absorbed*).

We would like to know: what are the chances of him ending up at home or in the cafe, if he starts at a given corner (other than home or the cafe, obviously)? He can clearly be in one of six states, with respect to his random walk, which can be labelled by the intersection number, where state 1 means *Home* and state 6 means *Cafe*. We can represent the probabilities of being in these states by a six-component *state vector* $\mathbf{X}(t)$, where $X_i(t)$ is the probability of him being at intersection i at moment t . The components of $\mathbf{X}(t)$ must sum to 1, since he has to be in one of these states.

We can express this Markov process with the following *transition probability matrix*, \mathbf{P} , where the rows represent the next state (i.e. corner), and the columns represent the present state:

	Home	2	3	4	5	Cafe
Home	1	1/3	0	0	0	0
2	0	0	1/3	0	0	0
3	0	2/3	0	1/3	0	0
4	0	0	2/3	0	1/3	0
5	0	0	0	2/3	0	0
Cafe	0	0	0	0	2/3	1

The entries for *Home-Home* and *Cafe-Cafe* are both 1 because he stays there with certainty.

Using the probability matrix \mathbf{P} we can work out his chances of being, say, at intersection 3 at moment $(t + 1)$ as

$$X_3(t + 1) = 2/3X_2(t) + 1/3X_4(t).$$

To get to 3, he must have been at either 2 or 4, and his chances of moving from there are 2/3 and 1/3 respectively.

Mathematically, this is identical to the Leslie matrix problem. We can therefore form the new state vector from the old one each time with a matrix equation:

$$\mathbf{X}(t + 1) = \mathbf{P}\mathbf{X}(t).$$

If we suppose the student starts at intersection 2, the initial probabilities will be (0; 1; 0; 0; 0; 0). The Leslie matrix script may be adapted with very few changes to generate future states:

```
n = 6;
P = zeros(n);           % all elements set to zero

for i = 3:6
    P(i,i-1) = 2/3;
    P(i-2,i-1) = 1/3;
end

P(1,1) = 1;
P(6,6) = 1;
x = [0 1 0 0 0 0]';    % remember x must be a column vector!

for t = 1:50
    x = P * x;
    disp( [t x'] )
end
```

Edited output:

Time	Home	2	3	4	5	Cafe
1	0.3333	0	0.6667	0	0	0
2	0.3333	0.2222	0	0.4444	0	0
3	0.4074	0	0.2963	0	0.2963	0
4	0.4074	0.0988	0	0.2963	0	0.1975
5	0.4403	0	0.1646	0	0.1975	0.1975
6	0.4403	0.0549	0	0.1756	0	0.3292
7	0.4586	0	0.0951	0	0.1171	0.3292
8	0.4586	0.0317	0	0.1024	0	0.4073
...						
20	0.4829	0.0012	0	0.0040	0	0.5119
...						

40	0.4839	0.0000	0	0.0000	0	0.5161
...						
50	0.4839	0.0000	0	0.0000	0	0.5161

By running the program for long enough, we soon find the limiting probabilities: he ends up at home about 48% of the time, and at the cafe about 52% of the time. Perhaps this is a little surprising; from the transition probabilities, we might have expected him to get to the cafe rather more easily. It just goes to show that you should never trust your intuition when it comes to statistics!

Note that the Markov chain approach is *not* a simulation: one gets the *theoretical* probabilities each time (this can all be done mathematically, without a computer). But it is interesting to confirm the limiting probabilities by *simulating* the student's progress, using a random number generator (see Exercise 17.5 at the end of Chapter 17).

18.3 Linear equations

A problem that often arises in scientific applications is the solution of a system of linear equations, e.g.

$$3x + 2y - z = 10 \quad (18.2)$$

$$-x + 3y + 2z = 5 \quad (18.3)$$

$$x - y - z = -1. \quad (18.4)$$

MATLAB was designed to solve a system like this directly and very easily, as we shall now see.

If we define the matrix \mathbf{A} as

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 & -1 \\ -1 & 3 & 2 \\ 1 & -1 & -1 \end{bmatrix},$$

and the vectors \mathbf{x} and \mathbf{b} as

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 10 \\ 5 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix},$$

we can write the above system of three equations in matrix form as

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 & -1 \\ -1 & 3 & 2 \\ 1 & -1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 10 \\ 5 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix},$$

or even more concisely as the single matrix equation

$$\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}. \quad (18.5)$$

The solution may then be written as

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{b}, \quad (18.6)$$

where \mathbf{A}^{-1} is the matrix inverse of \mathbf{A} (i.e. the matrix which when multiplied by \mathbf{A} gives the identity matrix \mathbf{I}).

MATLAB's solution

To see how MATLAB solves this system, first recall that the *left division* operator `\` may be used on scalars, i.e. `a \ b` is the same as `b / a` if `a` and `b` are scalars. However, it can also be used on

vectors and matrices, in order to solve linear equations. Enter the following statements on the command line to solve Equations (18.2)–(18.4):

```
A = [3 2 -1; -1 3 2; 1 -1 -1];
b = [10 5 -1]';
x = A \ b
```

This should result in

```
x =
-2.0000
 5.0000
-6.0000
```

In terms of our notation, this means that the solution is $x = -2$, $y = 5$, $z = -6$.

You can think of the matrix operation $A \setminus b$ as ‘ b divided by A ’, or as ‘the inverse of A multiplied by b ’, which is essentially what Equation (18.6) means. A colleague of mine reads this operation as ‘ A under b ’, which you may also find helpful.

You may be tempted to implement Equation (18.6) in MATLAB as follows:

```
x = inv(A) * b
```

since the function `inv` finds a matrix inverse directly. However, $A \setminus b$ is actually more accurate and efficient, since it uses Gauss elimination, and therefore requires fewer *flops* (floating point operations), e.g. with a random 30×30 system $a \setminus b$ needs 24051 flops, whereas `inv(a) * b` needs 59850—more than twice as many. (In case you’re wondering where I got the number of flops from with such authority, earlier versions of MATLAB had a function `flops` which counted the number of flops. In Version 6 this is no longer practical since the algorithms have been changed.)

The residual

Whenever we solve a system of linear equations numerically we need to have some idea of how accurate the solution is. The first thing to check is the *residual*, defined as

$$r = A * x - b$$

where x is the result of the operation $x = A \setminus b$. Theoretically the residual r should be zero, since the expression $A * x$ is supposed to be equal to b , according to Equation (18.5), which is the equation we are trying to solve. In our example here the residual is (check it)

```
r =
1.0e-015 *
 0
 0.8882
 0.6661
```

This seems pretty conclusive: all the elements of the residual are less than 10^{-15} in absolute value. Unfortunately, there may still be problems lurking beneath the surface, as we shall see shortly.

We will, however, first look at a situation where the residual turns out to be far from zero.

Over-determined systems

When we have more equations than unknowns, the system is called *over-determined*, e.g.

$$\begin{aligned} x - y &= 0 \\ y &= 2 \\ x &= 1. \end{aligned}$$

Surprisingly, perhaps, MATLAB gives a solution to such a system. If

$$\begin{aligned} A &= [1 \ -1; \ 0 \ 1; \ 1 \ 0]; \\ b &= [0 \ 2 \ 1]'; \end{aligned}$$

the statement

$$x = A \setminus b$$

results in

$$x = \begin{aligned} &1.3333 \\ &1.6667 \end{aligned}$$

The residual $r = A*x - b$ is now

$$r = \begin{aligned} &-0.3333 \\ &-0.3333 \\ &0.3333 \end{aligned}$$

What happens in this case is that MATLAB produces the *least squares best fit*. This is the value of x which makes the *magnitude* of r , i.e.

$$\sqrt{r(1)^2 + r(2)^2 + r(3)^2},$$

as small as possible. You can compute this quantity (0.5774) with `sqrt(r' * r)` or `sqrt(sum(r .* r))`.

There is a nice example of fitting a decaying exponential function to data with a least squares fit in **Using MATLAB: Mathematics: Matrices and Linear Algebra: Solving Linear Equations: Overdetermined Systems**.

Under-determined systems

If there are fewer equations than unknowns, the system is called *under-determined*. In this case there are an infinite number of solutions; MATLAB will find one which has zeros for some of the unknowns.

The equations in such a system are the constraints in a linear programming problem.

Ill conditioning

Sometimes the coefficients of a system of equations are the results of an experiment, and may be subject to error. We need in that case to know how sensitive the solution is to the experimental errors. As an example, consider the system

$$\begin{aligned} 10x + 7y + 8z + 7w &= 32 \\ 7x + 5y + 6z + 5w &= 23 \\ 8x + 6y + 10z + 9w &= 33 \\ 7x + 5y + 9z + 10w &= 31 \end{aligned}$$

Use matrix left division to show that the solution is $x = y = z = w = 1$. The residual is exactly zero (check it), and all seems well.

However, if we change the right-hand side constants to 32.1, 22.9, 32.9 and 31.1, the 'solution' is now given by $x = 6$, $y = -7.2$, $z = 2.9$, $w = -0.1$. The residual is very small.

A system like this is called *ill-conditioned*, meaning that a small change in the coefficients leads to a large change in the solution. The MATLAB function `rcond` returns the *condition estimator*, which tests for ill conditioning. If A is the coefficient matrix, `rcond(A)` will be close to zero if A is ill-conditioned, but close to 1 if it is well-conditioned. In this example, the condition estimator is about 2×10^{-4} , which is pretty close to zero.

Some authors suggest the rule of thumb that a matrix is ill-conditioned if its determinant is small compared to the entries in the matrix. In this case the determinant of A is 1 (check with the function `det`) which is about an order of magnitude smaller than most of its entries.

Matrix division

Here is a brief technical summary of matrix division.

Matrix left division, $A \setminus B$, is defined whenever B has as many rows as A . This corresponds formally to `inv(A)*B` although the result is obtained without computing the inverse explicitly. In general,

$$x = A \setminus B$$

is a solution to the system of equations defined by $Ax = B$.

If A is square, matrix left division is done using Gauss elimination.

If A is not square the over- or under-determined equations are solved in the least squares sense. The result is a $m \times n$ matrix X , where m is the number of columns of A and n is the number of columns of B .

Matrix right division, B/A , is defined in terms of matrix left division such that B/A is the same as $(A' \setminus B')'$. So with a and b defined as for Equations (18.2)–(18.4), this means that

$$x = (b' / a')'$$

gives the same solution, doesn't it? Try it, and make sure you can see why.

Sometimes the least squares solutions computed by `\` or `/` for over- or under-determined systems can cause surprises, since you can legally divide one *vector* by another. For example, if

$$\begin{aligned} a &= [1 \ 2]; \\ b &= [3 \ 4]; \end{aligned}$$

the statement

$$a / b$$

results in

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ans} &= \\ &0.4400 \end{aligned}$$

This is because a/b is the same as $(b' \setminus a')'$, which is formally the solution of $b'x' = a'$. The result is a scalar, since a' and b' each have one column, and is the least squares solution of

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

With this under your belt, can you explain why

$$a \setminus b$$

gives

```
ans =
      0      0
 1.5000  2.0000
```

(try writing the equations out in full)?

A complete discussion of the algorithms used in solving simultaneous linear equations may be found in the online documentation under **MATLAB: Reference: MATLAB Function Reference: Alphabetical List of Functions: Arithmetic Operators + - * / \ ^ '.**

18.4 Sparse matrices

Matrices can sometimes get very large, with thousands of entries. Very large matrices can occupy huge amounts of memory, and processing them can take up a lot of computer time. For example, a system of n simultaneous linear equations requires n^2 matrix entries, and the computing time to solve them is proportional to n^3 .

However, some matrices have relatively few *non-zero* entries. Such matrices are called *sparse* as opposed to *full*. The father of modern numerical linear algebra, J.H. Wilkinson, has remarked that a matrix is sparse if 'it has enough zeros that it pays to take advantage of them'. MATLAB has facilities for exploiting sparsity, which have the potential for saving huge amounts of memory and processing time. For example, the matrix representation of a certain type of partial differential equation (a 5-point Laplacian) on a square 64×64 grid is a 4096×4096 element matrix with 20224 non-zero elements. The sparse form of this matrix in MATLAB occupies only 250 kB of memory, whereas the full version of the same matrix would occupy 128 MB, which is way beyond the limits of most desktop computers. The solution of the system $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$ using sparse techniques is about 4000 times faster than solving the full case, i.e. 10 seconds instead of 12 hours!

In this section (which you can safely skip, if you want to) we will look briefly at how to create sparse matrices in MATLAB. For a full description of sparse matrix techniques consult **Using MATLAB: Mathematics: Sparse Matrices**.

First an example, then an explanation. The transition probability matrix for the random walk problem in Section 18.2 is a good candidate for sparse representation. Only ten of its 36 elements are non-zero. Since the non-zeros appear only on the diagonal and the sub- and super-diagonals, a matrix representing more intersections would be even sparser. For example, a 100×100 representation of the same problem would have only 198 non-zero entries, i.e. 1.98%.

To represent a sparse matrix all that MATLAB needs to record are the non-zero entries with their row and column indices. This is done with the `sparse` function. The transition matrix of Section 18.2 can be set up as a sparse matrix with the statements

```
n = 6;
P = sparse(1, 1, 1, n, n);
P = P + sparse(n, n, 1, n, n);
P = P + sparse(1:n-2, 2:n-1, 1/3, n, n);
P = P + sparse(3:n, 2:n-1, 2/3, n, n)
```

which result in (with `format rat`)

```
P =
(1,1)      1
(1,2)      1/3
(3,2)      2/3
(2,3)      1/3
(4,3)      2/3
```

```
(3,4)      1/3
(5,4)      2/3
(4,5)      1/3
(6,5)      2/3
(6,6)      1
```

Each line of the display of a sparse matrix gives a non-zero entry with its row and column, e.g. $2/3$ in row 3 and column 2. To display a sparse matrix in full form, use the function

```
full(P)
```

which results in

```
ans =
     1     1/3     0     0     0     0
     0     0     1/3     0     0     0
     0     2/3     0     1/3     0     0
     0     0     2/3     0     1/3     0
     0     0     0     2/3     0     0
     0     0     0     0     2/3     1
```

(also with `format rat`).

The form of the sparse function used here is

```
sparse(rows, cols, entries, m, n)
```

This generates an $m \times n$ sparse matrix with non-zero entries having subscripts (`rows, cols`) (which may be vectors), e.g. the statement

```
sparse(1:n-2, 2:n-1, 1/3, n, n);
```

(with `n = 6`) creates a 6×6 sparse matrix with 4 non-zero elements, being $1/3$'s in rows 1–4 and columns 2–5 (most of the super-diagonal). Note that repeated use of `sparse` produces a number of 6×6 matrices, which must be added together to give the final form. Sparsity is therefore preserved by operations on sparse matrices. See `help` for more details of `sparse`.

It's quite easy to test the efficiency of sparse matrices. Construct a (full) identity matrix

```
a = eye(1000);
```

It takes about 27.5 seconds on my Celeron to compute `a^2`. However, `a` is an ideal candidate for being represented as a sparse matrix, since only 1000 of its one million elements are non-zero. It is represented in sparse form as

```
s = sparse(1:1000, 1:1000, 1, 1000, 1000);
```

It only takes about 0.05 seconds to compute `s^2`—more than 500 times faster!

The function `full(a)` returns the full form of the sparse matrix `a` (without changing the sparse representation of `a` itself). Conversely, `sparse(a)` returns the sparse form of the full matrix `a`.

The function `spy` provides a neat visualization of sparse matrices. Try it on `P`. Then enlarge `P` to about 50×50 , and `spy` it.

Summary

- The matrix left division operator `\` is used for solving systems of linear equations directly. Because the matrix division operators `\` and `/` can produce surprising least squares solution, you should always compute the residual when solving a system of equations.
- If you work with large matrices with relatively few non-zero entries you should consider using MATLAB's sparse matrix facilities.

Exercises

- 18.1 Compute the limiting probabilities for the student in Section 18.2 when he starts at each of the remaining intersections in turn, and confirm that the closer he starts to the cafe, the more likely he is to end up there.
Compute P^{50} directly. Can you see the limiting probabilities in the first row?

- 18.2 Solve the equations

$$2x - y + z = 4$$

$$x + y + z = 3$$

$$3x - y - z = 1$$

using the left division operator. Check your solution by computing the residual. Also compute the determinant (`det`) and the condition estimator (`rcond`). What do you conclude?

- 18.3 This problem, suggested by R.V. Andree, demonstrates ill conditioning (where small changes in the coefficients cause large changes in the solution). Use the left division operator to show that the solution of the system

$$x + 5.000y = 17.0$$

$$1.5x + 7.501y = 25.503$$

is $x = 2$, $y = 3$. Compute the residual.

Now change the term on the right-hand side of the second equation to 25.501, a change of about one part in 12000, and find the new solution and the residual. The solution is completely different. Also try changing this term to 25.502, 25.504, etc. If the coefficients are subject to experimental errors, the solution is clearly meaningless. Use `rcond` to find the condition estimator and `det` to compute the determinant. Do these values confirm ill conditioning?

Another way to anticipate ill conditioning is to perform a *sensitivity analysis* on the coefficients: change them all in turn by the same small percentage, and observe what effect this has on the solution.

- 18.4 Use `sparse` to represent the Leslie matrix in Section 18.1. Test your representation by projecting the rabbit population over 24 months.
- 18.5 If you are familiar with *Gauss reduction* it is an excellent programming exercise to code a Gauss reduction directly with operations on the rows of the augmented coefficient matrix. See if you can write a function

$$x = \text{mygauss}(a, b)$$

to solve the general system $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$. Skillful use of the colon operator in the row operations can reduce the code to a few lines!

Test it on \mathbf{A} and \mathbf{b} with random entries, and on the systems in Section 18.3 and Exercise 18.2. Check your solutions with left division.

19

Introduction to numerical methods

Objective

The objectives of this chapter are to introduce numerical methods for

- solving equations;
- evaluating definite integrals;
- solving systems of ordinary differential equations;
- solving a parabolic partial differential equation.

A major scientific use of computers is in finding numerical solutions to mathematical problems which have no analytical solutions (i.e. solutions which may be written down in terms of polynomials and standard mathematical functions). In this chapter we look briefly at some areas where *numerical methods* have been highly developed, e.g. solving non-linear equations, evaluating integrals, and solving differential equations.

19.1 Equations

In this section we consider how to solve equations in one unknown numerically. The usual way of expressing the problem is to say that we want to solve the equation $f(x) = 0$, i.e. we want to find its *root* (or roots). This process is also described as finding the *zeros* of $f(x)$. There is no general method for finding roots analytically for an arbitrary $f(x)$.

Newton's method

Newton's method is perhaps the easiest numerical method to implement for solving equations, and was introduced briefly in earlier chapters. It is an *iterative* method, meaning that it repeatedly attempts to improve an estimate of the root. If x_k is an approximation to the root, we can relate it to the next approximation x_{k+1} using the right-angle triangle in Figure 19.1:

$$f'(x_k) = \frac{f(x_k) - 0}{x_k - x_{k+1}},$$

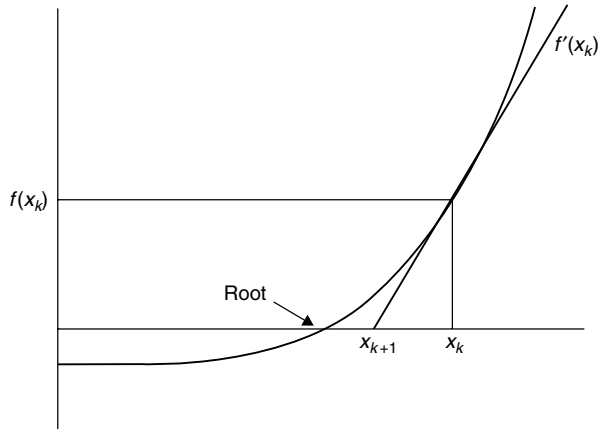


Figure 19.1 Newton's method

where $f'(x)$ is df/dx . Solving for x_{k+1} gives

$$x_{k+1} = x_k - \frac{f(x_k)}{f'(x_k)}.$$

A structure plan to implement Newton's method is:

1. Input starting value x_0 and required relative error e
2. While relative error $|(x_k - x_{k-1})/x_k| \geq e$ repeat up to $k = 20$, say:
 - $x_{k+1} = x_k - f(x_k)/f'(x_k)$
 - Print x_{k+1} and $f(x_{k+1})$
3. Stop.

It is necessary to limit step 2 since the process may not converge.

A script using Newton's method (without the subscript notation) to solve the equation $x^3 + x - 3 = 0$ is given in Chapter 10. If you run it you will see that the values of x converge rapidly to the root.

As an exercise, try running the script with different starting values of x_0 to see whether the algorithm always converges.

If you have a sense of history, use Newton's method to find a root of $x^3 - 2x - 5 = 0$. This is the example used when the algorithm was first presented to the French Academy.

Also try finding a *non-zero* root of $2x = \tan(x)$, using Newton's method. You might have some trouble with this one. If you do, you will have discovered the one serious problem with Newton's method: it converges to a root only if the starting guess is 'close enough'. Since 'close enough' depends on the nature of $f(x)$ and on the root, one can obviously get into difficulties here. The only remedy is some intelligent trial-and-error work on the initial guess—this is made considerably easier by sketching $f(x)$ or plotting it with MATLAB (see Figure 19.2).

If Newton's method fails to find a root, the Bisection method, discussed below, can be used.

Complex roots

Newton's method can also find complex roots, but only if the starting guess is complex. Use the script in Chapter 10 to find a complex root of $x^2 + x + 1 = 0$. Start with a complex value of $1 + i$ say, for x . Using this starting value for x gives the following output (if you replace `disp([x f(x)])` in the script with `disp(x)`):

```
0.0769 + 0.6154i
-0.5156 + 0.6320i
```

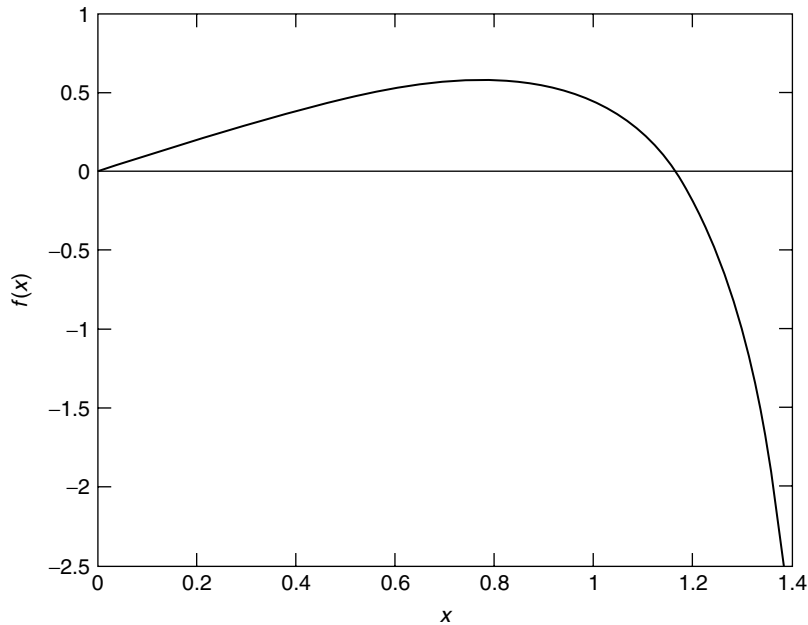


Figure 19.2 $f(x) = 2x - \tan(x)$

```
-0.4932 + 0.9090i
-0.4997 + 0.8670i
-0.5000 + 0.8660i
-0.5000 + 0.8660i
Zero found
```

Since complex roots occur in complex conjugate pairs, the other root is $-0.5 - 0.866i$.

The Bisection method

Consider again the problem of solving the equation $f(x) = 0$, where

$$f(x) = x^3 + x - 3.$$

We attempt to find by inspection, or trial-and-error, two values of x , call them x_L and x_R , such that $f(x_L)$ and $f(x_R)$ have different signs, i.e. $f(x_L)f(x_R) < 0$. If we can find two such values, the root must lie somewhere in the interval between them, since $f(x)$ changes sign on this interval (see Figure 19.3). In this example, $x_L = 1$ and $x_R = 2$ will do, since $f(1) = -1$ and $f(2) = 7$. In the Bisection method, we estimate the root by x_M , where x_M is the midpoint of the interval $[x_L, x_R]$, i.e.

$$x_M = (x_L + x_R)/2. \quad (19.1)$$

Then if $f(x_M)$ has the same sign as $f(x_L)$, as drawn in the figure, the root clearly lies between x_M and x_R . We must then redefine the left-hand end of the interval as having the value of x_M , i.e. we let the new value of x_L be x_M . Otherwise, if $f(x_M)$ and $f(x_L)$ have *different* signs, we let the new value of x_R be x_M , since the root must lie between x_L and x_M in that case. Having redefined x_L or x_R , as the case may be, we bisect the new interval again according to Equation (19.1) and repeat the process until the distance between x_L and x_R is as small as we please.

The neat thing about this method is that, *before* starting, we can calculate how many bisections are needed to obtain a certain accuracy, given initial values of x_L and x_R . Suppose we start with $x_L = a$,

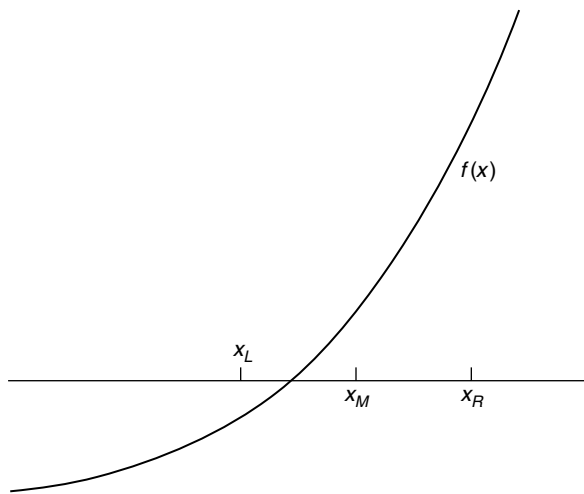


Figure 19.3 The Bisection method

and $x_R = b$. After the first bisection the worst possible error (E_1) in x_M is $E_1 = |a - b|/2$, since we are estimating the root as being at the midpoint of the interval $[a, b]$. The worst that can happen is that the root is actually at x_L or x_R , in which case the error is E_1 . Carrying on like this, after n bisections the worst possible error E_n is given by $E_n = |a - b|/2^n$. If we want to be sure that this is less than some specified error E , we must see to it that n satisfies the inequality $|a - b|/2^n < E$, i.e.

$$n > \frac{\log(|a - b|/E)}{\log(2)} \quad (19.2)$$

Since n is the number of bisections, it must be an integer. The smallest integer n that *exceeds* the right-hand side of Inequality (19.2) will do as the maximum number of bisections required to guarantee the given accuracy E .

The following scheme may be used to program the Bisection method. It will work for any function $f(x)$ that changes sign (in either direction) between the two values a and b , which must be found beforehand by the user.

1. Input a, b and E
2. Initialize x_L and x_R
3. Compute maximum bisections n from Inequality (19.2)
4. Repeat n times:
 - Compute x_M according to Equation (19.1)
 - If $f(x_L)f(x_M) > 0$ then
 - Let $x_L = x_M$
 - otherwise
 - Let $x_R = x_M$
5. Display root x_M
6. Stop.

We have assumed that the procedure will not find the root exactly; the chances of this happening with real variables are infinitesimal.

The main advantage of the Bisection method is that it is guaranteed to find a root if you can find two starting values for x_L and x_R between which the function changes sign. You can also compute in advance the number of bisections needed to attain a given accuracy. Compared to Newton's method it is inefficient. Successive bisections do not necessarily move closer to the root, as usually happens with Newton's method. In fact, it is interesting to compare the two methods on the same function to see

how many more steps the Bisection method requires than Newton's method. For example, to solve the equation $x^3 + x - 3 = 0$, the Bisection method takes 21 steps to reach the same accuracy as Newton's in five steps.

fzero

The MATLAB function `fzero(@f, a)` finds the zero nearest to the value a of the function f represented by the function `f.m`.

Use it to find a zero of $x^3 + x - 3$.

`fzero` doesn't appear to be able to find complex roots.

roots

The MATLAB function M-file `roots(c)` finds all the roots (zeros) of the polynomial with coefficients in the vector c . See `help` for details.

Use it to find a zero of $x^3 + x - 3$.

19.2 Integration

Although most 'respectable' mathematical functions can be differentiated analytically, the same cannot be said for integration. There are no general rules for integrating, as there are for differentiating. For example, the indefinite integral of a function as simple as e^{-x^2} cannot be found analytically. We therefore need numerical methods for evaluating integrals.

This is actually quite easy, and depends on the fact that the definite integral of a function $f(x)$ between the limits $x = a$ and $x = b$ is equal to the area under $f(x)$ bounded by the x -axis and the two vertical lines $x = a$ and $x = b$. So all numerical methods for integrating simply involve more or less ingenious ways of estimating the area under $f(x)$.

The Trapezoidal rule

The Trapezoidal (or Trapezium) rule is fairly simple to program. The area under $f(x)$ is divided into vertical panels each of width h , called the *step-length*. If there are n such panels, then $nh = b - a$, i.e. $n = (b - a)/h$. If we join the points where successive panels cut $f(x)$, we can estimate the area under $f(x)$ as the sum of the area of the resulting trapezia (see Figure 19.4). If we call this approximation to

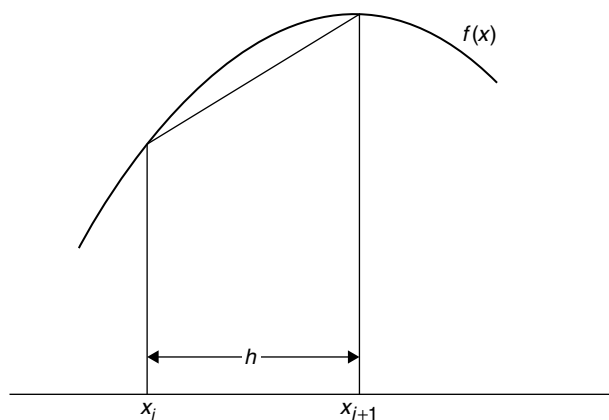


Figure 19.4 The Trapezoidal rule

the integral S , then

$$S = \frac{h}{2} \left[f(a) + f(b) + 2 \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} f(x_i) \right], \quad (19.3)$$

where $x_i = a + ih$. Equation (19.3) is the Trapezoidal rule, and provides an estimate for the integral

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx.$$

Here is a function to implement the Trapezoidal rule:

```
function y = trap( fn, a, b, h )
n = (b-a)/h;
x = a + [1:n-1]*h;
y = sum(feval(fn, x));
y = h/2*(feval(fn, a) + feval(fn, b) + 2*y);
```

Note:

1. Since the summation in the rule is implemented with a vectorized formula rather than a `for` loop (to save time), the function to be integrated must use array operators where appropriate in its M-file implementation.
2. The user must choose h in such a way that the number of steps n will be an integer—a check for this could be built in.

As an exercise, integrate $f(x) = x^3$ between the limits 0 and 4 (remember to write `x.^3` in the function M-file). Call `trap` as follows:

```
s = trap(@f, 0, 4, h);
```

With $h = 0.1$, the estimate is 64.04, and with $h = 0.01$ it is 64.0004 (the exact integral is 64). You will find that as h gets smaller, the estimate gets more accurate.

This example assumes that $f(x)$ is a continuous function which may be evaluated at any x . In practice, the function could be defined at discrete points supplied as results of an experiment. For example, the speed of an object $v(t)$ might be measured every so many seconds, and one might want to estimate the distance travelled as the area under the speed-time graph. In this case, `trap` would have to be changed by replacing `fn` with a vector of function values. This is left as an exercise for the curious. Alternatively, you can use the MATLAB function `interp1` to interpolate the data. See `help`.

Simpson's rule

Simpson's rule is a method of numerical integration which is a good deal more accurate than the Trapezoidal rule, and should always be used before you try anything fancier. It also divides the area under the function to be integrated, $f(x)$, into vertical strips, but instead of joining the points $f(x_i)$ with straight lines, every set of three such successive points is fitted with a parabola. To ensure that there are always an even number of panels, the step-length h is usually chosen so that there are $2n$ panels, i.e. $n = (b - a)/(2h)$.

Using the same notation as above, Simpson's rule estimates the integral as

$$S = \frac{h}{3} \left[f(a) + f(b) + 2 \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} f(x_{2i}) + 4 \sum_{i=1}^n f(x_{2i-1}) \right]. \quad (19.4)$$

Coding this formula into a function M-file is left as an exercise.

If you try Simpson's rule on $f(x) = x^3$ between any limits, you will find rather surprisingly, that it gives the same result as the exact mathematical solution. This is a nice extra benefit of the rule: it integrates cubic polynomials exactly (which can be proved).

quad

Not surprisingly, MATLAB has a function `quad` to carry out numerical integration, or *quadrature* as it is also called. See `help`.

You may think there is no point in developing our own function files to handle these numerical procedures when MATLAB has its own. If you have got this far, you should be curious enough to want to know how they work, rather than treating them simply as 'black boxes'.

19.3 Numerical differentiation

The *Newton quotient* for a function $f(x)$ is given by

$$\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}, \quad (19.5)$$

where h is 'small'. As h tends to zero, this quotient approaches the first derivative, df/dx . The Newton quotient may therefore be used to estimate a derivative numerically. It is a useful exercise to do this with a few functions for which you know the derivatives. This way you can see how small you can make h before rounding errors cause problems. Such errors arise because expression (19.5) involves subtracting two terms that eventually become equal when the limit of the computer's accuracy is reached.

As an example, the following script uses the Newton quotient to estimate $f'(x)$ for $f(x) = x^2$ (which must be supplied as a function file `f.m`) at $x = 2$, for smaller and smaller values of h (the exact answer is 4).

```
h = 1;
x = 2;
format short e
for i = 1:20
    nq = (f(x+h) - f(x))/h;
    disp( [h nq] )
    h = h / 10;
end
```

Output:

```
1          5
1.0000e-001 4.1000e+000
1.0000e-002 4.0100e+000
1.0000e-003 4.0010e+000
1.0000e-004 4.0001e+000
1.0000e-005 4.0000e+000
1.0000e-006 4.0000e+000
1.0000e-007 4.0000e+000
1.0000e-008 4.0000e+000
1.0000e-009 4.0000e+000
1.0000e-010 4.0000e+000
1.0000e-011 4.0000e+000
1.0000e-012 4.0004e+000
1.0000e-013 3.9968e+000
1.0000e-014 4.0856e+000
```



```

1.0000e-015  3.5527e+000
1.0000e-016           0
...

```

The results show that the best h for this particular problem is about 10^{-8} . But for h much smaller than this the estimate becomes totally unreliable.

Generally, the best h for a given problem can only be found by trial and error. Finding it can be a non-trivial exercise. This problem does not arise with numerical integration, because numbers are *added* to find the area, not subtracted.

`diff`

If \mathbf{x} is a row or column vector

```
[x(1)  x(2)  ...  x(n)]
```

then the MATLAB function `diff(x)` returns a vector of differences between adjacent elements:

```
[x(2)-x(1)  x(3)-x(2)  ...  x(n)-x(n-1)]
```

The output vector is one element shorter than the input vector.

In certain problems, `diff` is helpful in finding approximate derivatives, e.g. if \mathbf{x} contains displacements of an object every h seconds, `diff(x)/h` will be its speed.

19.4 First-order differential equations

The most interesting situations in real life that we may want to model, or represent quantitatively, are usually those in which the variables change in time (e.g. biological, electrical or mechanical systems). If the changes are continuous, the system can often be represented with equations involving the derivatives of the dependent variables. Such equations are called *differential* equations. The main aim of a lot of modelling is to be able to write down a set of differential equations (DEs) that describe the system being studied as accurately as possible. Very few DEs can be solved analytically, so once again, numerical methods are required. We will consider the simplest method of numerical solution in this section: Euler's method (Euler rhymes with 'boiler'). We also consider briefly how to improve it.

Euler's method

In general we want to solve a first-order DE (strictly an ordinary—ODE) of the form

$$dy/dx = f(x, y), \quad y(0) \text{ given.}$$

Euler's method for solving this DE numerically consists of replacing dy/dx with its Newton quotient, so that the DE becomes

$$\frac{y(x+h) - y(x)}{h} = f(x, y).$$

After a slight rearrangement of terms, we get

$$y(x+h) = y(x) + hf(x, y). \quad (19.6)$$

Solving a DE numerically is such an important and common problem in science and engineering that it is worth introducing some general notation at this point. Suppose we want to integrate the DE over the interval $x = a$ ($a = 0$ usually) to $x = b$. We break this interval up into m steps of length h , so

$$m = (b - a)/h$$

(this is the same as the notation used in the update process of Chapter 11, except that dt used there has been replaced by the more general h here).

For consistency with MATLAB's subscript notation, if we define y_i as $y(x_i)$ (the Euler estimate at the *beginning* of step i), where $x_i = (i - 1)h$, then $y_{i+1} = y(x + h)$, at the end of step i . We can then replace Equation (19.6) by the iterative scheme

$$y_{i+1} = y_i + hf(x_i, y_i), \quad (19.7)$$

where $y_1 = y(0)$. Recall from Chapter 11 that this notation enables us to generate a vector y which we can then plot. Note also the striking similarity between Equation (19.7) and the equation in Chapter 11 representing an update process. This similarity is no coincidence. Update processes are typically modelled by DEs, and Euler's method provides an approximate solution for such DEs.

Example: bacteria growth

Suppose a colony of 1000 bacteria is multiplying at the rate of $r = 0.8$ per hour per individual (i.e. an individual produces an average of 0.8 offspring every hour). How many bacteria are there after 10 hours? Assuming that the colony grows continuously and without restriction, we can model this growth with the DE

$$dN/dt = rN, \quad N(0) = 1000, \quad (19.8)$$

where $N(t)$ is the population size at time t . This process is called *exponential growth*. Equation (19.8) may be solved analytically to give the well-known formula for exponential growth:

$$N(t) = N(0)e^{rt}.$$

To solve Equation (19.8) numerically, we apply Euler's algorithm to it to get

$$N_{i+1} = N_i + rhN_i, \quad (19.9)$$

where the initial value $N_1 = 1000$.

It is very easy to program Euler's method. The following script implements Equation (19.9), taking $h = 0.5$. It also computes the exact solution for comparison.

```

h = 0.5;
r = 0.8;
a = 0;
b = 10;
m = (b - a) / h;
N = zeros(1, m+1);
N(1) = 1000;
t = a:h:b;

for i = 1:m
    N(i+1) = N(i) + r * h * N(i);
end

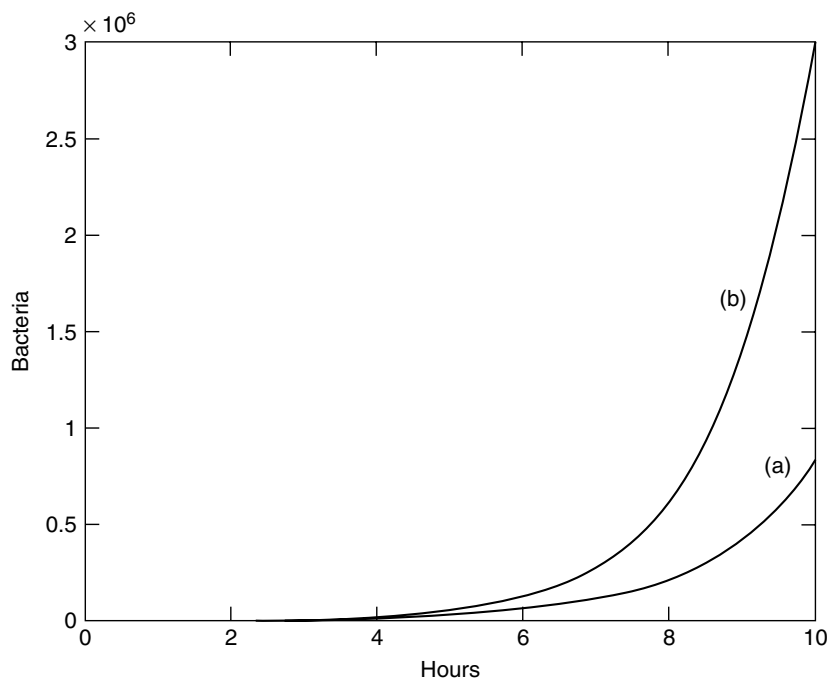
Nex = N(1) * exp(r * t);
format bank
disp( [t' N' Nex' ] )

plot(t, N ), xlabel( 'Hours' ), ylabel( 'Bacteria' )
hold on
plot(t, Nex ), hold off

```

Table 19.1 Bacteria growth

<i>Time (hours)</i>	<i>Euler</i>	<i>Predictor- Corrector</i>	<i>Exact</i>
0.0	1000	1000	1000
0.5	1400	1480	1492
1.0	1960	2190	2226
1.5	2744	3242	3320
2.0	3842	4798	4953
...			
5.0	28925	50422	54598
...			
8.0	217795	529892	601845
...			
10.0	836683	2542344	2980958

**Figure 19.5** Bacteria growth: (a) Euler's method; (b) the exact solution

Results are shown in Table 19.1, and also in Figure 19.5. The Euler solution is not too good. In fact, the error gets worse at each step, and after 10 hours of bacteria time it is about 72 per cent. The numerical solution will improve if we make h smaller, but there will always be some value of t where the error exceeds some acceptable limit.

In some cases, Euler's method performs better than it does here, but there are other numerical methods which always do better than Euler. Two of them are discussed below. More sophisticated methods may be found in most textbooks on numerical analysis. However, Euler's method may always be used as a first approximation as long as you realize that errors may arise.

Alternative subscript notation

Equation 19.9 is an example of a *finite difference scheme*. The conventional finite difference notation is for the initial value to be represented by N_0 , i.e. with subscript $i = 0$. N_i is then the estimate at the *end* of step i . If you want the MATLAB subscripts in the Euler solution to be the same as the finite difference subscripts, the initial value N_0 must be represented by the MATLAB scalar `N0`, and you have to compute `N(1)` separately, before the `for` loop starts. You also have to display or plot the initial values separately since they will no longer be included in the MATLAB vectors `t`, `N` and `Nex` (which now have m instead of $m + 1$ elements). Here is a complete script to generate the Euler solution using finite difference subscripts:

```

h = 0.5;
r = 0.8;
a = 0;
b = 10;
m = (b - a) / h;
N = zeros(1, m);      % one less element now
N0 = 1000;
N(1) = N0 + r*h*N0;  % no longer 'self-starting'

for i = 2:m
    N(i) = N(i-1) + r * h * N(i-1); %finite difference notation
end

t = a+h:h:b;          % exclude initial time = a
Nex = N0 * exp(r * t);
disp( [a N0 N0] )    % display initial values separately
disp( [t' N' Nex'] )

plot(a, N0)           % plot initial values separately
hold on
plot(t, N ), xlabel( 'Hours' ), ylabel( 'Bacteria' )
plot(t, Nex ), hold off

```

A predictor-corrector method

One improvement on the numerical solution of the first-order DE

$$dy/dx = f(x, y), \quad y(0) \text{ given,}$$

is as follows. The Euler approximation, which we are going to denote by an asterisk, is given by

$$y_{i+1}^* = y_i + hf(x_i, y_i) \quad (19.10)$$

But this formula favours the old value of y in computing $f(x_i, y_i)$ on the right-hand side. Surely it would be better to say

$$y_{i+1}^* = y_i + h[f(x_{i+1}, y_{i+1}^*) + f(x_i, y_i)]/2, \quad (19.11)$$

where $x_{i+1} = x_i + h$, since this also involves the new value y_{i+1}^* in computing f on the right-hand side? The problem of course is that y_{i+1}^* is as yet unknown, so we can't use it on the right-hand side of Equation (19.11). But we could use Euler to estimate (predict) y_{i+1}^* from Equation (19.10) and then use Equation (19.11) to correct the prediction by computing a *better* version of y_{i+1}^* , which we will call y_{i+1} . So the full procedure is:

Repeat as many times as required:

Use Euler to predict: $y_{i+1}^* = y_i + hf(x_i, y_i)$

Then correct y_{i+1}^* to: $y_{i+1} = y_i + h[f(x_{i+1}, y_{i+1}^*) + f(x_i, y_i)]/2$.

This is called a *predictor-corrector* method. The script above can easily be adapted to this problem. The relevant lines of code are:

```
for i = 1:m      % m steps of length dt
    ne(i+1) = ne(i) + r * h * ne(i);
    np = nc(i) + r * h * nc(i);
    nc(i+1) = nc(i) + r * h * (np + nc(i))/2;
    disp( [t(i+1) ne(i+1) nc(i+1) nex(i+1)] )
end;
```

ne stands for the ‘straight’ (uncorrected) Euler solution, np is the Euler predictor (since this is an intermediate result a vector is not needed for np), and nc is the corrector. The worst error is now only 15 per cent. This is much better than the uncorrected Euler solution, although there is still room for improvement.

19.5 Linear ordinary differential equations (LODEs)

Linear ODEs with constant coefficients may be solved analytically in terms of *matrix exponentials*, which are represented in MATLAB by the function `expm`. For an example see **Using MATLAB: Mathematics: Matrices and Linear Algebra: Matrix Powers and Exponentials**.

19.6 Runge–Kutta methods

There are a variety of algorithms, under the general name of Runge–Kutta, which can be used to integrate systems of ODEs. The formulae involved are rather complicated; they can be found in most books on numerical analysis.

However, as you may have guessed, MATLAB has plenty of ODE solvers, which are discussed in **Using MATLAB: Mathematics: Differential Equations**. Among them are `ode23` (second/third order) and `ode45` (fourth/fifth order), which implement Runge–Kutta methods. (The *order* of a numerical method is the power of h (i.e. dt) in the leading error term. Since h is generally very small, the higher the power, the smaller the error). We will demonstrate the use of `ode23` and `ode45` here, first with a single first-order DE, and then with systems of such equations.

A single differential equation

Here’s how to use `ode23` to solve the bacteria growth problem, Equation (19.8):

$$dN/dt = rN, \quad N(0) = 1000.$$

1. Start by writing a function file for the *right-hand side* of the DE to be solved. The function must have input variables t and N in this case (i.e. independent and dependent variables of the DE), *in that order*, e.g. create the function file **f.m** as follows:

```
function y = f(t, Nr)
y = 0.8 * Nr;
```

2. Now enter the following statements in the Command Window:

```
a = 0;
b = 10;
n0 = 1000;
[t, Nr] = ode23(@f, [a:0.5:b], n0);
```

3. Note the input arguments of `ode23`:

`@f`: a handle for the function `f`, which contains the right-hand side of the DE;
`[a:0.5:b]`: a vector (`tspan`) specifying the range of integration. If `tspan` has two elements (`[a b]`) the solver returns the solution evaluated at every integration step (the solver chooses the integration steps and may vary them). This form would be suitable for plotting. However, if you want to display the solution at regular time intervals, as we want to here, use the form of `tspan` with three elements as above. The solution is then returned evaluated at each time in `tspan`. The accuracy of the solution is not affected by the form of `tspan` used.
`n0`: the initial value of the solution N .

4. The output arguments are two vectors: the solutions `Nr` at times `t`. After 10 hours `ode23` gives a value of 2961338 bacteria. From the exact solution in Table 19.1 we see that the error here is only 0.7 per cent.

If the solutions you get from `ode23` are not accurate enough, you can request greater accuracy with an additional optional argument. See `help`.

If you need still more accurate numerical solutions, you can use `ode45` instead. It gives a final value for the bacteria of 2981290—an error of about 0.01%.

Systems of differential equations: chaos

The reason that weather prediction is so difficult and forecasts are so erratic is no longer thought to be the complexity of the system but the nature of the DEs modelling it. These DEs belong to a class referred to as *chaotic*. Such equations will produce wildly different results when their initial conditions are changed infinitesimally. In other words, accurate weather prediction depends crucially on the accuracy of the measurements of the initial conditions.

Edward Lorenz, a research meteorologist, discovered this phenomenon in 1961. Although his original equations are far too complex to consider here, the following much simpler system has the same essential chaotic features:

$$dx/dt = 10(y - x), \quad (19.12)$$

$$dy/dt = -xz + 28x - y, \quad (19.13)$$

$$dz/dt = xy - 8z/3. \quad (19.14)$$

This system of DEs may be solved very easily with the MATLAB ODE solvers. The idea is to solve the DEs with certain initial conditions, plot the solution, then change the initial conditions very slightly, and superimpose the new solution over the old one to see how much it has changed.

We begin by solving the system with the initial conditions $x(0) = -2$, $y(0) = -3.5$ and $z(0) = 21$.

1. Write a function file `lorenz.m` to represent the right-hand sides of the system as follows:

```
function f = lorenz(t, x)
f = zeros(3,1);
f(1) = 10 * (x(2) - x(1));
f(2) = -x(1) * x(3) + 28 * x(1) - x(2);
f(3) = x(1) * x(2) - 8 * x(3) / 3;
```

The three elements of the MATLAB vector `x`, i.e. `x(1)`, `x(2)` and `x(3)`, represent the three dependent scalar variables x , y and z respectively. The elements of the vector `f` represent the right-hand sides of the three DEs. When a vector is returned by such a DE function it must be a column vector, hence the statement

```
f = zeros(3,1);
```

2. Now use the following commands to solve the system from $t = 0$ to $t = 10$, say:

```
x0 = [-2 -3.5 21]; % initial values in a vector
[t, x] = ode45(@lorenz, [0 10], x0);
plot(t,x)
```

Note that we are use `ode45` now, since it is more accurate. (If you aren't using a Pentium it will take quite a few seconds for the integration to be completed.)

You will see three graphs, for x , y and z (in different colours).

3. It's easier to see the effect of changing the initial values if there is only one graph in the figure to start with. It is in fact best to plot the solution $y(t)$ on its own. The MATLAB solution x is actually a matrix with three columns (as you can see from `whos`). The solution $y(t)$ that we want will be the second column, so to plot it by itself use the command

```
plot(t,x(:,2),'g')
```

Then keep the graph on the axes with the command `hold`.

Now we can see the effect of changing the initial values. Let's just change the initial value of $x(0)$, from -2 to -2.04 —that's a change of only 2 per cent, and in only one of the three initial values. The following commands will do this, solve the DEs, and plot the new graph of $y(t)$ (in a different colour):

```
x0 = [-2.04 -3.5 21];
[t, x] = ode45(@lorenz, [0 10], x0);
plot(t,x(:,2),'r')
```

You should see (Figure 19.6) that the two graphs are practically indistinguishable until t is about 1.5. The discrepancy grows quite gradually, until t reaches about 6, when the solutions suddenly and shockingly flip over in opposite directions. As t increases further, the new solution bears no resemblance to the old one.

Now solve the system (19.12)–(19.14) with the original initial values using `ode23` this time:

```
x0 = [-2 -3.5 21];
[t,x] = ode23(@lorenz, [0 10], x0);
```

Plot the graph of $y(t)$ only— $x(:,2)$ —and then superimpose the `ode45` solution *with the same initial values* (in a different colour).

A strange thing happens—the solutions begin to deviate wildly for $t > 1.5$! The initial conditions are the same—the only difference is the order of the Runge–Kutta method.

Finally solve the system with `ode23s` and superimpose the solution. (The `s` stands for 'stiff'. For a stiff DE, solutions can change on a time scale that is very short compared to the interval of integration.) The `ode45` and `ode23s` solutions only start to diverge at $t > 5$.

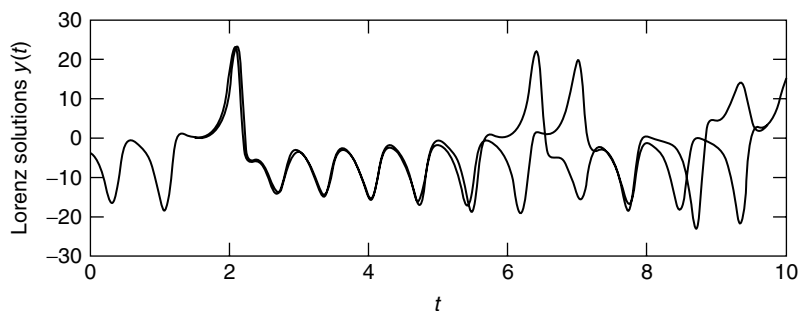


Figure 19.6 Chaos?

The explanation is that `ode23`, `ode23s` and `ode45` all have numerical inaccuracies (if one could compare them with the exact solution—which incidentally can't be found). However, the numerical inaccuracies are *different* in the three cases. This difference has the same effect as starting the numerical solution with very slightly different initial values.

How do we ever know when we have the 'right' numerical solution? Well, we don't—the best we can do is increase the accuracy of the numerical method until no further wild changes occur over the interval of interest. So in our example we can only be pretty sure of the solution for $t < 5$ (using `ode23s` or `ode45`). If that's not good enough, you have to find a more accurate DE solver.

So beware: 'chaotic' DEs are very tricky to solve!

Incidentally, if you want to see the famous 'butterfly' picture of chaos, just plot x against z as time increases (the resulting graph is called a *phase plane* plot). The following command will do the trick:

```
plot(x(:,1), x(:,3))
```

What you will see is a static 2-D projection of the *trajectory*, i.e. the solution developing in time. **Demos** in the MATLAB Launch Pad include an example which enables you to see the trajectory evolving dynamically in 3-D (**Demos: Graphics: Lorenz attractor animation**).

Passing additional parameters to an ODE solver

In the above examples of the MATLAB ODE solvers the coefficients in the right-hand sides of the DEs (e.g. the value 28 in Equation (19.13)) have all been constants. In a real modelling situation, you will most likely want to change such coefficients frequently. To avoid having to edit the function files each time you want to change a coefficient, you can pass the coefficients as additional parameters to the ODE solver, which in turn passes them to the DE function. To see how this may be done, consider the Lotka-Volterra *predator-prey* model:

$$dx/dt = px - qxy \quad (19.15)$$

$$dy/dt = rxy - sy, \quad (19.16)$$

where $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ are the prey and predator population sizes at time t , and p, q, r and s are biologically determined parameters. For this example, we take $p = 0.4$, $q = 0.04$, $r = 0.02$, $s = 2$, $x(0) = 105$ and $y(0) = 8$.

First, write a function M-file, `volterra.m` as follows:

```
function f = volterra(t, x, p, q, r, s)
f = zeros(2,1);
f(1) = p*x(1) - q*x(1)*x(2);
f(2) = r*x(1)*x(2) - s*x(2);
```

Then enter the following statements in the Command Window, which generate the characteristically oscillating graphs in Figure 19.7:

```
p = 0.4; q = 0.04; r = 0.02; s = 2;
[t,x] = ode23(@volterra, [0 10], [105; 8], [], p,q,r,s);
plot(t, x)
```

Note:

- The additional parameters (p, q, r and s) have to follow the fourth input argument (`options`—see `help`) of the ODE solver. If no options have been set (as in our case), use `[]` as a placeholder for the `options` parameter.

You can now change the coefficients from the Command Window and get a new solution, without editing the function file.

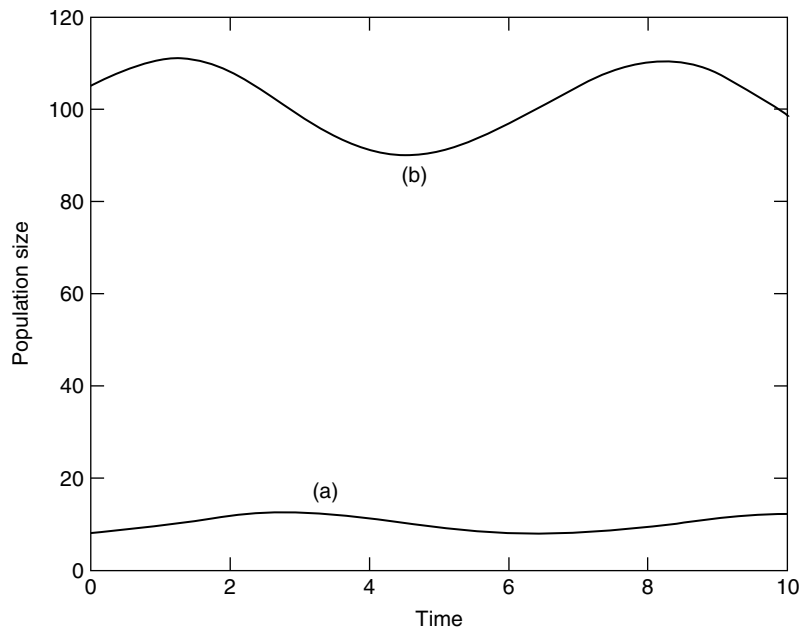


Figure 19.7 Lotka-Volterra model: (a) predator; (b) prey

19.7 A GUI ODE solver: Driver

This section describes a GUI called *Driver*, which provides a user-friendly framework for using ODE solvers such as `ode45` on systems of ODEs. We first discuss how to use *Driver*, and then how it works.

The code for the relevant *Driver* callback subfunctions is given below. You can therefore either reconstruct *Driver* yourself from the code and description of the GUI, or you can download the FIG- and application M-files (`driver.fig` and `driver.m`) from the website.

How to use *Driver*

To describe how to use *Driver*, we will take the predator-prey model of Section 19.6 as an example, although it should be stressed that *Driver* is quite general—you can use it to run *any* such model. Figure 19.8 shows the *Driver* GUI for the Lotka-Volterra model.

1. *Driver* starts by loading a MAT-file (called the *Driver reference file*) with the data for the model. For the time being you have to create this MAT-file yourself. You should therefore `clear` the workspace, so that when you have created the necessary variables you can save them to the MAT-file.

(A more sophisticated version of *Driver*—*Driver2?*—which you are encouraged to develop, would create the MAT-file for you, by inviting you to enter the required information at the command line.) Create arrays (in the strict MATLAB sense!) with the following names in the workspace (the names are compulsory; values given here are for the predator-prey model):

`nvars = 2`: number of ‘model’ variables, e.g. `x` and `y` in the predator-prey model, or `prey` and `pred` as we shall soon call them. `nvars` will generally be the same as the number of ODEs in the system.

`nparms = 4`: number of ‘model’ parameters, i.e. constants in the system of ODEs (`p`, `q`, `r` and `s` in our example).

`time = 0`: initial value of time for a particular run.

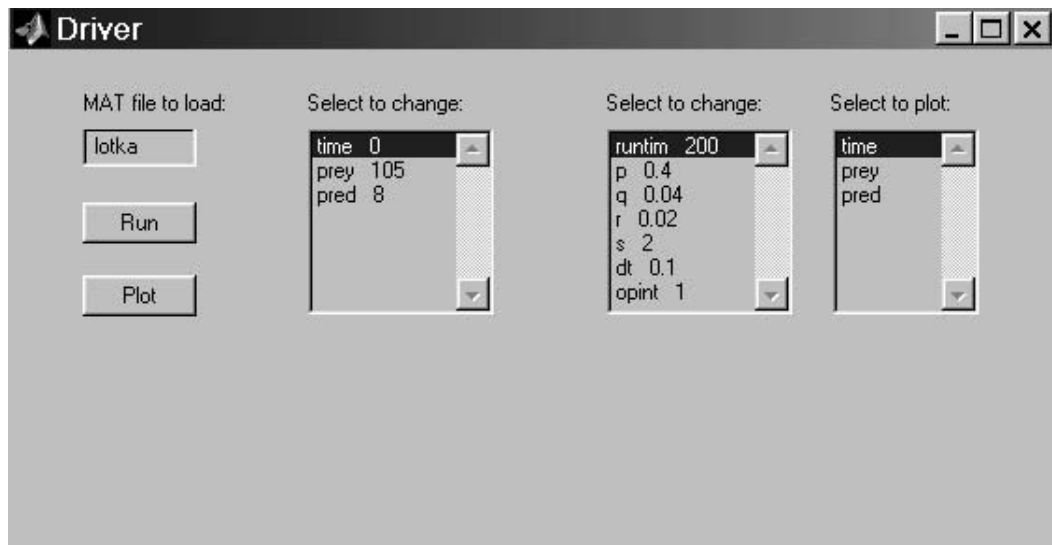


Figure 19.8 Driver GUI for the Lotka-Volterra predator-prey model

`dt = 0.1`: time interval at which solution is required (but not necessarily displayed—see `opint` below).

`runtim = 200`: number of points at which solution is required. The obvious name of `runtime` can't be used since it conflicts in some mysterious way with the MATLAB Runtime Server (which I discovered to my cost).

`time`, `dt` and `runtim` all appear in the `tspan` argument of `ode45` in `driver.m` as

```
[time:dt:time+dt*runtim]
```

`opint = 1`: (output interval) the time intervals at which solutions will be displayed in the Command Window. For example, if the units of `time` in the predator-prey model are days, `opint = 1` means the solution will be displayed in the Command Window once a day for 20 days, given the values of `runtim` and `dt` above, whereas the solution will be available for plotting at intervals of `dt` days (making a fairly smooth graph).

`vars`: a structure array containing the user-friendly names, initial values (`inval`) and final values (`finval`) of the `nvars` model variables. For our example, set up `vars` as follows:

```
vars(1).name = 'prey';
vars(1).inval = 105;
vars(1).finval = 0;
vars(2).name = 'pred';
vars(2).inval = 8;
vars(2).finval = 0;
```

The `finval` fields are set by Driver at the end of a run.

`parms`: a structure array containing the user-friendly names and values of the `nparms` model parameters. For our example, set up `parms` as follows:

```
parms(1).name = 'p';
parms(1).val = 0.4;
parms(2).name = 'q';
parms(2).val = 0.04;
```

```

parms(3).name = 'r';
parms(3).val = 0.02;
parms(4).name = 's';
parms(4).val = 2;

```

When you have created all these variables and structures save them as a MAT-file under some meaningful name, such as `lotka.mat`.

Note:

- The constant `nvars` above refers to the number of variables in the model DEs, and does *not* include the additional compulsory ‘Driver’ variable `time`. On the Driver GUI, however, the term ‘variable’ refers to the model variables as well as `time`.
 - Similarly the constant `nparms` does not include the compulsory Driver parameters `runtime`, `dt` and `opint`, although on the GUI the term ‘parameter’ refers to both these parameters and the model parameters in the system of DEs.
2. The next step is to create the function file with the right-hand sides of the DEs for `ode45` to call. *The name of the function file must be the same as the name of the MAT-file containing the data*—in this case `lotka.m`. The `dbtype` command is used to list `lotka.m` here, for ease of reference:

```

1 function dxdt = lotka(t,x,nvars,parms)
2 dxdt = zeros(nvars,1);
3
4 %user-friendly names for parameters:
5 p = parms(1).val;
6 q = parms(2).val;
7 r = parms(3).val;
8 s = parms(4).val;
9
10 %user-friendly names for variables:
11 prey = x(1);
12 pred = x(2);
13
14 %user-friendly names in the model:
15 dxdt(1) = p*prey - q*pred*prey;
16 dxdt(2) = r*pred*prey - s*pred;

```

Note:

- The argument `parms` which is passed to `lotka` from Driver is precisely the structure array set up in the reference file (`lotka.mat`). You as the user then have to write lines 5 to 8 to create simple variables with meaningful names from `parms`.
- Driver is organized so that the argument `x` is a vector with the current values of the model variables. You have to write lines 11 and 12 to create simple variables with meaningful names from `x`.
- Finally, supply the right-hand sides of your DEs in lines 15 and 16. Note how much easier it is to use the local variables with meaningful names here rather than the formal Driver names, which would yield the somewhat clumsy (and less meaningful) code:

```

dxdt(1) = parms(1).val*x(1) - parms(2)*x(1)*x(2);
dxdt(2) = parms(3).val*x(1)*x(2) - parms(4).val*x(2);

```

In a larger model, with 20 or 30 equations, keeping track of all the names would be very difficult!

- There is nothing to prevent your souped-up Driver2 from generating lines 1–14 of `lotka.m` since all the information there can be obtained from the MAT-file! All the user has to supply are the DEs.
3. Now you are ready to run Driver with your model.

- Start Driver by entering `driver` at the command line. When the GUI has started, enter the MAT-file name (`lotka`) in the edit box under the text `MAT file to load` (and press **Enter**). The variable and parameter names and values appear in the listboxes.
- Click **Run** to run the model for `runtime` steps of `dt`. Output appears in the Command Window at intervals of `opint`. The first column is time. Values of `prey` and `pred` appear in columns 2 and 3. The output is as follows for the values given at the end of Section 19.6, with `dt = 1` and `runtime = 200`:

```

      0  105.0000    8.0000
    1.0000  110.9439    9.4755
    2.0000  108.3855   11.6764
    3.0000   98.7195   12.6119
    4.0000   90.6982   11.2609
    5.0000   90.0769    9.1571
    6.0000   95.9259    7.8931
    7.0000  104.7476    7.9414
    8.0000  110.9949    9.3887
    9.0000  108.7550   11.6282
   10.0000   99.0544   12.6616
   11.0000   90.7837   11.3400
   12.0000   89.9039    9.2143
   13.0000   95.6202    7.9046
   14.0000  104.4730    7.9021
   15.0000  110.9790    9.3083
   16.0000  109.0560   11.5752
   17.0000   99.4139   12.6732
   18.0000   91.0107   11.4083
   19.0000   89.8191    9.2900
   20.0000   95.3288    7.9370

```

- To plot results, first select variables in the `Select to plot` listbox (press **Ctrl** while clicking to make multiple selections).
If `time` is selected, the other variables (as many as you like) are plotted against `time`.
If `time` is not selected, the first two variables selected are plotted against each other (phase plane trajectory).
After selecting which variables to plot click **Plot**.
Note: you must first click **Run** to generate a solution before you can **Plot**.
- To change a parameter value or the initial value of a variable select a single parameter or variable in one of the `Select to change` listboxes. When you have made your selection a `New value` edit box appears below the listbox.
Enter the new value and press **Enter**. The new value should be reflected in the listbox.

How Driver works

Code (with line numbers) for the parts of the Driver application M-file discussed in this section appears at the end of the section.

- Central to Driver is how to share the data in the reference file (`lotka.mat` in our example) with the various callback subfunctions. Global data such as this needs to be attached as fields to the `handles` structure. As we saw in Chapter 15, the `handles` structure contains handles to the GUI components, using their tags as fieldnames.
In Driver, the edit control below the static text `MAT file to load` has the tag `loadfile`. Its callback, which we now discuss briefly, starts at line 198 in the code below. This subfunction creates a structure `DriverRef` to which all the data from the MAT-file are attached as fields. `DriverRef` in turn is attached to the `handles` structure as a field.

When you enter the MAT-file to be loaded, its name is returned by the `get` statement in line 201 and assigned to the `filename` field of `DriverRef`. The MAT-file is then loaded (using the functional form of `load`) in line 202.

Lines 203–210 attach all the loaded MAT-file variables and structures to `handles.DriverRef`. Line 211 creates an empty array `results` in which to store the solution generated by `ode45` (in the run callback).

Line 212 is extremely important:

```
guidata(h, handles) % update handles structure
```

If you make any changes to the `handles` structure you must use `guidata` to save these changes. In line 214 a local structure `DriverRef` is created from `handles.DriverRef` for ease of reference.

- The listbox for variables to select for changing has the tag `listvars`. A listbox displays the items defined in its `String` property, which can be a cell array of strings. Lines 217–221 construct a cell array with the names and values of the model variables and the additional variable `time`. Line 222 updates the listbox's `String` property. Lines 224–229 construct a cell array of variable names only for the listbox (with tag `listplot`) which displays the variables to select for plotting. Lines 231–240 construct the list of parameters for the `listparms` listbox.
- Multiple selections must be allowed in the listbox which selects variables to plot (`listplot`). To enable multiple selections its `Max` and `Min` properties must be such that

```
Max - Min > 1
```

- You will notice if you run the Driver GUI that the first item in each listbox is initially highlighted. The MATLAB documentation confidently declares that if you don't want any items highlighted initially (which would be appropriate here) you must set the listbox's `Value` property to empty, `[]`. I obediently did so, but this action immediately generated an error message (Release 12), and caused MATLAB to crash when I subsequently attempted to open Driver with GUIDE. This bug is being fixed for the next release.
- When you select a variable or parameter to change, the listbox callback subfunctions make visible the edit boxes and static text beneath the respective listboxes (lines 121–130)
- The edit box with tag `editvar` handles changes to the values of variables. Its callback subfunction starts in line 133. The `Value` property of the `listvars` listbox contains the index into the list of strings (or cell array) that corresponds to the selected variable (line 136). Lines 139–143 decide which variable is to be changed and get its new value from the `String` property of `editvars` (i.e. the current callback object). Line 145 empties the edit box and makes it and its associated static text invisible. Don't forget to update the `handles` structure after making changes (line 148)! Lines 151–159 rewrite the list of variables to reflect the change made.
- Lines 162–195 similarly handle changes to parameters. The indexing is a little more complicated here because of the additional parameters `runtim`, `dt` and `opint`.
- The **Run** button's callback is in lines 69–95. Lines 74–76 copy the initial values of the model variables into the matrix `x0`. Lines 83 and 84 are particularly important. The name of the function M-file defining the right-hand sides of the DEs is the same as the MAT-file name. The MAT-file name has been read into `DriverRef.filename`. Line 83 constructs a string consisting of the file name preceded by the symbol `@`. Line 84 creates a handle to the file name by evaluating this string expression. This handle (`fname`) is used in line 85 to pass the associated function M-file name to `ode45`. `ode45` returns the solutions to `[t, x]` in line 85. The solutions are copied into the `finval` fields of the model variables and also into the matrix `results`, which is displayed in line 90.
- The callback subfunction for the **Plot** button is in lines 98–118.

When multiple selections are made in a listbox a vector of indices is returned by the `Value` property (line 100).

The `if` statement decides whether you want to plot variables against time, or against each other (phase plane trajectory), and does the plotting. Note that the plots are labelled with the variables' names.

Future development of Driver

Possible improvements to `Driver` have already been mentioned above. You might also like to consider the following if you are suitably inspired.

- A **Carry On** button which integrates the DEs for `runtime` steps from the current values `final` of the variables, rather than their initial values.
- A dialogue box for loading the MAT-file. The present version requires the MAT-file to be in the same directory as `Driver`, which is restrictive.
- No attempt is made to trap user errors, such as giving the wrong name for the MAT-file, selecting only one variable to plot, etc.

Listing of the Driver application M-file

```

1   function varargout = Driver(varargin)
2   % DRIVER Application M-file for Driver.fig
3   %     FIG = DRIVER launch Driver GUI.
4   %     DRIVER('callback_name', ...) invoke the named callback.
5
6   % Last Modified by GUIDE v2.0 04-May-2001 16:24:12
7
8   if nargin == 0 % LAUNCH GUI
9
10      fig = openfig(mfilename,'reuse');
11
12      % Use system color scheme for figure:
13      set(fig,'Color',get(0,'defaultUicontrolBackgroundColor'));
14
15      % Generate a structure of handles to pass to callbacks, and store it.
16      handles = guihandles(fig);
17      guidata(fig, handles);
18
19      if nargout > 0
20          varargout{1} = fig;
21      end
22
23  elseif ischar(varargin{1}) % INVOKE NAMED SUBFUNCTION OR CALLBACK
24
25      try
26          [varargout{1:nargout}] = feval(varargin{:}); % FEVAL switchyard
27      catch
28          disp(lasterr);
29      end
30
31  end
...
68  % -----
69  function varargout = run_Callback(h, eventdata, handles, varargin)
70  % Stub for Callback of the uicontrol handles.run.
71  % get current Driver reference info
72  DriverRef = handles.DriverRef;
73

```

```

74     for i = 1:DriverRef.nvars
75         x0(i,1) = DriverRef.vars(i).inval;
76     end
77
78     time = DriverRef.time;
79     dt = DriverRef.dt;
80     runtim = DriverRef.runtim;
81     opint = DriverRef.opint;
82     name = DriverRef.filename;
83     fname = strcat( '@', DriverRef.filename );
84     fname = eval(fname);           % create handle to filename
85     [t,x] = ode45(fname,[time:dt:time+dt*runtim],x0,[], ...
86         DriverRef.nvars,DriverRef.parms);
87     for i = 1:DriverRef.nvars
88         DriverRef.vars(i).finval = x(end,i); %finval not used at the moment
89     end
90     [t(1:opint/dt:end),x(1:opint/dt:end,:)] % display results in Command Window
91     DriverRef.results = [t,x];
92
93     %update Driver reference info
94     handles.DriverRef = DriverRef;
95     guidata(h, handles)           % update handles structure
96
97     % -----
98     function varargout = plot_Callback(h, eventdata, handles, varargin)
99     % Stub for Callback of the uicontrol handles.plot.
100    v = get(handles.listplot,'Value');
101    %assume if they want to plot against time it is the first variable selected:
102    DriverRef = handles.DriverRef;
103    if v(1) == 1 % plot remaining selection against time:
104        hold on
105        xlabel('time')
106        for i = 2:length(v)
107            plot(DriverRef.results(:,1), DriverRef.results(:,v(i)));
108            text(DriverRef.results(end,1), DriverRef.results(end,v(i)), ...
109                DriverRef.vars(v(i)-1).name)
110        end
111    else %assume only two variables selected: plot trajectory in 2D
112        hold on
113        plot(DriverRef.results(:,v(1)), DriverRef.results(:,v(2)));
114        xlabel(DriverRef.vars(v(1)-1).name)
115        ylabel(DriverRef.vars(v(2)-1).name)
116    end
117
118    hold off
119
120    % -----
121    function varargout = listvars_Callback(h, eventdata, handles, varargin)
122    % Stub for Callback of the uicontrol handles.listvars.
123    set(handles.editvar,'Visible','on')
124    set(handles.editvartext,'Visible','on')
125
126    % -----
127    function varargout = listparms_Callback(h, eventdata, handles, varargin)
128    % Stub for Callback of the uicontrol handles.listparms.
129    set(handles.editpar,'Visible','on')
130    set(handles.editpartext,'Visible','on')
131
132    % -----

```

```
133 function varargout = editvar_Callback(h, eventdata, handles, varargin)
134 % Stub for Callback of the uicontrol handles.editvar.
135 % get index of var to change
136 i = get(handles.listvars,'Value');
137
138 % change its value
139 if i == 1
140     handles.DriverRef.time = str2num(get(gcbo,'String'));
141 else
142     handles.DriverRef.vars(i-1).inval = str2num(get(gcbo,'String'));
143 end
144 % clear the box (for next time) and make it invisible again ...
145 set(gcbo,'String','','Visible','off')
146 set(handles.editvartext,'Visible','off')
147
148 guidata(h, handles) % update handles structure to reflect change
149
150 %update listbox
151 DriverRef = handles.DriverRef;
152
153 str(1) = {sprintf('%s %g', 'time', DriverRef.time)};
154
155 for i = 1:DriverRef.nvars
156     str(i+1) = {sprintf('%s %g', DriverRef.vars(i).name,...
157                     DriverRef.vars(i).inval)};
158 end
159 set(handles.listvars,'String',str);
160
161 % -----
162 function varargout = editpar_Callback(h, eventdata, handles, varargin)
163 % Stub for Callback of the uicontrol handles.editpar.
164 % get index of parm to change
165 i = get(handles.listparms,'Value');
166
167 % change its value
168 if i == 1
169     handles.DriverRef.runtim = str2num(get(gcbo,'String'));
170 elseif i == handles.DriverRef.nparms+2
171     handles.DriverRef.dt = str2num(get(gcbo,'String'));
172 elseif i == handles.DriverRef.nparms+3
173     handles.DriverRef.opint = str2num(get(gcbo,'String'));
174 else
175     handles.DriverRef.parms(i-1).val = str2num(get(gcbo,'String'));
176 end
177 % clear the box (for next time) and make it invisible again ...
178 set(gcbo,'String','','Visible','off')
179 set(handles.editpartext,'Visible','off')
180
181 guidata(h, handles) % update handles structure to reflect change
182
183 %update listbox
184 DriverRef = handles.DriverRef;
185
186 str(1) = {sprintf('%s %g', 'runtime', DriverRef.runtim)};
187
188 for i = 1:DriverRef.nparms
```



```

189     str(i+1) = {sprintf('%s   %g', DriverRef.parms(i).name,...
190                     DriverRef.parms(i).val)};
191 end
192
193 str(DriverRef.nparms+2) = {sprintf('%s   %g', 'dt', DriverRef.dt)};
194 str(DriverRef.nparms+3) = {sprintf('%s   %g', 'opint', DriverRef.opint)};
195 set(handles.listparms,'String',str);
196
197 % -----
198 function varargout = loadfile_Callback(h, eventdata, handles, varargin)
199 % Stub for Callback of the uiControl handles.loadfile.
200 % load Driver data (ref file) from MAT file
201 handles.DriverRef.filename = get(gcbo,'String'); % Mat file name
202 load(handles.DriverRef.filename)
203 handles.DriverRef.time = time;
204 handles.DriverRef.dt = dt;
205 handles.DriverRef.nvars = nvars;
206 handles.DriverRef.nparms = nparms;
207 handles.DriverRef.parms = parms;
208 handles.DriverRef.vars = vars;
209 handles.DriverRef.runtim = runtim; % cant use 'runtime'!
210 handles.DriverRef.opint = opint;
211 handles.DriverRef.results = []; % results generated by run
212 guidata(h, handles) % update handles structure
213
214 DriverRef = handles.DriverRef;
215
216 %list of var names and initial values for listvars
217 str(1) = {sprintf('%s   %g', 'time', DriverRef.time)};
218 for i = 1:DriverRef.nvars
219     str(i+1) = {sprintf('%s   %g', DriverRef.vars(i).name,...
220                     DriverRef.vars(i).inval)};
221 end
222 set(handles.listvars,'String',str);
223
224 %list of var names for listplot
225 str(1) = {'time'};
226 for i = 1:DriverRef.nvars
227     str(i+1) = {DriverRef.vars(i).name};
228 end
229 set(handles.listplot,'String',str);
230
231 %list of param names for listparms
232 str(1) = {sprintf('%s   %g', 'runtim', DriverRef.runtim)};
233 for i = 1:DriverRef.nparms
234     str(i+1) = {sprintf('%s   %g', DriverRef.parms(i).name,...
235                     DriverRef.parms(i).val)};
236 end
237
238 str(DriverRef.nparms+2) = {sprintf('%s   %g', 'dt', DriverRef.dt)};
239 str(DriverRef.nparms+3) = {sprintf('%s   %g', 'opint', DriverRef.opint)};
240 set(handles.listparms,'String',str);
241
242 % -----
243 function varargout = listplot_Callback(h, eventdata, handles, varargin)
244 % Stub for Callback of the uiControl handles.listplot.

```

19.8 A partial differential equation

The numerical solution of partial differential equations (PDEs) is a vast subject, which is beyond the scope of this book. However, a class of PDEs called *parabolic* often lead to solutions in terms of sparse matrices, which were mentioned briefly in Chapter 18. One such example is considered in this section.

Heat conduction

The conduction of heat along a thin uniform rod may be modelled by the partial differential equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}, \quad (19.17)$$

where $u(x, t)$ is the temperature distribution a distance x from one end of the rod at time t , and assuming that no heat is lost from the rod along its length.

Half the battle in solving PDEs is mastering the notation. We set up a rectangular grid, with step-lengths of h and k in the x and t directions respectively. A general point on the grid has co-ordinates $x_i = ih$, $y_j = jk$. A concise notation for $u(x, t)$ at x_i, y_j is then simply $u_{i,j}$.

Truncated Taylor series may then be used to approximate the PDE by a *finite difference scheme*. The left-hand side of Equation (19.17) is usually approximated by a *forward difference*:

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{u_{i,j+1} - u_{i,j}}{k}$$

One way of approximating the right-hand side of Equation (19.17) is by the scheme

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} = \frac{u_{i+1,j} - 2u_{i,j} + u_{i-1,j}}{h^2}. \quad (19.18)$$

This leads to a scheme, which although easy to compute, is only conditionally stable.

If however we replace the right-hand side of the scheme in Equation (19.18) by the mean of the finite difference approximation on the j th and $(j+1)$ th time rows, we get (after a certain amount of algebra!) the following scheme for Equation (19.17):

$$-ru_{i-1,j+1} + (2+2r)u_{i,j+1} - ru_{i+1,j+1} = ru_{i-1,j} + (2-2r)u_{i,j} + ru_{i+1,j}, \quad (19.19)$$

where $r = k/h^2$. This is known as the Crank-Nicolson *implicit* method, since it involves the solution of a system of simultaneous equations, as we shall see.

To illustrate the method numerically, let's suppose that the rod has a length of 1 unit, and that its ends are in contact with blocks of ice, i.e. the *boundary conditions* are

$$u(0, t) = u(1, t) = 0. \quad (19.20)$$

Suppose also that the initial temperature (*initial condition*) is

$$u(x, 0) = \begin{cases} 2x, & 0 \leq x \leq 1/2, \\ 2(1-x), & 1/2 \leq x \leq 1. \end{cases} \quad (19.21)$$

(this situation could come about by heating the centre of the rod for a long time, with the ends kept in contact with the ice, removing the heat source at time $t = 0$.) This particular problem has symmetry about the line $x = 1/2$; we exploit this now in finding the solution.

If we take $h = 0.1$ and $k = 0.01$, we will have $r = 1$, and Equation (19.19) becomes

$$-u_{i-1,j+1} + 4u_{i,j+1} - u_{i+1,j+1} = u_{i-1,j} + u_{i+1,j}. \quad (19.22)$$


```

u0 = 0; % boundary condition (Eq 19.20)
u = 2*h*[1:n] % initial conditions (Eq 19.21)
u(n+1) = u(n-1); % symmetry
disp([0 u(1:n)])

for t = k*[1:10]
    g = r * ([u0 u(1:n-1)] + u(2:n+1)) ...
        + (2 - 2 * r) * u(1:n); % Eq 19.19
    v = A\g'; % Eq 19.24
    disp([t v'])
    u(1:n) = v;
    u(n+1) = u(n-1); % symmetry
end

```

Note:

- to preserve consistency between the formal subscripts of Equation (19.19) etc. and MATLAB subscripts, u_0 (the boundary value) is represented by the scalar `u0`.

In the following output the first column is time, and subsequent columns are the solutions at intervals of h along the rod:

0	0.2000	0.4000	0.6000	0.8000	1.0000
0.0100	0.1989	0.3956	0.5834	0.7381	0.7691
0.0200	0.1936	0.3789	0.5397	0.6461	0.6921
...					
0.1000	0.0948	0.1803	0.2482	0.2918	0.3069

MATLAB has some built-in PDE solvers. See **Using MATLAB: Mathematics: Differential Equations: Partial Differential Equations**.

19.9 Other numerical methods

The ODEs considered earlier in this chapter are all *initial value* problems. For *boundary value* problem solvers, see **Using MATLAB: Mathematics: Differential Equations: Boundary Value Problems for ODEs**.

MATLAB has a large number of functions for handling other numerical procedures, such as curve fitting, correlation, interpolation, minimization, filtering and convolution, and (fast) Fourier transforms. Consult **Using MATLAB: Mathematics: Polynomials and Interpolation** and **Data Analysis and Statistics**.

Here's an example of curve fitting. The following script enables you to plot data points interactively. When you have finished plotting points (signified when the x coordinates of your last two points differ by less than 2 in absolute value) a cubic polynomial is fitted and drawn (see Figure 19.9).

```

% Interactive script to fit a cubic to data points

clf
hold on
axis([0 100 0 100]);

diff = 10;
xold = 68;
i = 0;
xp = zeros(1); % data points
yp = zeros(1);

```

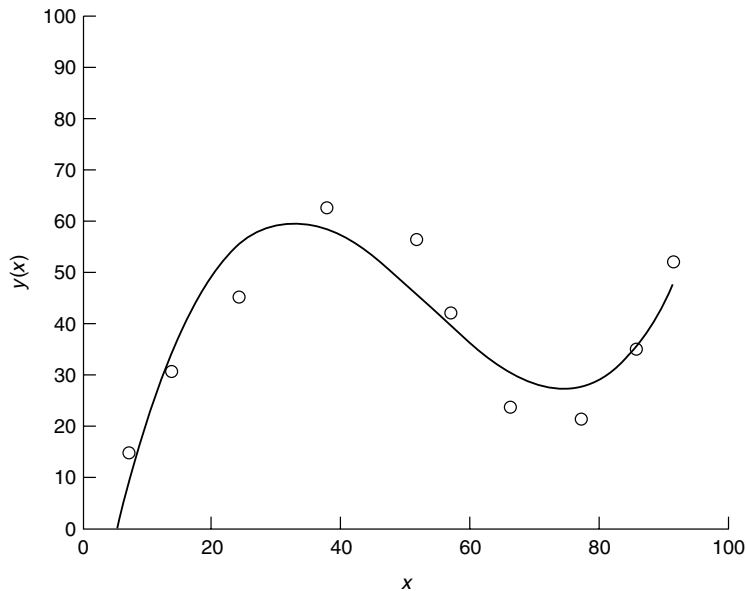


Figure 19.9 A cubic polynomial fit

```

while diff > 2
    [a b] = ginput(1);
    diff = abs(a - xold);
    if diff > 2
        i = i + 1;
        xp(i) = a;
        yp(i) = b;
        xold = a;
        plot(a, b, 'ok')
    end
end

p = polyfit(xp, yp, 3);
x = 0:0.1:xp(length(xp));
y = p(1)*x.^3 + p(2)*x.^2 + p(3)*x + p(4);
plot(x,y), title('cubic polynomial fit'), ...
    ylabel('y(x)'), xlabel('x')
hold off

```

Polynomial fitting may also be done interactively in a figure window, with **Tools** -> **Basic Fitting**.

Summary

- A numerical method is an approximate computer method for solving a mathematical problem which often has no analytical solution.
- A numerical method is subject to two distinct types of error: rounding error in the computer solution, and *truncation error*, where an infinite mathematical process, like taking a limit, is approximated by a finite process.
- MATLAB has a large number of useful functions for handling numerical methods.

Exercises

- 19.1 Use Newton's method in a script to solve the following (you may have to experiment a bit with the starting values). Check all your answers with `fzero`. Check the answers involving polynomial equations with `roots`.

Hint: use `fplot` to get an idea of where the roots are, e.g.

```
fplot('x^3-8*x^2+17*x-10', [0 3])
```

The Zoom feature also helps. In the figure window select the Zoom In button (magnifying glass) and click on the part of the graph you want to magnify.

- (a) $x^4 - x = 10$ (two real roots and two complex roots)
 (b) $e^{-x} = \sin x$ (infinitely many roots)
 (c) $x^3 - 8x^2 + 17x - 10 = 0$ (three real roots)
 (d) $\log x = \cos x$
 (e) $x^4 - 5x^3 - 12x^2 + 76x - 79 = 0$ (four real roots)
- 19.2 Use the Bisection method to find the square root of 2, taking 1 and 2 as initial values of x_L and x_R . Continue bisecting until the maximum error is less than 0.05 (use Inequality (19.2) of Section 19.1 to determine how many bisections are needed).
- 19.3 Use the Trapezoidal rule to evaluate $\int_0^4 x^2 dx$, using a step-length of $h = 1$.
- 19.4 A human population of 1000 at time $t = 0$ grows at a rate given by

$$dN/dt = aN,$$

where $a = 0.025$ per person per year. Use Euler's method to project the population over the next 30 years, working in steps of (a) $h = 2$ years, (b) $h = 1$ year and (c) $h = 0.5$ years. Compare your answers with the exact mathematical solution.

- 19.5 Write a function file `euler.m` which starts with the line

```
function [t, n] = euler(a, b, dt)
```

and which uses Euler's method to solve the bacteria growth DE (19.8). Use it in a script to compare the Euler solutions for $dt = 0.5$ and 0.05 with the exact solution. Try to get your output looking like this:

time	dt = 0.5	dt = 0.05	exact
0	1000.00	1000.00	1000.00
0.50	1400.00	1480.24	1491.82
1.00	1960.00	2191.12	2225.54
...			
5.00	28925.47	50504.95	54598.15

- 19.6 The basic equation for modelling radio-active decay is

$$dx/dt = -rx,$$

where x is the amount of the radio-active substance at time t , and r is the decay rate. Some radio-active substances decay into other radio-active substances, which in turn also decay. For example, Strontium 92 ($r_1 = 0.256$ per hr) decays into Yttrium 92 ($r_2 = 0.127$ per hr), which in turn decays into Zirconium. Write down a pair of differential equations for Strontium and Yttrium to describe what is happening.

Starting at $t = 0$ with 5×10^{26} atoms of Strontium 92 and none of Yttrium, use the Runge–Kutta method (`ode23`) to solve the equations up to $t = 8$ hours in steps of $1/3$ hr. Also use Euler’s method for the same problem, and compare your results.

- 19.7 The springbok (a species of small buck, not rugby players!) population $x(t)$ in the Kruger National Park in South Africa may be modelled by the equation

$$dx/dt = (r - bx \sin at)x,$$

where r , b , and a are constants. Write a program which reads values for r , b , and a , and initial values for x and t , and which uses Euler’s method to compute the impala population at monthly intervals over a period of two years.

- 19.8 The luminous efficiency (ratio of the energy in the visible spectrum to the total energy) of a black body radiator may be expressed as a percentage by the formula

$$E = 64.77T^{-4} \int_{4 \times 10^{-5}}^{7 \times 10^{-5}} x^{-5} (e^{1.432/Tx} - 1)^{-1} dx,$$

where T is the absolute temperature in degrees Kelvin, x is the wavelength in cm, and the range of integration is over the visible spectrum.

Write a general function `simp(fn, a, b, h)` to implement Simpson’s rule as given in Equation (19.4).

Taking $T = 3500^\circ\text{K}$, use `simp` to compute E , firstly with 10 intervals ($n = 5$), and then with 20 intervals ($n = 10$), and compare your results.

(Answers: 14.512725% for $n = 5$; 14.512667% for $n = 10$)

- 19.9 Van der Pol’s equation is a second-order non-linear differential equation which may be expressed as two first-order equations as follows:

$$dx_1/dt = x_2$$

$$dx_2/dt = \epsilon(1 - x_1^2)x_2 - b^2x_1.$$

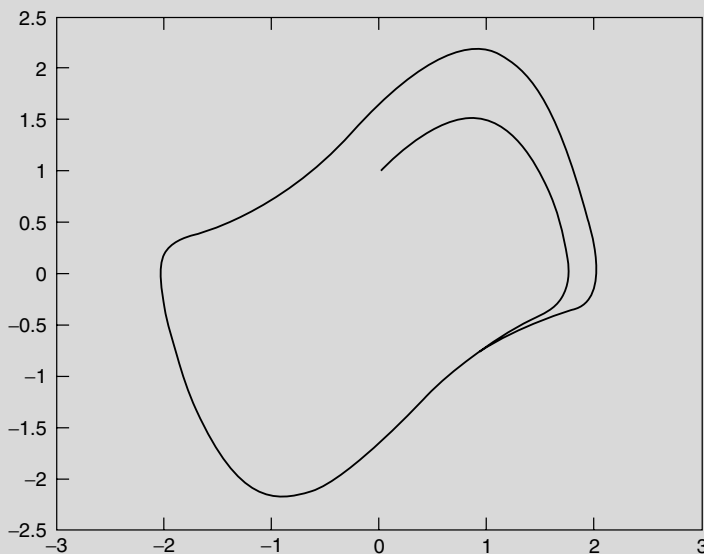


Figure 19.10 A trajectory of Van der Pol’s equation

The solution of this system has a stable limit cycle, which means that if you plot the phase trajectory of the solution (the plot of x_1 against x_2) starting at any point in the positive x_1 - x_2 plane, it always moves continuously into the same closed loop. Use `ode23` to solve this system numerically, for $x_1(0) = 0$, and $x_2(0) = 1$. Draw some phase trajectories for $b = 1$ and ϵ ranging between 0.01 and 1.0. Figure 19.10 shows you what to expect.

Appendix A

Syntax quick reference

This appendix gives examples of the most commonly used MATLAB syntax in this book.

A.1 Expressions

```
x = 2 ^ (2 * 3) / 4;  
x = A \ b;           % solution of linear equations  
a == 0 & b < 0      % a equals 0 AND b less than 0  
a ~= 4 | b > 0      % a not equal to 4 OR b greater than 0
```

A.2 Function M-files

```
function y = f(x)           % save as f.m  
% comment for help  
  
function [out1, out2] = plonk(in1, in2, in3) % save as plonk.m  
% Three input arguments, two outputs  
...  
  
function junk              % no input/output arguments; save as junk.m  
  
[t, x] = ode45(@lorenz, [0 10], x0); % function handle with @
```

A.3 Graphics

```
plot(x, y), grid          % plots vector y against vector x on a grid  
plot(x, y, 'b--')         % plots a blue dashed line  
plot(x, y, 'go')          % plots green circles  
  
plot(y)                  % if y is a vector plots elements against row numbers  
                        % if y is a matrix, plots columns against row numbers  
  
plot(x1, y1, x2, y2)     % plots y1 against x1 and  
                        y2 against x2 on same graph
```

```
semilogy(x, y)    % uses a log10 scale for y
polar(theta, r)   % generates a polar plot
```

A.4 if and switch

```
if condition
    statement      % executed if condition true
end;

if condition
    statement1     % executed if condition true
else
    statement2     % executed if condition false
end;

if a == 0         % test for equality
    x = -c / b;
else
    x = -b / (2*a);
end;

if condition1     % jumps off ladder at first true condition
    statement1
elseif condition2 % elseif one word!
    statement2
elseif condition3
    statement3
...
else
    statementE
end;

if condition statement1, else statement2, end % command line

switch lower(expr) % expr is string or scalar
    case {'linear', 'bilinear'}
        disp('Method is linear')
    case 'cubic'
        disp('Method is cubic')
    case 'nearest'
        disp('Method is nearest')
    otherwise
        disp('Unknown method.')
end
```

A.5 for and while

```
for i = 1:n      % repeats statements n times
    statements
end;
```

```

for i = 1:3:8      % i takes values 1, 4, 7
    ...
end;

for i = 5:-2:0    % i takes values 5, 3, 1
    ...
end;

for i = v          % index i takes on each element of vector v
    statements
end;

for v = a          % index v takes on each column of matrix a
    statements
end;

for i = 1:n, statements, end      % command line version

try,
    statements,
catch,
    statements,
end

while condition    % repeats statements while condition is true
    statements
end;

while condition statements, end    % command line version

```

A.6 Input/output

```

disp( x )

disp( 'Hello there' )

disp([a b])      % two scalars on one line

disp([x' y'])    % two columns (vectors x and y
                  must be same length)

disp( ['The answer is ', num2str(x)] )

fprintf( '\n' )          % new line

fprintf( '%5.1f\n', 1.23 ) % **1.2

fprintf( '%12.2e\n', 0.123 ) % ***1.23e-001

fprintf( '%4.0f and %7.2f\n', 12.34, -5.6789 )
                    % **12 and **-5.68

fprintf( 'Answers are: %g %g\n', x, y ) % matlab decides on format

```

```
fprintf( '%10s\n', str )      % left-justified string
x = input( 'Enter value of x: ' )
name = input( 'Enter your name without apostrophes: ', 's' )
```

A.7 load/save

```
load filename                % retrieves all variables
                             % from binary file filename.mat
load x.dat                   % imports matrix x from ASCII file x.dat
save filename x y z         % saves x y and z in filename.mat
save                          % saves all workspace variables
                             % in matlab.mat
save filename x /ascii      % saves x in filename (as ASCII file)
```

A.8 Vectors and matrices

```
a(3,:)                       % third row
a(:,2)                       % second column
v(1:2:9)                     % every second element from 1 to 9
v([2 4 5]) = [ ]            % removes second, fourth and fifth elements
v(logical([0 1 0 1 0]))     % second and fourth elements only
v'                            % transpose
```

Appendix B

Operators

Table B.1 Operator precedence (see Help on operator precedence)

<i>Precedence</i>	<i>Operators</i>
1.	()
2.	^ .^ ' .' (pure transpose)
3.	+ (unary plus) - (unary minus) ~ (NOT)
4.	* / \ .* ./ .\
5.	+ (addition) - (subtraction)
6.	:
7.	> < >= <= == ~=
8.	& (AND)
9.	| (OR)

Appendix C

Command and function quick reference

This appendix is not exhaustive; it lists most of the MATLAB commands and functions used in the text, as well as a few more.

For a complete list by category (with links to detailed descriptions) see the online documentation **MATLAB: Reference: MATLAB Function Reference: Functions by Category**.

The command `help` by itself displays a list of all the function categories (each in its own directory):

```
matlab\general      - General purpose commands.
matlab\ops          - Operators and special characters.
matlab\lang         - Programming language constructs.
matlab\elmat        - Elementary matrices and matrix manipulation.
matlab\elfun        - Elementary math functions.
matlab\specfun      - Specialized math functions.
matlab\matfun       - Matrix functions - numerical linear algebra.
matlab\datafun      - Data analysis and Fourier transforms.
matlab\audio        - Audio support.
matlab\polyfun      - Interpolation and polynomials.
matlab\funfun       - Function functions and ODE solvers.
matlab\sparfun      - Sparse matrices.
matlab\graph2d      - Two dimensional graphs.
matlab\graph3d      - Three dimensional graphs.
matlab\specgraph    - Specialized graphs.
matlab\graphics     - Handle Graphics.
matlab\uitools      - Graphical user interface tools.
matlab\strfun       - Character strings.
matlab\iofun        - File input/output.
matlab\timefun      - Time and dates.
matlab\datatypes    - Data types and structures.
matlab\verctrl      - Version control.
matlab\winfun       - Windows Operating System Interface Files
(DDE/ActiveX)
matlab\demos        - Examples and demonstrations.
toolbox\local       - Preferences.
MATLABR12\work      - (No table of contents file)
```

For more help on directory/topic, type "help topic".

C.1 General purpose commands

Managing commands

demo	Run demos
help	Online help
helpwin	Display categories of functions with links to each category
lookfor	Keyword search through help entries
type	List M-file
what	Directory listing of M- and MAT-files
which	Locate functions and files

Managing variables and the workspace

clear	Clear variables and functions from memory
disp	Display matrix or text
length	Length of a vector
load	Retrieve variables from disk
save	Save workspace variables to disk
size	Array dimensions
who, whos	List variables in the workspace

Files and the operating system

beep	Produce a beep sound
cd	Change current working directory
delete	Delete file
diary	Save text of MATLAB session
dir	Directory listing
edit	Edit an M-file
!	Execute operating system command

Controlling the Command Window

clc	Clear Command Window
echo	Echo commands in script
format	Set output format for disp
home	Send cursor home
more	Control paged output

Starting and quitting MATLAB

exit	Terminate MATLAB
quit	Terminate MATLAB
startup	M-file executed when MATLAB starts

C.2 Logical functions

all	True if all elements of vector are true (non-zero)
any	True if any element of vector is true
exist	Check if variable or file exists
find	Find indices of non-zero elements
is*	Detect various states
logical	Convert numeric values to logical

C.3 Language constructs and debugging

MATLAB as a programming language

error	Display error message
eval	Interpret string containing MATLAB expression
feval	Function evaluation
for	Repeat statements a specific number of times
global	Define global variable
if	Conditionally execute statements
persistent	Define persistent variable
switch	Switch among several cases
try	Begin try block
while	Repeat statements conditionally

Interactive input

input	Prompt user for input
keyboard	Invoke keyboard as a script file
menu	Generate menu of choices for user input
pause	Wait for user response

C.4 Matrices and matrix manipulation

Elementary matrices

eye	Identity matrix
linspace	Vector with linearly spaced elements
ones	Matrix of ones
rand	Uniformly distributed random numbers and arrays
randn	Normally distributed random numbers and arrays
zeros	Matrix of zeros
: (colon)	Vector with regularly spaced elements

Special variables and constants

ans	Most recent answer
eps	Floating point relative accuracy
i or j	$\sqrt{-1}$
Inf	Infinity
NaN	Not-a-Number
nargin, nargsout	Number of actual function arguments
pi	3.14159 26535 897 ...
realmax	Largest positive floating point number
realmin	Smallest positive floating point number
varargin, varargout	Pass or return variable numbers of arguments

Time and date

calendar	Calendar
clock	Wall clock (complete date and time)
date	You'd never guess
etime	Elapsed time
tic, toc	Stopwatch
weekday	Day of the week

Matrix manipulation

cat	Concatenate arrays
diag	Create or extract diagonal
fliplr	Flip in left/right direction
flipud	Flip in up/down direction
repmat	Replicate and tile an array
reshape	Change shape
rot90	Rotate 90°
tril	Extract lower tridiagonal part
triu	Extract upper tridiagonal part

Specialized matrices

gallery	Test matrices
hilb	Hilbert matrix
magic	Magic square
pascal	Pascal matrix
wilkinson	Wilkinson's eigenvalue test matrix

C.5 Mathematical functions

abs	Absolute value
acos, acosh	Inverse cosine and inverse hyperbolic cosine
acot, acoth	Inverse cotangent and inverse hyperbolic cotangent
acsc, acsch	Inverse cosecant and inverse hyperbolic cosecant
angle	Phase angle
asec, asech	Inverse secant and inverse hyperbolic secant
asin, asinh	Inverse sine and inverse hyperbolic sine
atan, atanh	Inverse tangent (two quadrant) and inverse hyperbolic tangent
atan2	Inverse tangent (four quadrant)
bessel	Bessel function
ceil	Round up
conj	Complex conjugate
cos, cosh	Cosine and hyperbolic cosine
cot, coth	Cotangent and hyperbolic cotangent
csc, csch	Cosecant and hyperbolic cosecant
erf	Error function
exp	Exponential
fix	Round toward zero
floor	Round down
gamma	Gamma function
imag	Imaginary part
log	Natural logarithm
log2	Dissect floating point numbers into exponent and mantissa
log10	Common logarithm
mod	Modulus (signed remainder after division)
rat	Rational approximation
real	Real part
rem	Remainder after division
round	Round toward nearest integer
sec, sech	Secant and hyperbolic secant
sign	Signum function

sin, sinh Sine and hyperbolic sine
sqrt Square root
tan, tanh Tangent and hyperbolic tangent

C.6 Matrix functions

det Determinant
eig Eigenvalues and eigenvectors
expm Matrix exponential
inv Matrix inverse
poly Characteristic polynomial
rank Number of linearly independent rows or columns
rcond Condition estimator
trace Sum of diagonal elements
{ }\ and / Linear equation solution

C.7 Data analysis

cumprod Cumulative product
cumsum Cumulative sum
diff Difference function
fft One-dimensional fast Fourier transform
max Largest element
mean Average value of elements
median Median value of elements
min Smallest element
prod Product of elements
sort Sort into ascending order
std Standard deviation
sum Sum of elements
trapz Trapezoidal rule for numerical integration

C.8 Polynomial functions

polyfit Fit polynomial to data
polyval Evaluate polynomial
roots Find polynomial roots

C.9 Function functions

bvp4c Solve two-point boundary value problems for ODEs
fmin Minimize function of one variable
fmins Minimize function of several variables
fzero Find zero of function of one variable
ode23, ode23s, ode45 Solve initial value problems for ODEs
quad Numerical integration

C.10 Sparse matrix functions

full Convert sparse matrix to full matrix
sparse Construct sparse matrix from non-zeros and subscripts
spy Visualize sparse matrix

C.11 Character string functions

char	characters from ASCII codes
double	ASCII codes of characters
lower	Convert string to lower case
sprintf	Write formatted data to a string
str2mat	String to matrix conversion
strcat	String concatenation
strcmp	Compare strings
upper	Convert string to upper case

C.12 File I/O functions

fclose	Close one or more open files
feof	Test for end-of-file
fopen	Open file or obtain information about open files
fprintf	Write formatted data to file
fread	Read binary data from file
fscanf	Read formatted data from file
fseek	Set file position indicator
ftell	Get file position indicator
fwrite	Write binary data to file

C.13 Graphics

2-D

bar	Bar graph
grid	Grid lines
hist	Histogram plot
loglog	Log-log scale plot
plot	Linear plot
polar	Polar co-ordinate plot
semilogx	Semi-log scale plot
semilogy	Semi-log scale plot
text	Text annotation
title	Graph title
xlabel	X-axis label
ylabel	Y-axis label
zoom	Zoom in and out on a 2-D plot

3-D

clabel	Contour plot elevation labels
comet3	Animated 3-D plot
contour	Contour plot in 2-D
contour3	Contour plot in 3-D
mesh	3-D mesh surface
meshc	3-D mesh surface with contour plot
meshgrid	X and Y arrays for 3-D plots
plot3	Line plot in 3-D
quiver	Quiver plot

surf Shaded surface
surf1 Shaded surface with lighting
view Rotation of 3-D figure
zlabel Z-axis label

General

axes Create axes object
axis Control axis scaling and appearance
cla Clear axes
clf Clear current figure
colorbar Display color bar (color scale)
colormap Set the color look-up table (list of colormaps)
drawnow Complete any pending drawing
figure Create figure (graph) windows
fplot Plot a function
gca Get current axes handle
gcf Get current figure handle
gco Return handle of current graphics object
get Get graphics object properties
ginput Graphical input from a mouse or cursor
gtext Mouse placement of text
set Set graphics object properties
subplot Create axes in tiled positions

Appendix D

ASCII character codes

<i>Code</i>	<i>Char</i>	<i>Code</i>	<i>Char</i>	<i>Code</i>	<i>Char</i>	<i>Code</i>	<i>Char</i>	<i>Code</i>	<i>Char</i>
0	(null)	26	→	52	4	78	N	104	h
1	☺	27	←	53	5	79	O	105	i
2	☹	28	└	54	6	80	P	106	j
3	♥	29	↔	55	7	81	Q	107	k
4	♦	30	▲	56	8	82	R	108	l
5	♣	31	▼	57	9	83	S	109	m
6	♠	32	(blank)	58	:	84	T	110	n
7	•	33	!	59	;	85	U	111	o
8	■	34	"	60	<	86	V	112	p
9	○	35	#	61	=	87	W	113	q
10	◉	36	\$	62	>	88	X	114	r
11	♀	37	%	63	?	89	Y	115	s
12	♁	38	&	64	@	90	Z	116	t
13	♂	39	'	65	A	91	[	117	u
14	♆	40	(	66	B	92	\	118	v
15	♇	41	)	67	C	93	]	119	w
16	▼	42	*	68	D	94	^	120	x
17	▲	43	+	69	E	95	-	121	y
18	↕	44	,	70	F	96	'	122	z
19	!!	45	-	71	G	97	a	123	{
20	¶	46	.	72	H	98	b	124	|
21	\$	47	/	73	I	99	c	125	}
22	|	48	0	74	J	100	d	126	~
23	↕	49	1	75	K	101	e	127	Δ
24	↑	50	2	76	L	102	f		
25	↓	51	3	77	M	103	g		

Appendix E

Solutions to selected exercises

Chapter 1

```
1.1  a = 3;
      b = 5;
      sum      = a + b;
      difference = a - b;
      product  = a * b;
      quotient = a / b;
```

Chapter 2

2.1 (a) comma should be replaced by decimal point
(e) asterisk should be omitted
(f) exponent must be integer
(h) comma should be replaced by decimal point

2.2 (b) decimal point not allowed
(c) first character must be a letter
(d) quotes not allowed
(h) blanks not allowed
(i) allowed but not recommended!
(k) asterisk not allowed
(l) allowed but not recommended!

2.3 (a) $p + w/u$
(b) $p + w/(u + v)$
(c) $(p + w/(u+v)) / (p + w/(u-v))$
(d) $\text{sqrt}(x)$
(e) $y^{(y+z)}$
(f) $x^{(y^z)}$
(g) $(x^y)^z$
(h) $x - x^3/(3*2) + x^5/(5*4*3*2)$

2.4 (a) $i = i + 1$
(b) $i = i^3 + j$
(c)

```
if e > f
    g = e
else
    g = f
end
```

- ```

(d) if d > 0
 x = -b
 end
(e) x = (a + b)/(c * d)

```
- 2.5 (a) expression not allowed on left-hand side  
(b) left-hand side must be valid variable name  
(c) ditto
- 2.6 `a = 2;`  
`b = -10;`  
`c = 12;`  
`x = (-b + sqrt(b ^ 2 - 4 * a * c)) / (2 * a)`
- 2.7 `gallons = input('Enter gallons: ');`  
`pints = input('Enter pints: ');`  
`pints = pints + 8 * gallons;`  
`litres = pints / 1.76`
- 2.8 `distance = 528;`  
`litres = 46.23;`  
`kml = distance / litres;`  
`l100km = 100 / kml;`  
`disp('Distance      Litres used      km/L      L/100km' );`  
`disp([distance litres kml l100km] );`
- 2.9 `t = a;`  
`a = b;`  
`b = t;`
- 2.10 `a = [a b];            % make 'a' into a vector`  
`b = a(1);`  
`a(1) = [];`
- 2.11 (a) `c = input('Enter Celsius temperature: ');`  
`f = 9 * c / 5 + 32;`  
`disp(['The Fahrenheit temperature is: ' num2str(f)] );`
- (b) `c = 20 : 30;`  
`f = 9 * c / 5 + 32;`  
`format bank;`  
`disp('            Celsius            Fahrenheit');`  
`disp([c'            f']);`
- 2.12 `degrees = 0 : 10 : 360;`  
`radians = degrees / 180 * pi;`  
`format bank;`  
`disp('            Degrees            Radians');`  
`disp([degrees'            radians']);`
- 2.13 `degrees = 0 : 30 : 360;`  
`radians = degrees / 180 * pi;`  
`sines = sin(radians);`  
`cosines = cos(radians);`  
`tans = tan(radians);`  
`table = [degrees' sines' cosines' tans']`
- 2.14 `for int = 10 : 20`  
`disp([int sqrt(int)] );`  
`end`

```
2.15 sum(2 : 2 : 200)

2.16 m = [5 8 0 10 3 8 5 7 9 4];
 disp(mean(m))

2.17 x=2.0833, a=4.

2.18 % With for loop
 i = 1;
 x = 0;
 for a = i : i : 4
 x = x + i / a;
 end

 % With vectors
 i = 1;
 a = i : i : 4;
 x = i ./ a;
 sum(x)

2.19 (b) n = input('Number of terms? ');
 k = 1 : n;
 s = 1 ./ (k.^2);
 disp(sqrt(6 * sum(s)))

2.21 r = 5;
 c = 10;
 l = 4;
 e = 2;
 w = 2;
 i = e / sqrt(r ^ 2 + (2 * pi * w * l - 1 / (2 * pi * w * c)) ^ 2)

2.22 con = [200 500 700 1000 1500];
 for units = con
 if units <= 500
 cost = 0.02 * units;
 elseif units <= 1000
 cost = 10 + 0.05 * (units - 500);
 else
 cost = 35 + 0.1 * (units - 1000);
 end
 charge = 5 + cost;
 disp(charge)
 end

2.24 money = 1000;
 for month = 1 : 12
 money = money * 1.01;
 end

2.26 t = 1790 : 10 : 2000;
 p = 197273000 ./ (1 + exp(-0.03134 * (t - 1913.25)));
 disp([t' p']);
 pause;
 plot(t,p);

2.27 (a) r = 0.15;
 l = 50000;
 n = 20;
```



$$p = r * l * (1 + r / 12) ^ (12 * n) / \dots \\ (12 * ((1 + r / 12) ^ (12 * n) - 1))$$

- 2.28 (a)  $r = 0.15;$   
 $l = 50000;$   
 $p = 800;$   
 $n = \log(p / (p - r * l / 12)) / (12 * \log(1 + r / 12))$

### Chapter 3

3.1 You should get a picture of tangents to a curve.

3.2 (a) 4 (b) 2

- (c) The algorithm (attributed to Euclid) finds the HCF (Highest Common Factor) of two numbers by using the fact that the HCF divides exactly into the difference between the two numbers, and that if the numbers are equal, they are equal to their HCF.

3.3  $f = \text{input}('Enter Fahrenheit temperature: ');$   
 $c = 5 / 9 * (f - 32);$   
 $\text{disp}(['The Celsius temperature is: ' num2str(c)] );$

3.4  $a = \text{input}('Enter first number: ');$   
 $b = \text{input}('Enter second number: ');$   
 if  $a < b$   
 $\text{disp}([ \text{num2str}(b) ' is larger.']) ;$   
 elseif  $a > b$   
 $\text{disp}([ \text{num2str}(a) ' is larger.']) ;$   
 else  
 $\text{disp}('Numbers are equal.');$   
 end

- 3.6 1. Input  $a, b, c, d, e, f$   
 2.  $u = ae - db, v = ec - bf$   
 3. If  $u = 0$  and  $v = 0$  then  
     Lines coincide  
     Otherwise if  $u = 0$  and  $v \neq 0$  then  
     Lines are parallel  
     Otherwise  
      $x = v/u, y = (af - dc)/u$   
     Print  $x, y$   
 4. Stop.

```
a = input('Enter a: ');
b = input('Enter b: ');
c = input('Enter c: ');
d = input('Enter d: ');
e = input('Enter e: ');
f = input('Enter f: ');
u = a * e - b * d;
v = c * e - b * f;
if u == 0
 if v == 0
 disp('Lines coincide.');
```

### Chapter 4

- 4.2 (a)  $\log(x + x^2 + a^2)$   
(b)  $(\exp(3 * t) + t^2 * \sin(4 * t)) * (\cos(3 * t))^2$   
(c)  $4 * \text{atan}(1)$   
(d)  $\sec(x)^2 + \cot(x)$   
(e)  $\text{atan}(a / x)$
- 4.3 

```
m = input('Enter length in metres: ');
inches = m * 39.37;
feet = fix(inches / 12);
inches = rem(inches, 12);
yards = fix(feet / 3);
feet = rem(feet, 3);
disp([yards feet inches]);
```
- 4.5 

```
a = 10;
x = 1;
k = input('How many terms do you want? ');
for n = 1 : k
 x = a * x / n;
 if rem(n, 10) == 0
 disp([n x]);
 end
end
```
- 4.6 

```
secs = input('Enter seconds: ');
mins = fix(secs / 60);
secs = rem(secs, 60);
hours = fix(mins / 60);
mins = rem(mins, 60);
disp([hours mins secs]);
```

### Chapter 5

- 5.2 (a) 1 1 0  
(b) 0 1 0  
(c) 1 0 1  
(d) 0 1 1  
(e) 1 1 1  
(f) 0 0 0  
(g) 0 2  
(h) 0 0 1
- 5.3 

```
neg = sum(x < 0);
pos = sum(x > 0);
zero = sum(x == 0);
```
- 5.7 

```
units = [200 500 700 1000 1500];
cost = 10 * (units > 500) + 25 * (units > 1000) + 5;
cost = cost + 0.02 * (units <= 500) .* units;
cost = cost + 0.05 * (units > 500 & units <= 1000) .* (units - 500);
cost = cost + 0.1 * (units > 1000) .* (units - 1000);
```

### Chapter 7

- 7.1 

```
t = 1790:2000;
P = 197273000 ./ (1+exp(-0.03134*(t-1913.25)));
plot(t, P), hold, xlabel('Year'), ylabel('Population size')
```

```

census = [3929 5308 7240 9638 12866 17069 23192 31443 38558 ...
 50156 62948 75995 91972 105711 122775 131669 150697];
census = 1000 * census;
plot(1790:10:1950, census, 'o'), hold off

7.2 a = 2;
 q = 1.25;
 th = 0:pi/40:5*pi;
 subplot(2,2,1)
 plot(a*th.*cos(th), a*th.*sin(th)), ...
 title('(a) Archimedes') % or use polar
 subplot(2,2,2)
 plot(a/2*q.^th.*cos(th), a/2*q.^th.*sin(th)), ...
 title('(b) Logarithmic') % or use polar

7.4 n=1:1000;
 d = 137.51;
 th = pi*d*n/180;
 r = sqrt(n);
 plot(r.*cos(th), r.*sin(th), 'o')

7.6 y(1) = 0.2;
 r = 3.738;
 for k = 1:600
 y(k+1) = r*y(k)*(1 - y(k));
 end
 plot(y, '.w')

```

## Chapter 8

```

8.1 balance = 1000;
 for years = 1 : 10
 for months = 1 : 12
 balance = balance * 1.01;
 end
 disp([years balance]);
 end

8.2 (a) terms = 100;
 pi = 0;
 sign = 1;
 for n = 1 : terms
 pi = pi + sign * 4 / (2 * n - 1);
 sign = sign * (-1);
 end

 (b) terms = 100;
 pi = 0;
 for n = 1 : terms
 pi = pi + 8 / ((4 * n - 3) * (4 * n - 1));
 end

8.3 a = 1;
 n = 6;
 for i = 1 : 10
 n = 2 * n;
 a = sqrt(2 - sqrt(4 - a * a));
 l = n * a / 2;
 u = l / sqrt(1 - a * a / 2);
 end

```

```
 p = (u + 1) / 2;
 e = (u - 1) / 2;
 disp([n, p, e]);
end

8.5 x = 0.1;
 for i = 1 : 7
 e = (1 + x) ^ (1 / x);
 disp([x, e]);
 x = x / 10;
 end

8.6 n = 6;
 T = 1;
 i = 0;
 for t = 0:0.1:1
 i = i + 1;
 F(i) = 0;
 for k = 0 : n
 F(i) = F(i) + 1 / (2 * k + 1) * sin((2 * k + 1) * pi * t / T);
 end
 F(i) = F(i) * 4 / pi;
 end
 t = 0:0.1:1;
 disp([t' F'])
 plot(t, F)

8.8 sum = 0;
 terms = 0;
 while (sum + terms) <= 100
 terms = terms + 1;
 sum = sum + terms;
 end
 disp([terms, sum]);

8.10 m = 44;
 n = 28;
 while m ~= n
 while m > n
 m = m - n;
 end
 while n > m
 n = n - m;
 end
 end
 disp(m);
```

## Chapter 9

```
9.1 x = 2;
 h = 10;
 for i = 1 : 20
 h = h / 10;
 dx = ((x + h) ^ 2 - x * x) / h;
 disp([h, dx]);
 end
```

**Chapter 10**

```

10.1 function pretty(n, ch)
 line = char(double(ch)*ones(1,n));
 disp(line)

10.2 function newquot(fn)
 x = 1;
 h = 1;
 for i = 1 : 10
 df = (feval(fn, x + h) - feval(fn, x)) / h;
 disp([h, df]);
 h = h / 10;
 end

10.3 function y = double(x)
 y = x * 2;

10.4 function [xout, yout] = swop(x, y)
 xout = y;
 yout = x;

10.6 % Script file
 for i = 0 : 0.1 : 4
 disp([i, phi(i)]);
 end

 % Function file phi.m
 function y = phi(x)
 a = 0.4361836;
 b = -0.1201676;
 c = 0.937298;
 r = exp(-0.5 * x * x) / sqrt(2 * pi);
 t = 1 / (1 + 0.3326 * x);
 y = 0.5 - r * (a * t + b * t * t + c * t ^ 3);

10.8 function y = f(n)
 if n > 1
 y = f(n - 1) + f(n - 2);
 else
 y = 1;
 end

```

**Chapter 11**

```

11.3 r = rand(1,5);
 disp(r)

 for i = 1:5
 [y, j] = min(r);
 r(j) = [];
 disp(r)
 end

```

**Chapter 12**

```

12.1 function t = deblank(s)
 t = s(s ~= ' ');

```

- ```
12.2 function t = toupper(s)
    for i = 1 : length(s)
        if double(s(i)) > 96 & double(s(i)) < 123
            temp(i) = s(i) - 32;
        else
            temp(i) = s(i);
        end
    end
    t = char(temp);
end
```
- ```
12.3 function y = ispalin(s)
 y = 1;
 s = s(s ~= ' ');
 for i = 1 : length(s)
 if s(i) < 91
 s(i) = s(i) + 32;
 end
 end
 for i = 1 : floor(length(s) / 2)
 if s(i) ~= s(length(s) - i + 1)
 y = 0;
 end
 end
end
```
- ```
12.4 function day = dayofweek(d)
    k = d(1);
    m = d(2) - 2;
    if m < 1
        m = m + 12;
        d(3) = d(3) - 1;
    end
    c = floor(d(3) / 100);
    y = d(3) - c * 100;
    f1 = fix(2.6 * m - 0.2) + k + y + fix(y / 4) + fix(c / 4) - 2 * c;
    f = 1 + rem(f1, 7);
    if f < 0
        f = 7 + f;
    end
    daylist = char('Sunday', 'Monday', 'Tuesday', 'Wednesday', ...
        'Thursday', 'Friday', 'Saturday');
    day = daylist(f, 1:9);
end
```
- ```
12.5 bin = input('Enter binary number: ', 's');
 bin = bin == '1';
 dec = 0;
 inc = 0;
 for i = length(bin) : -1 : 1
 dec = dec + 2 ^ inc * bin(i);
 inc = inc + 1;
 end
 disp(dec);
end
```
- ```
12.6 function t = rightfill(s, n)
    if length(s) > n
        s(n + 1 : length(s)) = [ ];
    else
        for i = length(s) + 1 : n
            t(i) = ' ';
        end
    end
end
```

```

        s(i) = ' ';
    end
end
t = s;

```

Chapter 17

```

17.1 heads = rand(1, 50) < 0.5;
    tails = ~heads;
    heads = heads * double('H');
    tails = tails * double('T');
    coins = char(heads + tails)

17.2 bingo = 1 : 99;
    for i = 1 : 99
        temp = bingo(i);
        swop = floor(rand * 99 + 1);
        bingo(i) = bingo(swop);
        bingo(swop) = temp;
    end
    for i = 1 : 10 : 81
        disp(bingo(i : i + 9))
    end
    disp(bingo(91 : 99))

17.4 circle = 0;
    square = 1000;
    for i = 1 : square
        x = 2 * rand - 1;
        y = 2 * rand - 1;
        if (x * x + y * y) < 1
            circle = circle + 1;
        end
    end
    disp( circle / square * 4 );

```

Chapter 18

```

18.5 function x = mygauss(a, b)
    n = length(a);

    a(:,n+1) = b;

    for k = 1:n
        a(k,:) = a(k,+)/a(k,k);           % pivot element must be 1

        for i = 1:n
            if i ~= k
                a(i,:) = a(i,:) - a(i,k) * a(k,);
            end
        end
    end

    end

    % solution is in column n+1 of a:
    x = a(:,n+1);

```

Chapter 19

- 19.1 (a) Real roots at 1.856 and -1.697 , complex roots at $-0.0791 \pm 1.780i$.
 (b) 0.589, 3.096, 6.285, ... (roots get closer to multiples of π).
 (c) 1, 2, 5.
 (d) 1.303
 (e) -3.997 , 4.988, 2.241, 1.768.
- 19.2 Successive bisections are: 1.5, 1.25, 1.375, 1.4375 and 1.40625. The exact answer is 1.414214..., so the last bisection is within the required error.
- 19.3 22 (exact answer is 21.3333).
- 19.4 After 30 years the exact answer is 2 117 ($1000 e^{rt}$).
- 19.6 The differential equations to be solved are

$$\begin{aligned} dS/dt &= -r_1 S, \\ dY/dt &= r_1 S - r_2 Y. \end{aligned}$$

The exact solution after 8 hours is $S = 6.450 \times 10^{25}$ and $Y = 2.312 \times 10^{26}$.

- 19.8

```
function s = simp(f, a, b, h)
x1 = a + 2 * h : 2 * h : b - 2 * h;
sum1 = sum(feval(f, x1));
x2 = a + h : 2 * h : b - h;
sum2 = sum(feval(f, x2));
s = h / 3 * (feval(f, a) + feval(f, b) + 2 * sum1 + 4 * sum2);
```

With 10 intervals ($n = 5$), the luminous efficiency is 14.512725%. With 20 intervals it is 14.512667%. These results justify the use of 10 intervals in any further computations involving this problem. This is a standard way of testing the accuracy of a numerical method: halve the step-length and see how much the solution changes.

- 19.9

```
% Command Window
beta = 1;
ep = 0.5;
[t, x] = ode45(@vdpol, [0 20], [0; 1], [], beta, ep);
plot(x(:,1), x(:,2))

% Function file vdpol.m
function f = vdpol(t, x, b, ep)
f = zeros(2,1);
f(1) = x(2);
f(2) = ep * (1 - x(1)^2) * x(2) - b^2 * x(1);
```

Index

- %, 22
- %e format specifier, 47
- %f format specifier, 47
- %g format specifier, 47
- &, 75
- ' , 77, 88
- .' , 77
- .*, 25
- ./, 25
- .^, 25
- :, 6, 88
- ;, 5, 27
- ~, 75
- π , 5
 - estimation of, 221
- 0-1 vector, 78
- 3-D plot, 110

- abs, 45, 65
- acos, 65
- acosh, 65
- algorithm, 58
- all, 79, 94
 - example, 80
- AND, 75
- angle, 45
- animation, 190
 - comet3, 110
- ans, 16, 26
- any, 79
 - example, 80
- apostrophe, 88
 - included in string, 170
- area, 116
- argument
 - input, 143
 - input, pass by reference, 147
 - input, pass by value, 147
- arithmetic operator, 23

- array, 6, 15, 159
 - 2-D, 86
 - cell, 180
 - multi-dimensional, 98
 - string, 171
- Array Editor, 16
- array operation, 25, 95
- ASCII code, 171
- asin, 65
- asinh, 65
- aspect ratio, 46
- assignment statement, 5, 26
- atan, 64, 65
- atan2, 45, 64, 65
- atanh, 65
- axis, 105
 - equal, 46
 - normal, 46
- axis limits, 105
- azimuth, 116

- bacteria division, 216
- bacteria growth, 221, 244
- balance delimiters, 29
- bar, 117
- bar graph, 165
- base workspace, 146
- best fit, 231
- binary to decimal conversion, 177
- binomial coefficient, 124
- Bisection method, 238
- bit, 16
- bitwise logical operations, 76
- blanks, 173
- break, 126, 131
- breakpoint, 152
- Bubble Sort, 166
- bug, 136
- byte, 16

- calendar, 5
- camel caps, 16
- cartesian co-ordinates, 108
- case, 45
- case sensitivity, 16
- catch, 140
- ceil, 65
- cell, 180, 181
- cell array, 180
- celldisp, 182
- cellplot, 182
- Cervantes, 177
- chaos, 123, 192, 248
 - butterfly, 250
 - trajectory, 250
- char, 172
- cla, 107
- clc, 5
- clear, 16
- clear M-file, 146
- clf, 107
- clipboard, 12
- clock, 37, 66, 201
- colon operator, 6, 18, 88
 - initialization, 18
 - precedence, 24
- colorbar, 194
- colormap, 193
- colour, 105
- comet3, 110
- command, 27
- command line, 5
- command line editing, 5
- Command Window, 4
- command/function duality, 150
- comment, 22
- compass, 117
- compiler, 14
- complex conjugate transpose, 46
- complex numbers, 45
- concatenation of strings, 171
- condition estimator, 232
- conj, 45
- Contents.m, 146
- context menu, 14
- continuation of statement, 22, 27
- continue, 131
- contour, 112
- contour plot, 8
- contour3, 113
- conversion, binary to decimal, 177
- cos, 66
- cosh, 66
- cot, 66
- Crank-Nicolson method, 260
- csc, 66
- cumsum, 66
- current directory, 13
- Current Directory browser, 14
- curve fitting, 263
- cut and paste, 12
- data types, 23
- date, 5, 67
- deal, 180
- deblank, 173
- Debugger, 151
- debugging, 136
- degrees to radians, 5
- del2, 195
- delimiter highlighting, 29
- demo, 7
- desktop, 11
 - default, 11
- det, 100
- determinate repetition, 124
- diag, 94
- diary, 20, 213
- dice, 75
- diff, 243
- differential equation, 243
- disp, 31
 - scale factor, 32
- division, matrix, 232
- docking, 11
- dot product, 26
- dot-transpose operator, 77
- double, 23
- double-precision, 23
- doubling time of an investment, 128
- drawnow, 191
- Driver, 251
- editing a plot, 189
- eig, 100
- eigenvalue, 226
- eigenvector, 227
- element-by-element operation, 25
- ellipse, equation of, 121
- ellipsis, 22, 27
- elseif, 42
- empty, 18
 - array, 80
- end, 38, 90
- end of file, 211
- eps, 73
- error
 - fatal, 136
 - logical, 139
 - rounding, 139
 - run-time, 151
 - statement, 140
 - syntax, 136
 - trapping, 175
- errorbar, 117
- escape code, 47
- etime, 37
- Euler's method, 243

- eval, error trapping, 175
- exclusive OR, 76
- exist, 79
- exp, 67
- explicit list, initializing vectors, 18
- expm, 100, 247
- exponent, 23
- exponential fit, 231
- exponential growth, 244
- exponential matrix, 247
- exporting ASCII data, save, 207
- exporting binary data, save, 208
- expression, 22–24, 26
 - ans, 26
 - display suppressed, 26
 - evaluation, 174
 - logical, 39, 75
 - response to input, 49
- eye, 93
- ezcontourf, 117

- factorial, 34
- false, 71
- feather, 118
- feof, 211
- feval, 149
- Fibonacci numbers, 156
- field, 178
- fieldnames, 179
- figure, 6, 107
- figure window, 6, 106
- file I/O functions, 48
- file identifier, 210
- fill, 118
- find, 79
- findobj, 187
- finite difference scheme, 246, 260
- fix, 67
- fixed point, 22, 32
- fliplr, 94
- flipud, 94
- floating point, 22, 32
- floor, 35, 67
- fopen, 210
- for, 35
 - command line version, 36
 - common error, 38
 - index, 35
 - iteration count, 35
 - more general, 36
 - most general form, 95
 - nested, 96, 126
 - replaced by vectorization, 36
 - used for determinate loop, 132
- format, 31, 32
- format specifiers, 47
- formula, vectorization, 28
- Fourier series, 134
- fplot, 109
- fprintf, 47
 - escape code, 47
 - string, 172
- fractal, 123
- fread, 211
- frequency distribution, 165
- fseek, 212
- ftell, 212
- full, 234
- full matrix, 233
- function, 27, 145
 - handle for passing as argument, 149
 - help, 145
 - MATLAB Function Reference, 65
 - name resolution, 151
 - P-code file, 148
 - private, 148
 - subfunction, 148
- function functions, 150
- function M-file, 142
- function/command duality, 150
- fzero, 240

- Gauss reduction, 235
- Gaussian random number, 220
- gca, 185
- gcbo, 201
- gcf, 185
- gco, 185
- get, 186
- Gibbs phenomenon, 134
- ginput, 107
- global, 146
- gradient, 114
- graph, 6
- graphical user interface, 198
- graphics
 - 2-D, 102
 - 3-D, 110
 - 3-D rotation, 116
 - axis limits, 105
 - contour plot, 112
 - cropping a surface, 113
 - easy-to-use commands, 103
 - editing a plot, 189
 - line type, 105
 - logarithmic plot, 107
 - mesh surface, 110
 - multiple plots, 104, 106
 - on GUI, 204
 - plotting symbol, 105
 - polar co-ordinates, 108
 - rapidly changing functions, 108
 - saving, 196
 - vector field, 114
- grid, on graph 103
- gtext, 103, 164
- guessing game, 126
- GUI, 198

- GUI (*cont.*)
 - handles structure, 204
 - plotting graph on, 204
- guide, 198
- H1 line, 145
- Halley's comet, 122
- Handle Graphics objects, 184
- handle
 - function, 149
 - graphics object, 184
- handles structure in a GUI, 204
- Help**, 11
- help, 8
- Help browser, 11
- Help Navigator, 65
- help for a function, 145
- helpwin, 65
- hexadecimal, 32
- hidden name, 48, 138, 151
- hist, 118
- histogram, 165
- hold, 104
- i, 45
- I/O functions, 48
- identity matrix, 93
- if, 39
 - command line version, 39
 - elseif, 42
 - nested, 44
 - vectorized with logical vector, 81
- if-else, 41
 - command line, 41
- ill conditioning, 232, 235
- imag, 45
- Import Wizard, 208
- importing ASCII data, load, 208
- importing binary data, load, 208
- importing data, Import Wizard, 208
- inclusive OR, 76
- indeterminate repetition, 124, 126
- index of for, 35
- Inf, 5
- infinity, 5
- initialization, colon operator, 18
 - explicit list, 18
- inline object, 142
- input, 49
 - argument, 143
 - string, 170
 - vector, 49
- input argument 143
- int2str, 173
- interpolation, 241
- interpreter, 14
- inv, 100
- ischar, 173
- isempty, 80
- isglobal, 146
- isinf, 80
- isnan, 80
- isothermal, 112
- iteration count, 35
- j, 45
- Knuth, 129
- lasterr, 138
 - error trapping, 175
- Launch Pad, 7, 11
- least squares, 231
- left division, 24, 229, 232
- Legendre polynomial, 156
- length, 67
- Leslie matrix, 225
- lighting, 195
- limit of sequence, 34
- line numbers, 152
- line style, 105
- linear equations
 - over-determined, 230
 - residual, 230
 - solution, 229
 - under-determined, 231
- linspace, 19
- list, sorting, 166
- load, 48, 208
- LODE, 247
- log, 67
- log10, 67
- logarithmic plot, 107
- logarithmic spiral, 121
- logical error, 139
- logical expression, 39, 71, 75
 - vector, 72
- logical function, 79
- logical operator, 42, 75
 - precedence, 76
- logical vector, 72
 - subscripting with, 78
- loglog, 107
- lookfor, 8, 145
- loop
 - determinate, 124
 - indeterminate, 126
- Lorenz, 248
- Lotka-Volterra model, 250
- lower, 173
- lu, 100
- M-file, 13
 - function, 142
 - function passed as argument, 149
- macro, 174
- magic square, 8, 93
- mantissa, 23, 32

- marker, 105
- Markov chain, 227
- matrix, 17, 20, 86
 - array operation, 95
 - creating, 87
 - deleting rows and columns, 92
 - division, 232
 - duplicating rows and columns, 91
 - enlarging, 88
 - exponential, 247
 - exponentiation, 99
 - full, 233
 - Leslie, 225
 - multiplication, 98
 - operation, 25, 98
 - plot, 102
 - sparse, 233
 - subscript, 88
 - transpose, 20, 88
 - visualization, 115
- max, 67, 168
- mean, 67
- menu, 131
- mesh, 111
- mesh surface, 110
- meshc, 113
- meshgrid, 111
- meshz, 119
- Mexican hat, 8
- min, 67, 168
- mlock, 146
- Monte Carlo estimation of π , 221
- more, 31, 130
- multi-dimensional array, 98
- multiple lines in Command Window, 12
- multiple plots, 106
 - on same axes, 104
- munlock, 146

- name hiding, 138, 151
- NaN, 5
- nargin, 148
- nargout, 148
- nested fors, 96, 126
- nested ifs, 44
- Newton quotient, 140, 155, 242
- Newton's method, 33
 - in general, 236
- normally distributed random number, 220
- NOT, 75
- not-a-number, 5
- num2str, 31, 173
- number, 22
- numerical differentiation, 242
- numerical integration, 240
- numerical method, 236
 - Bisection method, 238
 - differential equation, 243
 - differentiation, 242
 - Euler's method, 243
 - integration, 240
 - Newton quotient, 242
 - Newton's method, 236
 - partial differential equation, 260
 - predictor-corrector, 246
 - Runge-Kutta method, 247
 - Simpson's rule, 241
 - solution of equations, 236
 - Trapezoidal rule, 240
- numerical solution
 - differential equations, 243
 - equations, 236

- object, 182
 - Handle Graphics, 184
- object-oriented programming, 182
- ones, 92, 172
- operand, 23
- operating system, shelling out to, 50
- operation
 - array, 25
 - element-by element, 25
 - matrix, 98
- operator precedence, complete list, 77, 271
- operator
 - arithmetic, 23
 - colon, 88
 - dot-transpose, 77
 - left division, 229
 - logical, 42, 75
 - precedence, 24, 76
 - relational, 39
 - separate with brackets, 77
 - transpose, 77
- OR, 75
 - exclusive, 76
- output, 31
 - paging, 31
 - suppressed with semi-colon, 27
 - to a file with fprintf, 47
- output argument, 144
- over-determined system, 230

- P-code file, 148
- paging output, 31, 130
- palindrome, 176
- partial differential equation, 260
- pascal, 93
- pause, 116
- pcode, 149
- peaks, 116
- persistent variable, 146
- pi, 5
- pie, 119
- pitfall, 138
- plot, 6, 102
 - 3-D version, 110

- plot (*cont.*)
 - logarithmic scale, 107
 - polar co-ordinates, 108
- plot edit mode, 189
- plot3, 110
- plottedit, 189
- plotyy, 104
- Poisson process, 218
- polar, 108
- polar co-ordinates, 108
- polynomial fitting, 263
- pow2, 67
- pre-allocation, 161
- precedence, 76
 - arithmetic operators, 24
 - colon operator, 24
 - logical operator, 76
 - of operators, complete list, 77, 271
 - transpose, 25
- predator-prey model, 250
- predictor-corrector method, 246
- Preferences, 32
- prime number
 - generation, 169
 - largest known, 129
 - test, 129
- private function, 148
- prod, 67
- Profiler, 149
- program, 11
- programming style, 50
- projectile motion, 63
- projectile trajectory, 129
- Property Editor, 109
- pseudo-code, 58
- pseudo-random number, 67

- qr, 100
- quad, 242
- quadratic equation, 59
 - structure plan, 59
- quadrature, 242
- quiver, 114
- quote in string, 31

- radio-active decay, 222
- RAM, 14
- rand, 67, 74, 92, 214
 - seeding, 215
 - uniform, 214
- randn, 220
- random access memory, 14
- random number, 19, 74
 - counting, 74
 - generation, 214
 - normal, 220
 - uniform, 214
- random walk, 165, 216, 227

- rat, 32
- real, 45
- realmax, 23, 68
- realmin, 23, 68
- recall, smart, 5
- recursion, 153
- redimensioning, 161
- reference, pass by, 147
- relational operator, 39
- relative accuracy, 23
- rem, 68
- removing elements of an array, 19, 79
- repmat, 91
- reshape, 91
- reshaping a matrix, 90
- residual, 230
- ribbon, 119
- right division, 232
- rmfield, 180
- rolling dice, 75, 216
- root of an equation, 236
- roots, 240
- rot90, 94
- round, 68
- rounding error, 139, 242
- run-time error, 151
- Runge-Kutta method, 247

- save, 48, 207, 208
- saving a file, 13
- saving a graph, 196
- scalar, 6
 - expansion, 26
 - product, 26
- scientific notation, 22
 - display, 32
- scope, 146
- script file, 13
 - hidden by variable of same name, 48
 - recommended way to run, 14
- search path, 48
- sec, 68
- seeding rand, 215
- semi-colon, 5
- semilogx, 107
- semilogy, 107
- sensitivity analysis, 235
- separator, 27
- series for π , 133
- set, 186
- Shakespeare, 177
- shelling out to the operating system, 50
- sign, 68
- Simpson's rule, 241
- simulation, 75, 165
 - bacteria division, 216
 - bacteria growth, 221
 - game of eights, 222

- π , estimation of, 221
- radio-active decay, 222
- random walk, 216, 229
- rolling a die, 216
- spinning coins, 215
- traffic flow, 218
- sin, 68
- single-precision, 23
- sinh, 68
- size, 16, 68
- smart indenting, 36
- smart recall, 5
- sort, 68, 166, 168
- sort, bubble, 166
- sound, 126
- sparse, 233, 234, 261
- sparse matrix, 233, 261
- spinning coins, 215
- spiral
 - Archimedes, 121
 - logarithmic, 121
- sprintf, 164, 173
- spy, 115, 234
- sqrt, 5, 68
- stable age distribution, 227
- stairs, 120
- statement, 5, 27
 - assignment, 26
 - continuation, 27
- stem3, 120
- strcmp, 173
- string, 31, 170
 - array of characters, 171
 - ASCII code, 171
 - comparison, 173
 - concatenation, 171
 - containing quote, 31
 - fprintf, 172
 - including apostrophe, 170
 - input, 170
 - two-dimensional, 173
- struct, 179
- structure, 178
- structure plan, 12, 58
 - quadratic equation, 59
- structured programming, 60
- style, 50
- subfunction, 148
- subplot, 106
- subscript, 19, 88
 - logical vectors, 78
 - out of range, 88
 - vector, 78
- subscripting with logical vectors, 78
- sum, 68
- sunflower head, 121
- surf, 112
- surf, 113
- svd, 100
- switch, 45
- syntax error, 136
- syntax highlighting, 36
- tab completion, 6
- tan, 69
- tanh, 69
- Taylor series, exponential, 155
- TeX characters, 189
- text label on graph, 104
- text macro, 174
- tic, 37, 69
- tiling, 91
- title, 104
- toc, 37, 69
- top down programming, 59
- traffic flow, 218
- transpose, 19, 20, 77, 88
 - complex conjugate, 46
 - precedence, 25
- Trapezoidal rule, 240
- tridiagonal matrix, 261
- tril, 94
- triu, 95
- true, 71
- truecolor, 195
- truncation error, 263
- try/catch, 140, 175
- type, 13
- uicontrols, 198
- under-determined system, 231
- undocking, 11
- unhiding a name, 48
- uniformly distributed random number, 214
- update process, 159
- upper, 173
- value, pass by, 147
- Van der Pol's equation, 265
- varargin, 148, 181
- varargout, 181
- variable, 5, 14, 15
 - global, 146
 - hides script of same name, 48
 - persistent, 146
 - scope, 146
 - string, 170
 - termed arrays by MATLAB, 15
- vector, 6, 17
 - 0-1, 78
 - colon operator, 18
 - explicit list, 17
 - incompatible sizes, 138
 - input, 49
 - pre-allocation, 161

- vector, (*cont.*)
 - redimensioning, 161
 - removing element, 79
 - scalar product, 26
 - subscript, 19, 78
 - transpose, 19
- vectorization, 28
 - instead of `for`, 36
- view, 116
- visualization of matrix, 115

- waterfall 120
- website, 9
- while, 127
 - command line form, 127
 - used for indeterminate loop, 132
 - vector condition, 127
- who, 16

- whos, 16
- why, 9
- workspace, 16
 - base, 146
 - function, 146
- Workspace browser, 11, 16

- xlabel, 104
- xor, 76

- ylabel, 104

- Zeller's congruence, 176
- zero of a function, 236
- zeros, 92
- zlabel, 110
- zoom, 264